

**APPENDIX E  
UPDATED ICE TECHNICAL REPORT**

**ORGANIZATION OF APPENDIX E**

- E-1. Updated ICE Technical Report**
- E-2. Supporting Documentation Referenced in the ICE Technical Report**

**This page was intentionally left blank.**

## APPENDIX E-1

### UPDATED ICE TECHNICAL REPORT

NOTE: This appendix includes only the main body of the report. The maps and appendices for the *Indirect and Cumulative Effects Quantitative Analysis Update* (Michel Baker Engineering, Inc., November 2013) are provided on a CD inside the back cover of Volume 2 of this Draft Supplemental Final EIS, and are also available on the project Web site ([www.ncdot.gov/projects/monroeconnector](http://www.ncdot.gov/projects/monroeconnector)).

Files on CD referenced above can be found on project website:  
<http://www.ncdot.gov/projects/monroeconnector/> under Draft Supplemental Final EIS Supporting Documents.

**This page was intentionally left blank.**

# Monroe Connector/Bypass (R-3329/R-2559)

## Indirect and Cumulative Effects Quantitative Analysis Update

Prepared for the North Carolina Turnpike Authority



A Division of North Carolina Department of Transportation



Prepared by Michael Baker Engineering, Inc.



**Michael Baker Engineering, Inc.**  
8000 Regency Parkway  
Suite 300  
Cary, North Carolina 27518  
Phone: 919.463.5488  
Fax: 919.463.5490

November 7, 2013

## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

### E.1 Why Was This Report Developed?

The North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) and the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) developed this report to update the indirect and cumulative effects analysis for the Monroe Connector/Bypass (the project). The FHWA rescinded its Record of Decision (ROD) for the project on July 3, 2012. This action was in response to the decision of the United States Court of Appeals for the Fourth Circuit to vacate the United States District Court decision in *NC Wildlife Federation v NCDOT* and remand the decision for further review and analysis by the agencies.<sup>1</sup>

Since that time, the NCDOT and the FHWA have conducted additional research, investigation and analysis on the potential indirect and cumulative effects on land use and water quality in the project area. The NCDOT and the FHWA published this report to update the quantitative indirect and cumulative effects analysis for Land Use (Quantitative ICE) and to determine whether a quantitative indirect and cumulative effects water quality analysis (WQA) included in the Final Environmental Impact Statement (FEIS) as Appendix H remains appropriate.

#### What Did We Do to Update the Quantitative ICE?

The scope of the work for the update of the quantitative ICE generally included the following activities.

1. We reviewed conditions and trends in the study area and updated the baseline land use data (Sections 1.0 and 2.0)
2. We reviewed the regional travel demand model socioeconomic projections, developed for the Mecklenburg-Union Metropolitan Planning Organization (MUMPO), including how other studies have used the projections, and determined the most appropriate data set for the ICE analysis of future land use (Section 3.0)
3. We developed the future No-Build and Build land use scenarios and thoroughly explained the methods used to estimate induced growth (Section 4.0)
4. We reported revised induced growth results and conclusions based on the updated land use scenarios (Section 5.0)
5. We review measures that localities and others could adopt to minimize any impacts of future development, whether induced or not, on sensitive environmental resources (Section 6.0).

This report summarizes the conclusions reached in the evaluation of ICE and describes the data collected, methodologies used and analysis conducted for the ICE for the project. This document also re-evaluates and considers data, analytical research relevant to the project area, and new information relevant to the analysis of the indirect and cumulative effect on land use, water quality, and federally designated threatened and endangered species and their critical habitat in the surrounding area. Since the Carolina heelsplitter (federally protected freshwater mussel) lives in two watersheds in the study area, water quality is a major focus area of this analysis. Thus, we report results for both the overall study area and at the watershed level.

#### How Did We Update the Study Area Land Use Data?

In reviewing conditions in the study area, the study team analyzed the following:

---

<sup>1</sup> NC Wildlife Federation v NCDOT, US Court of Appeals for the 4<sup>th</sup> Circuit, May 3, 2012, p 15

- We conducted new interviews with local planners
- We incorporated the 2010 Census and reviewed and analyzed growth trends and conditions in the study area
- We identified and incorporated new, reasonably foreseeable proposed or approved development activity
- We reviewed new planning documents (such as new land use plans and new capital improvement plans) and identified differences in future growth plans and related infrastructure.

The additional research found some changes in existing land uses and some updates to future expectations of land use change and development. Overall, the evidence strongly indicates that Union County has a history of relatively fast growth and continues to exhibit factors that would continue to encourage growth rates that exceed the regional average regardless of whether the proposed project is completed.

## **E.2 How Was Existing Land Use Modeled for this Study?**

Existing land use was modeled using a combination of parcel-level GIS data from Mecklenburg and Union Counties, raster (image) format GIS data describing undeveloped land cover and a cross check against aerial imagery (as described in Section 2). These sources were combined to model the land uses in the study area in a land cover raster image. Given the age of various data sources available, the most recent date to which the existing land use could be reasonably updated is 2010.

## **E.3 How Did We Estimate Future Growth?**

Several different agencies and organizations forecast or project growth in North Carolina to the county level. Federal law requires every MPO to estimate the long-term travel needs of their respective regions in their Metropolitan Transportation Plans (MTP). Most MPOs must also assess the air quality impacts of their MTPs for compliance with the Clean Air Act. Thus, MPOs develop future demographic projections (including employment and households) for small geographic units called traffic analysis zones (TAZs). These projections typically consider projections from other state and federal agencies and private organizations. As noted above, the Quantitative ICE analysis requires a data source that enables future projection of land use at a detailed geographic level. Since the MPOs projection process and future projections have been determined to be acceptable for complying with the Clean Air Act and other federal regulations, which includes a public review process, we consider them the best available and reasonable source for estimating future growth in the context of this ICE analysis. Furthermore, as described below, we conducted an in-depth review of the MPO projection process, the data origins and assumptions, and as necessary, tested assumptions regarding the Monroe Connector/Bypass in order to fully understand the appropriate use of the data.

## **E.4 How Were the MPO Socioeconomic Projections Developed?**

MUMPO developed its latest projections in 2009 for use in its most recent (2035) Long-Range Transportation Plan (LRTP). These projections were developed using a spreadsheet workbook based model called a Land Use Allocation Model (LUSAM). The LUSAM model relied, in turn, on previous projections developed in 2005, by MUMPO and its regional partners at other surrounding MPOs and Rural Planning Organizations (RPOs). Those projections supported the 2030 LRTP.

The 2005 Projections (which were used in the 2030 LRTP) were developed through a process with three main components, a Top-Down projection, a Bottom-Up projection and input from an advisory group on the final projections. The development of the TAZ-level projections relied first on the Top-Down process

to project future growth at the regional level and then allocate the regional growth to the county level. Dr. Thomas Hammer conducted the Top-Down analysis and his report, *Demographic and Economic Forecasts for the Charlotte Region* (Appendix H), documents his methodology and results. Dr. Hammer used a highly detailed, employment and earnings based model to estimate regional growth and then allocated that growth to counties based on detailed statistical relationships based on his research into 227 other counties in 29 other metropolitan areas across the eastern US.

A subsequent Bottom-Up process allocated the county-level growth to the TAZ level within each county. Different parts of the Metrolina region used different approaches to the Bottom-Up process, but for the MUMPO area, which included most of Union County, a process prepared by Paul Smith of UNC-Charlotte provided the initial allocation. Mr. Smith's report *Mecklenburg-Union Metropolitan Planning Organization Population Projections and Employment Allocations, 2000-2030* (Appendix I) documents his methodology and results. Mr. Smith's process focused on the household (and by default population) allocation and the allocation of population-chasing employment. Population-chasing employment is that employment associated with retail and services that tend to follow population growth. Non-population-chasing employment was distributed solely based on the input of staff and expert panel participants. Mr. Smith's allocation process started with the county-level control totals developed in the Top-Down process, existing baseline data (2000), and the influence of the of land development factors chosen and ranked by expert panels. Within Union County, there were eight land development factors used to assess the attractiveness and capacity of each TAZ in the county to draw future growth. As was the case with the Top-Down projections, the Bottom-Up steps used input from local planners and jurisdictional representatives to review and refine the projections prior to adoption.

#### Review of Metrolina Socioeconomic Projection Versions

We reviewed and analyzed the Metrolina Regional Travel Demand Model (MRM) Socioeconomic Projections and assessed them for use in the ICE analysis. The review included an assessment of the following factors.

1. We reviewed the various socioeconomic projection versions developed by the MPO and the assumptions upon which they rely.
2. We analyzed the specific methodology used with the Travel Time to Employment factor in the allocation of growth within Union County.
3. We re-evaluated the Travel Time to Employment factor where the Monroe Bypass/Connector was removed from the analysis.
4. We assessed other studies that have used or analyzed the MPO projections and the conclusions they have drawn about those projections and from those projections.

From 2003 to 2009, the Charlotte Department of Transportation (CDOT), the official custodian of the MRM, in cooperation with the Mecklenburg Union MPO (MUMPO) and other MPOs and Rural Planning Organizations (RPOs) in the region, developed various socioeconomic projections to input into the MRM in support of the MPO LRTP development. Table ES-1 summarizes these various projections and shows a timeline of the development of these projections.

We used the 2009 Projections for this Quantitative ICE analysis because MUMPO used this data set with its most recent transportation planning approvals and the June 2013 update of its LRTP. Although MUMPO is currently working on a new set of socioeconomic projections to support its 2040 LRTP, those

projections are not anticipated to be complete or fully approved nor accepted for transportation conformity purposes until May, 2014 and therefore would be inappropriate to use in this analysis.

**Table ES-1: MRM Socioeconomic Projections Versions**

Projections Name	TAZ File Name	Projections Completed	Use for LRTP Conformity Determination	Associated Model Version	Base and Horizon Years
2009 Projections	SE_Year_091028	October 2009	MUMPO 2035 LRTP	MRM 09 v1.0 MRM 11 v1.0 MRM 11 v1.1	Base: 2005 Horizon: 2015, 2025, 2035
2008 Interim Projections	SE_Year_081119_MUMPO_interim	November 2008		None	Base: 2005 Horizon: 2015, 2025, 2035
2008 Projections	SE_Year_081024	October 2008	RFATS 2035 LRTP	MRM 08 v1.0	Base: 2005 Horizon: 2015, 2025, 2035
2005 Projections	SE_Year_taz2934	May 2005	MUMPO 2030 LRTP	MRM 05 v1.0 MRM 06 v1.0 MRM 06 v1.1	Base: 2000 Horizon: 2010, 2020, 2030

The 2009 Projections used a spreadsheet workbook modeling process (called the Land Use Allocation Model or LUSAM) that included a number of variables. A detailed analysis of those factors showed that none of the factors used to develop the projections were affected by the proposed project. In particular, the study team worked with CDOT and Paul Smith to reanalyze the Travel Time to Employment Factor used in the Bottom Up allocation process of the 2005 Projections which were used for the 2030 LRTP and which substantially provided the basis for the 2009 Projections. When Mr. Smith ran his original land use allocation models in 2004, his roadway network for his Travel Time to Employment Factor included the proposed project. When Mr. Smith reran his allocation models in July 2012, without the proposed project in his roadway network for that factor, the results were exactly the same as the original results.

**Did the Monroe Connector/Bypass Influence the MPO Projections?**

A detailed assessment of the MRM socioeconomic projections (see Section 3.2) reveals the following regarding the influence of the Monroe Connector/Bypass on the 2009 Projections:

- The proposed project did not affect the Travel Time to Core Employment factor in the LUSAM process, as this factor had zero weight for all districts for all LUSAM runs.<sup>2</sup>
- The proposed project did not affect the Planners’ Judgment factor in the LUSAM process, as this factor had zero weight for all districts in Union County for all LUSAM runs.
- The proposed project was included in the Travel Time to Employment factor used by Paul Smith in developing the 2005 Projections, but a reassessment of that factor without the proposed project (as discussed in Section 3.2) shows that the project had no influence on the projection results.

---

<sup>2</sup> See Section 3.2 and Appendix A (CDOT Staff Communications) for detail on the LUSAM process and the reasoning for giving the Travel Time to Core Employment a weight of zero.

- The proposed project did not affect Dr. Hammer’s projections of households and employment that were used in the 2005 Projections for county level control totals and were used in the 2008 Interim and 2009 Projections for developing the district level targets.
- There is no evidence or indication that any other factor in the LUSAM process or the other projection processes was influenced by the proposed project, and communications with CDOT and Union County planning staff indicate that the proposed project was not a consideration in development of the projections.
- A review of the distribution of projected households and employment relative to the proposed project location shows no signs that the proposed project influenced the projections.

Our analysis shows that the various models used to develop the MRM socioeconomic projections are insensitive to the presence or absence of the proposed project. We determined the methodology used by CDOT and MUMPO to develop the socioeconomic projections is effectively insensitive to any potential induced land use effects associated with the Monroe Bypass/Connector. Dr. Hammer states that he made specific adjustments to his projections for two large roadway projects (NC 16 in Lincoln County and the Garden Parkway but not the Monroe Connector/Bypass) in the Top-Down process that was used to develop total population and employment estimates. As the sensitivity analysis of Paul Smith’s Travel Time to Employment Factor showed, the proposed project made no difference in the Bottom-Up allocation process. If our ICE analysis were to follow the exact same methodology used by MUMPO to calculate induced growth impacts of the Monroe Connector/Bypass then the result would be to find no induced growth, since the methodology would be blind to the accessibility impacts of the project. Therefore, we used other methodologies to estimate potential induced growth and induced land use changes associated with the proposed project as described in Section 4.

*Are There Other Information Sources that Agree with the Assessment of the MPO Forecasts?*

The North Carolina Turnpike Authority (NCTA) hired Wilbur Smith Associates (WSA) to conduct a preliminary and then final comprehensive traffic and revenue study for the proposed project. WSA, in consultation with NCTA, hired the Kenan Institute of Private Enterprise at the University of North Carolina’s Kenan-Flagler Business School (Kenan Institute) in 2009 to develop a set of TAZ-level socioeconomic projections specifically for the project’s Comprehensive Traffic and Revenue Study. The Kenan Institute reviewed the 2008 Interim Projections and made two adjustments to MUMPO’s socioeconomic estimates. “The first was to make region-wide adjustments consistent with the national growth expectations (the 2008 economic adjustment). The second was to reallocate growth in Union County in line with development factors and constraints”.<sup>3</sup>

Looking within the project corridor, the Kenan Institute accepted the allocation of growth by the MPO in Mecklenburg County. However, it reallocated the projected population growth within Union County away from the line of high growth in the southwest quadrant of the county to the Connector/Bypass corridor because of the project. The Kenan Institute also reallocated a portion of the expansion in several high growth TAZs in the northeastern quadrant of the county towards the corridor. The Kenan Institute made these adjustments based on results of interviews with local planners, analysis of growth trends in the area,

---

<sup>3</sup> Appendix K p 29

and analysis of water and sewer demand and capacity in the area. Our analysis of the Kenan Institute adjustments to MUMPO's projections showed that the Kenan Institute reallocated about 1,800 households or about 3 percent of Union County growth towards the project corridor. Further analysis of the Kenan Institute adjustments to 2008 Interim Projections showed that the reallocation of growth was similar to the growth patterns in the DEIS Qualitative ICE.

### **How Did the Quantitative ICE Use the MPO Projections?**

The preceding analysis of the MPO socioeconomic projections leads to the conclusion that, if we used MUMPO's land use models to evaluate future changes between the No-Build and Build scenarios, we would find no difference between the two. The conclusions of the Qualitative ICE and research into local expectations suggest that it is unlikely that there would be absolutely no difference in land use development conditions in the study area between a No-Build and Build Scenario. Therefore, we conducted an induced growth analysis to account for the potential environmental impacts of these potential land use changes. In our analysis of potential induced land use changes, we used the MPO socioeconomic projections as control totals along with local land use plans and other regulations, to develop a scenario without the project (hereafter referred to as the No-Build Scenario). We estimated the potential induced growth and induced land use changes associated with the proposed project and added that estimated induced growth to the No-Build land use scenario to create a new scenario that represents future conditions with the project and its growth-inducing impacts (i.e. the Build Scenario). This methodology was originally developed in consultation with the resource agencies and did not reallocate growth within the FLUSA, and is thus considered conservative in nature in that it might overestimate cumulative impacts since we did not reallocate growth between the No-Build and Build scenarios.

A reallocation approach might have resulted in shifting growth eastward in the study area by taking expected growth from the areas of northwestern and central Union County and shifting it eastward toward Wingate. This approach might have been reasonable as areas of eastern Union County will be relatively more accessible under a Build Scenario due to reduced travel times and therefore some growth that would have occurred in northwestern or central Union County under a No-Build Scenario would instead occur in eastern Union County. To err on the side of overestimating cumulative impacts, an additive approach was used where growth was added, over and above the No-Build Scenario, to create the Build Scenario without reallocation.

### **E.5 How Was Induced Growth Estimated?**

We developed the No-Build Scenario using local zoning and land use plans to determine the total build-out capacity of the study area and then using the MPO projections as a control total (total population and total employment for the study area) for determining how much of that capacity would actually develop by 2030 (See Section 4.1 for details).

We developed the Build Scenario using a combination of the four analytical techniques.

1. We used a scenario writing approach to identify areas most likely to see induced growth based on planning information and interviews.
2. We conducted a build-out analysis to see which areas had the most capacity for induced growth.
3. We completed an accessibility analysis to see which areas would most benefit from the proposed project and thus be most likely to see induced growth.
4. We used a Hartgen Analysis to estimate potential commercial growth at interchange areas.

We combined these methods to estimate the likely induced development within the FLUSA and this induced development was then added to the No-Build Scenario to create a Build Scenario (See Section 4.2 for details). The accessibility analysis used to help determine land use effects associated with the project was based on the assumption of a “free” high-speed roadway. Since NCDOT intends to implement the project as a toll road or “priced” facility, it is possible that our results will represent a high range or conservative estimate of effects. A logical conclusion is that a toll captures some of the value that drivers’ gain in shorter travel times and therefore the accessibility improvements of new, tolled facilities are less likely to encourage induced land use changes than a free facility might. Nevertheless, there is insufficient research on induced land use changes associated with tolled facilities to estimate how much tolling would reduce potential induced land use changes. Therefore, we have not adjusted our estimates to account for that factor.

In the research conducted for this ICE, two noteworthy proposals surfaced that the study team specifically considered for how those proposals might need to be addressed in the future land use scenarios. The study team investigated the proposed industrial park in eastern Union County, called Legacy Park. Based on interviews with Union County officials, CSX staff and researchers familiar with the proposal, the study team determined that the proposal was not reasonably foreseeable at this time and did not include any portion of the proposal in any future land use scenario (see Section 4.2 for details). Additionally, the study team reviewed the draft US 74 Revitalization Study and its recommendations for their potential impact to future land use scenarios. Since the study is still draft and has not been adopted and since the land use and other recommendations would result in minimal changes to the land use scenario results, the study team determined it was not reasonably foreseeable to incorporate the draft plan recommendations into any future land use scenario.

## **E.6 What Are the Results of the Updated ICE Analysis?**

The following section outlines the updated results from the three updated scenarios, the 2010 Existing (Baseline), the 2030 No-Build, and the 2030 Build scenario. As with any attempt to project the future, the accuracy of these results for future years is problematic as the typical error range for long-range forecasting of households and employment is upward of 25 percent (see Section 3.5 for details). Thus, one should interpret the future year results as the best estimate within a wide range of potential error. Table ES-2 shows the results of all updated land use scenarios. Map 3 illustrates the updates to the 2010 Baseline Land Use. Map 16 illustrates the results of the updated No-Build Scenario. Map 17 illustrates the results of the updated Build Scenario.

**Table ES-2: Updated Land Use Scenario Results**

Land Use	Updated Baseline (2010)		Updated 2030 No-Build			Updated 2030 Build		
	Total Area (acres)	% of Total Area	Total Area (acres)	% of Total Area	Change in % from Baseline	Total Area (acres)	% of Total Area	Change in % from No-Build
Total Residential	71,500	35%	97,900	48%	13%	99,700	49%	1%
<i>Low Density</i>	55,600	28%	79,500	40%	12%	80,600	40%	0%
<i>Medium Density</i>	12,900	6%	14,900	7%	1%	15,600	8%	1%
<i>High Density</i>	3,100	2%	3,500	2%	0%	3,500	2%	0%
Commercial	3,900	2%	5,600	3%	1%	5,900	3%	0%
Industrial/Office/Institutional	7,100	4%	8,700	4%	1%	8,800	4%	0%
Transportation	12,700	6%	12,800	6%	0%	13,900	7%	1%
<b>Total Developed</b>	<b>95,200</b>	<b>47%</b>	<b>125,000</b>	<b>62%</b>	15%	<b>128,200</b>	<b>63%</b>	<b>2%</b>
<b>Total Agricultural</b>	<b>52,900</b>	<b>26%</b>	<b>37,500</b>	<b>19%</b>	-8%	<b>35,500</b>	<b>18%</b>	<b>-1%</b>
<b>Total Forested</b>	<b>51,900</b>	<b>26%</b>	<b>37,700</b>	<b>19%</b>	-7%	<b>36,500</b>	<b>18%</b>	<b>-1%</b>
<b>Total Other</b>	<b>1,900</b>	<b>1%</b>	<b>1,800</b>	<b>1%</b>	0%	1,800	1%	<b>0%</b>
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>202,000</b>	<b>100%</b>	<b>202,000</b>	<b>100%</b>	0%	<b>202,000</b>	<b>100%</b>	<b>0%</b>

Notes: Results have been rounded to the nearest 100 acres and whole percent. Differences were calculated prior to rounding. Totals may appear not to equal the sum of the parts because of rounding.

We calculated impervious surface based on the National Resource Conservation Service (NRCS) (formally the Soil Conservation Service) TR-55 Manual guidance for impervious surface levels by land use category. We compared the impervious surface results to the results of the prior Quantitative ICE analysis to determine whether additional water quality modeling might be needed. Given how similar the updated results are, there appears to be little need for additional water quality modeling. The results for the Baseline, No-Build and Build Scenarios compared to the prior results are shown in Tables ES-3.

**Table ES-3: Percent Impervious Cover Results from 2010 Report Compared to 2013 Report**

Watershed Name	Impervious Cover Results from 2010 Report				Impervious Cover Results from 2013 Report				Difference in Change in Build from No-Build between 2010 Report and 2013 Report
	2007 Baseline	2030 No-Build	2030 Build	Change in Build from No-Build	2010 Baseline Updated	2030 No-Build Updated	2030 Build Updated	Change in Build from No-Build	
Study Area	18%	22%	22%	0%	18%	22%	23%	1%	1%
Beaverdam Creek	6%	7%	7%	0%	6%	7%	7%	0%	0%
Richardson Creek (Upper)	14%	18%	18%	0%	14%	18%	18%	0%	0%
Rays Fork	12%	16%	17%	1%	12%	16%	17%	1%	0%
Bearskin Creek	24%	31%	31%	0%	24%	31%	31%	0%	0%
Richardson Creek (Middle)	23%	27%	29%	2%	23%	27%	30%	3%	1%
Gourdvine Creek	6%	8%	8%	0%	6%	8%	8%	0%	0%
Salem Creek	9%	13%	14%	1%	9%	13%	16%	3%	2%
Sixmile Creek	25%	30%	30%	0%	26%	31%	31%	0%	0%
Twelvemile Creek	22%	25%	25%	0%	22%	25%	25%	0%	0%
Richardson Creek (Lower)	10%	15%	16%	1%	10%	15%	17%	2%	1%
Stewarts Creek	15%	20%	22%	2%	15%	21%	23%	2%	0%
Fourmile Creek	32%	34%	34%	0%	32%	35%	35%	0%	0%
Crooked Creek	21%	25%	27%	2%	22%	26%	28%	2%	0%
Goose Creek	13%	17%	17%	0%	13%	18%	18%	0%	0%
Irvins Creek	35%	37%	37%	0%	35%	38%	38%	0%	0%
McAlpine Creek	36%	37%	37%	0%	36%	38%	38%	0%	0%
Bakers Branch	6%	8%	8%	0%	5%	8%	8%	0%	0%
Wide Mouth Branch	10%	12%	12%	0%	10%	12%	12%	0%	0%

Notes: Results have been rounded to the nearest one whole percent. Differences were calculated prior to rounding. Totals may appear not to equal the sum of the parts because of rounding.

## E.7 What Are the Impacts Associated with the Results of the Analysis?

### Indirect Impacts to Land Use and Impervious Surface

#### *Land Use Impacts*

All changes in land use within the entire study area from the Baseline to the Build are within two percent (i.e., between negative one percent and one percent) of the change that is predicted for the 2030 No-Build. Additional development (including direct and indirect effects) estimated to occur under the 2030 Build Scenario totals approximately 3,400 acres more, about 2 percent more than the total development expected under the 2030 No-Build. The indirect land use effects are modest, totaling about 2,300 acres of additional development, an increase of less than 2 percent over the No-Build and an increase in development of about 1 percent of the total land area within the study area. Incremental effects to agricultural and forested lands are a reduction of 2,000 and 1,200 acres respectively as a result of the additional developed land. The 2030 No-Build shows a 29 percent reduction in agricultural land compared to the 2010 Baseline, whereas the 2030 Build shows a 33 percent reduction. The 2030 No-

Build shows a 27 percent reduction in forested land compared to the 2010 Baseline, whereas the 2030 Build shows a 30 percent reduction. For both forested and agricultural land uses, the decrease equals a change of less than one percent of total land. Overall, while there are sizeable reductions in agricultural and forested lands, the indirect impacts are small and the cumulative impacts are minimal as the small additional loss does not create a substantial overall impact. It is likely that some portion of the household increase would shift within the study area and the remainder would shift from elsewhere in the greater metropolitan area. However, in an effort to estimate the environmental impacts for each watershed without underestimating them, no portion of this induced household growth has been subtracted from elsewhere in the study area.

#### *Impervious Surface Impacts*

Findings show the incremental effect of the 2030 Build Scenario will be a one percent increase in impervious surface throughout the study area as compared to the change predicted for the 2030 No-Build Scenario. This results in approximately 2,000 additional acres of impervious surface. With the 2030 Build Scenario, increases in percent impervious surface as compared to the change predicted for the 2030 No-Build are found in six of the 18 watersheds. These increases are between one and three percent. There is no difference in impervious surface resulting from direct or indirect effects in the Goose Creek or Sixmile Creek watersheds between the 2030 No-Build and 2030 Build scenarios.

#### Cumulative Impacts to Water Quality

As stated above, there are small differences in impervious surfaces associated with six of the 18 watersheds in the FLUSA. It is not anticipated that these, minor changes would alter the results of the previous water quality Quantitative ICE, as they are within the standard error of such analyses. For this reason, additional water quality modeling is not required.

#### Cumulative Impacts to Endangered Species

No measureable differences in impervious surface were found between the 2030 No-Build and 2030 Build within the Goose Creek or Sixmile Creek watersheds. Therefore, no indirect effects are anticipated on the species associated with the Monroe Connector/Bypass project. As there are no indirect effects anticipated, the project does not contribute an incremental effect that would yield potential cumulative effects. Potential direct effects are not anticipated, and are addressed in the Biological Assessment (BA) for the species. For the 2030 Build, findings indicate a four percent greater decrease of land exhibiting habitat characteristics that might support the Schweinitz's sunflower as compared to the change predicted for the 2030 No-Build based on results of this study. These reductions are likely an overestimate as the land categories included do not constitute actual habitat for the species and there will remain substantial areas available for species habitat under both No-Build and Build Scenarios. Therefore, no ICEs to the sunflower are expected. The BA provides more detail on direct and potential indirect and cumulative impacts.

#### Cumulative Impacts to Land Use and Farmland

The 2030 Build is predicted to have one percent additional conversion of land to development as compared to the conversion predicted with the No-Build scenario. The composition of the development is different between the Build and the No-Build scenarios. With the 2030 Build, there is more Low Density and Medium Density Residential, Commercial, and Industrial/Office/Institutional growth. The 2030 Build is predicted to convert 2,100 additional acres of agricultural land to low density residential or other

developed uses. This represents one percent greater conversion than that predicted with the No-Build scenario for farmlands in the study area. While the raw decrease in farmland acreage seems sizeable, the vast majority of farmland loss will occur with or without the project. Therefore, the modest additional loss caused by the project does not constitute a cumulative effect.

### Cumulative Impacts to Wildlife Habitat

#### *Total Habitat Impacts*

The 2030 Build is predicted to convert approximately three percent more undeveloped vegetated land in the study area as compared to that predicted for the No-Build scenario. These conversions are mostly concentrated in Salem Creek and Richardson Creek – Lower, with some lesser amounts scattered among Richardson Creek – Middle, Stewarts Creek and Crooked Creek. The incremental losses represent a maximum of 9 to 12 percent additional loss relative to the Baseline conditions for the three most affected watersheds.

#### *Forest Fragmentation Impacts*

The forest fragmentation analysis indicates that indirect impacts will be modest but that cumulative effects may be more substantial. Nevertheless, most of the cumulative effects are likely to occur with or without the proposed project.

### Indirect and Cumulative Impacts to Traffic

Traffic levels with and without the induced land use impacts of the Monroe Connector were calculated to test the order-of-magnitude impact of induced land use on travel and congestion. Overall, these forecasted traffic levels indicate that the growth-induced impacts of the proposed project will add to the total volume of traffic in Union County and to the total vehicle miles traveled and vehicle hours traveled within the county, but the overall regional change in VMT is just one percent. Roads that connect to the Monroe Connector/Bypass will likely see some increases in traffic. Overall, however, the increases in traffic are modest and would not likely create substantial congestion issues within the design year of the project. In addition, under the Build Scenario, 2030 traffic on US 74 would decrease by approximately 20 percent relative to the No-Build Scenario with the induced growth and travel taken into account.

### Consistency with Local Plans

Overall, the projected induced growth is consistent with local plans as most jurisdictions in the eastern portions of the FLUSA, which are likely to see the greatest induced growth, have recently developed planning documents or economic plans that anticipate the proposed project.

## **E.8 How Can Indirect and Cumulative Impacts Be Minimized or Avoided?**

Cumulative effects occur because of decisions made not just by NCTA and FHWA, but also by other local, state and federal entities as well as private institutions and citizens. Separating, quantifying and minimizing and possibly avoiding the environmental effects from individual contributors continues to prove challenging and would require collaboration and coordination among the local governments within the study area along with the efforts of FHWA and NCDOT and other agencies.

First, one should note that the assumptions used in the methodology of this report and the reports summarized herein were generally designed to overestimate impacts to sensitive resources and water quality. Thus, the actual impacts in the future may be less than estimated here, as current and future regulations may prove more effective in reducing impacts from development than past regulations.

Nevertheless, cities, counties, towns and developers could do more to limit development impacts to water quality and other sensitive environmental resources. In an effort to promote the use of “nature friendly” growth management strategies, the North Carolina Wildlife Resources Commission (NCWRC) developed the Green Growth Toolbox.<sup>4</sup> The handbook for the toolbox document provides a background on green growth practices, offers tips on green planning, sample land use zoning ordinances, and provides examples of green growth projects. As discussed in Section 6, practices included in the Toolbox could reduce overall cumulative effects for development throughout North Carolina. The “Green Growth Toolbox” and LID techniques offer valuable tools for local governments and NCDOT to use for reducing cumulative effects to resources within the study area.

---

<sup>4</sup> NCWRC, 2012. <http://www.ncwildlife.org/Conserving/Programs/GreenGrowthToolbox.aspx>

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Executive Summary</b> .....	<b>i</b>
E.1 Why Was This Report Developed?.....	i
E.2 How Was Existing Land Use Modeled for this Study? .....	ii
E.3 How Did We Estimate Future Growth?.....	ii
E.4 How Were the MPO Socioeconomic Projections Developed?.....	ii
E.5 How Was Induced Growth Estimated?.....	vi
E.6 What Are the Results of the Updated ICE Analysis? .....	vii
E.7 What Are the Impacts Associated with the Results of the Analysis? .....	ix
E.8 How Can Indirect and Cumulative Impacts Be Minimized or Avoided? .....	xi
<b>Table of Contents</b> .....	<b>xiii</b>
<b>Table of Tables</b> .....	<b>xiv</b>
<b>Table of Figures</b> .....	<b>xv</b>
<b>Table of Maps</b> .....	<b>xv</b>
<b>Table of Appendices</b> .....	<b>xvi</b>
<b>Glossary</b> .....	<b>xvii</b>
<b>1.0 Introduction</b> .....	<b>1</b>
1.1 What Is the Proposed Project? .....	1
1.2 Why Is an Updated Quantitative Indirect and Cumulative Effects Analysis Needed?.....	1
1.3 What Are Indirect and Cumulative Effects?.....	2
1.4 How Is an ICE Analysis Done? .....	2
1.5 What Is the Study Area for the ICE Analysis? .....	4
1.6 What Are the Land Use Conditions and Trends in the Study Area? .....	5
<b>2.0 Existing Land Use</b> .....	<b>16</b>
2.1 How Was Existing Land Use Modeled? .....	16
<b>3.0 Review of Socioeconomic Projections</b> .....	<b>19</b>
3.1 What Is an MPO?.....	19
3.2 How Did the MPO and CDOT Develop the Projections?.....	23
3.3 How Have Other Studies Used the MRM Socioeconomic Projections .....	42
3.4 How Do the MRM Socioeconomic Projections Compare to Other Projections? .....	48
3.5 How Accurate are the MPO Projections? .....	51
3.6 Conclusions.....	51
<b>4.0 Induced Growth Assessment and Future Land Use Scenarios</b> .....	<b>54</b>
4.1 How Did the ICE Analysis Project Land Use without the Proposed Project?.....	54
4.2 How Was Project-Induced Growth Estimated? .....	56
<b>5.0 Updated Land Use Results</b> .....	<b>64</b>
5.1 What Are the Land Use Results? .....	64
5.2 How Was Impervious Surface Estimated?.....	67
5.3 What Were the Indirect Land Use Impacts? .....	71
5.4 What Were the Indirect Impervious Surface and Cumulative Water Quality Impacts? .....	73
5.5 What Were the Indirect and Cumulative Impacts to Endangered Species?.....	77
5.6 Land Use and Farmland Conversion.....	79
5.7 What Were the Cumulative Impacts to Wildlife Habitat? .....	83
5.8 What Were the Indirect and Cumulative Impacts to Traffic?.....	87
5.9 Is the Monroe Connector/Bypass Consistent with Local Plans? .....	89
5.10 Conclusions.....	90
<b>6.0 Potential Steps to Minimize Development Impacts</b> .....	<b>93</b>
<b>7.0 References</b> .....	<b>96</b>

## TABLE OF TABLES

Table ES-1: MRM Socioeconomic Projections Versions .....	iv
Table ES-2: Updated Land Use Scenario Results .....	viii
Table ES-3: Percent Impervious Cover Results from 2010 Report Compared to 2013 Report.....	ix
Table 1: Study Area Watersheds.....	4
Table 2: List of Interviews Completed in 2012 .....	6
Table 3: Zoning or Other Local Data Collected During Interviews* .....	8
Table 4: MRM Socioeconomic Projection Versions .....	24
Table 5: Roles, Factors and Accessibility Considerations of the MRM Socioeconomic Projection Process Components .....	31
Table 6: Capacity of Allocation Model to Capture Growth Influences .....	33
Table 7: Dr. Hammer’s Population Projection for the Charlotte Region.....	34
Table 8: Union County Land Development Factors .....	37
Table 9: Household and Population Projections for the Corridor Study Area (132,436 acres) .....	44
Table 10: Change in Household and Population Projections within the Corridor Study Area.....	46
Table 11: Comparison of Population Projections .....	50
Table 12: Non-Residential Land Use by Employment .....	56
Table 13: Updated 2010 Baseline Land Use.....	64
Table 14: Updated 2030 No-Build Land Use .....	65
Table 15: Updated 2030 Build Land Use.....	66
Table 16: Percent Impervious Surface for Each Land Use Category .....	67
Table 17: Updated 2010 Baseline Imperviousness Compared to Previous 2007 Baseline Imperviousness .....	68
Table 18: Updated 2030 No-Build Imperviousness Compared to Previous No-Build Imperviousness .....	69
Table 19: Updated 2030 Build Imperviousness Compared to Previous 2030 Build Imperviousness .....	70
Table 20: Indirect Land Use Comparison .....	71
Table 21: Percent Impervious Surface by Watershed and Alternative .....	73
Table 22: 2012 Clean Water Act §303(d) Impaired Streams by Watershed.....	74
Table 23: Total Conversion of Pasture/ Hay Natural Herbaceous and Barren Land Cover to Developed Land .....	78
Table 24: Total Changes in Land Use (in acres) by Watershed with the Updated 2030 No-Build Scenario Compared to the Baseline .....	80
Table 25: Total Changes in Land Use (in acres) by Watershed with the Updated 2030 Build Scenario Compared to the Baseline .....	81
Table 26: Incremental Effects of Updated 2030 Build Land Use Changes (in acres) by Watershed .....	82
Table 27: Total Changes in Undeveloped Vegetated Land and Land Cover Likely to Encompass Wetlands Compared to the Baseline .....	84
Table 28: Habitat Fragmentation Analysis Results.....	86
Table 29: County and Regional Vehicle Miles Traveled (VMT) and Vehicle Hours Traveled (VHT) .....	89

## TABLE OF FIGURES

Figure 1: Average Annualized Growth Rates Comparison.....	11
Figure 2: Lawyers Road and I-485 Small Area Land Use Plan .....	13
Figure 3: Union County Future Land Use Plan .....	15
Figure 4: Land Use Categorization Process .....	18
Figure 5: Four-Step Travel Demand Model and Inputs .....	22
Figure 6: Timeline of MRM Projection Development.....	24
Figure 7: Visualization of LUSAM Workbook Process .....	27
Figure 8: LUSAM Example, Marshville, 2009 and 2008 Interim Projections, 2015 Horizon Year .....	30

## TABLE OF MAPS

Map 1: Project Location	
Map 2: Study Area Watersheds	
Map 3: Updated Baseline 2010 Land Use Scenario	
Map 4: Charlotte Region MPOs and RPOs	
Map 5: Metrolina Model TAZs by Planning Organization	
Map 6: Travel Time to Employment Center Analysis – Employment Center Locations and Travel Time Results	
Map 7: Difference in Travel Time to Employment Centers Factor from Bottom Up Allocation	
Map 8: Difference in Land Development Factor Composite Score from Bottom Up Allocation	
Map 9: Household Density, 2030 Horizon Year, 2009 Projections	
Map 10: Employment Density, 2030 Horizon Year, 2009 Projections	
Map 11: Kenan Institute Study Zones and ICE FLUSAs	
Map 12: Household Growth by TAZ, 2005 to 2030, 2009 Projections	
Map 13: Employment Growth by TAZ, 2005 to 2030, 2009 Projections	
Map 14: Comparison of Accessibility No Build vs. Build	
Map 15: Sanitary Sewer Availability	
Map 16: Updated No-Build 2030 Land Use	
Map 17: Change in Land Use from Baseline to No-Build by Watershed	
Map 18: Updated Build Scenario 2030 Land Use	
Map 19: Change in Land Use from No-Build to Build by Watershed	

## **TABLE OF APPENDICES**

Appendix A	Interview Summaries
Appendix B	Union County Growth Factors Technical Memorandum
Appendix C	Operations Research and Education Laboratory Report
Appendix D	Metrolina Model Memorandum of Agreement
Appendix E	LUSAM Documentation
Appendix F	2008 Interim Forecasts LUSAM Model Inputs and Outputs
Appendix G	2009 Forecasts LUSAM Model Inputs and Outputs
Appendix H	Hammer Report
Appendix I	Smith Report
Appendix J	Land Use and Socio-Economic Data and Projections for the Greater Charlotte Region
Appendix K	Kenan Institute Report
Appendix L	Hartgen Analysis
Appendix M	MRM Raw Model Volume Traffic Comparison

## GLOSSARY

Term/Acronym	Definition
AADT	Annual average daily traffic Total volume of a road or highway for a given year divided by 365. This is used by planners to determine the activity at specific points along the roadway.
Air Quality Conformity	Under the Clean Air Act of 1970 (as amended), states or tribes in areas that do not meet National Ambient Air Quality Standards (NAAQS) must ensure that their federally funded transportation and infrastructure projects meet established plans to improve area air quality.
Annualized Percent Change	Growth in an area over any number of years calculated as a compounded annual growth rate.
BA	Biological Assessment A document that describes the potential effects of a project on federally or state listed species. The biological assessment is used by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service to make an effects determination under Section 7 or Section 10 of the Endangered Species Act.
Bottom Up Process	Type of analysis that focuses on smaller components first, rather than the big picture.
Build Out	Estimate of the total amount or growth and development that an area would support given a set of environmental and regulatory constraints such as zoning restrictions and stream buffer regulations.
Build Scenario	Scenario that represents future conditions with the proposed project and its potential impacts .
CAFO	Confined animal feeding operations
Carolina heelsplitter	A species of fresh water mussel (scientific name: <i>Lasmigona decorata</i> ) found only in North Carolina and South Carolina. The Carolina heelsplitter is found within the Goose Creek and Six Mile Creek watersheds in the Monroe Connector/Bypass study area.
CDOT	Charlotte Department of Transportation

<b>Term/Acronym</b>	<b>Definition</b>
CEQ	Council of Environmental Quality The CEQ was established by the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 (as amended, 40 CFR Parts 1500-1508). This office is part of the Executive Branch of government and works closely with agencies and other White House offices in the development of environmental policies and initiatives.
CFR	Code of Federal Regulations
COG	Council of Governments
Cohort Component projections	A demographic projection method that focuses on fertility, mortality and net migration to estimate total population by year.
Confidence Interval	Interval estimate of a population parameter used to indicate the reliability of an estimate. The confidence interval is a statistical range in which the correct answer is most likely to be located. Estimates with a higher degree of uncertainty (such of estimates of changes over time) have a wider confidence interval and indicates that more data should be collected for greater certainty.
Conservative Estimate	An estimate developed to provide a "worst case" scenario. When developing estimates of potential environmental effects of a transportation project, conservative estimates will maximize land development caused by the new road or highway. For revenue projections of toll highways, conservative estimates would minimize potential toll revenue.
Control Totals	The total number of populations, employment, and households. For planning purposes, control totals are the anticipated totals for a region (generally County-level or larger). Using these totals, growth is allocated within the region using other methods.
CRMPO	Cabarrus Rowan Metropolitan Planning Organization The metropolitan planning organization responsible for transportation planning in Cabarrus and Rowan Counties in North Carolina.
CSO	Combined Sewer Overflow Discharge from a combined sewer system that is caused by snowmelt and stormwater runoff.

<b>Term/Acronym</b>	<b>Definition</b>
Cumulative Effects	Cumulative impacts are the impacts on the environment caused by an action, such as a transportation/infrastructure project or land use development. The impact is added to other past, present, and future actions regardless of who undertakes the potential action. While individually these impacts may be minor, when occurring together these impacts may be significant over time.
CWA 303(d) List	Clean Water Act Section 303(d) Under the Clean Water Act Section (1972, as amended) states are required to develop a list every two years of waters that do not meet water quality objectives, provide the cause(s) of contamination, and develop a plan or schedule to address the contamination.
DEIS	Draft Environmental Impact Statement Draft report of environmental effects of a proposed action on an area of land required by the National Environmental Policy Act for major federal actions.
Demand Side Model	A demand side model examines growth in a region based on the need for goods and services rather than from a supply side model that looks at the availability of resources such as land available for development
Developable Land	Areas of land that are currently undeveloped and identified as suitable for future development.
DSA	Detailed Study Alternative An analysis of each design alternative based on cost, environmental factors, and quality of design.
DU	Dwelling Units
NCDWQ	North Carolina Division of Water Quality
EIS	Environmental Impact Statement Document used for decision making. required by the National Environmental Policy Act for certain actions, including transportation infrastructure, that may have a significant impact on the environment.

<b>Term/Acronym</b>	<b>Definition</b>
Endangered Species Act	The Endangered Species Act (ESA) of 1973 (as amended) seeks to protect the habitats upon which species listed as federally threatened or endangered depend. By protecting these sensitive habitats, the ESA seeks to preserve the diverse environmental heritage of the US for future generations.
Extrapolate	Mathematical estimation that extends current trends into the future.
FEIS	Final Environmental Impact Statement Final report of environmental effects of a proposed action on an area of land required by the National Environmental Policy Act for major federal actions.
FHWA	Federal Highway Administration
FLUSA	Future Land Use Study Area Designated area surrounding the project that could be affected if the project is completed and analyzed.
Forest Fragmentation	A form of habitat fragmentation in which forested land is developed in such a way that leaves small patches of forests. Fragmented habitats increase the stress on species and the potential for human/wildlife interactions (animals struck by vehicles, etc.)
GIS	Geographic Information Systems Integrates, stores, edits, analyzes, shares, and displays geospatial data for informing decision making
GUAMPO	Gaston Urban Area Metropolitan Planning Organization The organization that responsible for the transportation planning process in the greater Gaston County, North Carolina region.
Hartgen Analysis	Analysis of potential commercial development at rural interchange locations that reviews traffic volumes, distance to the nearest towns, and access to sewer and water services based on research by Dr. David T. Hartgen in <i>Beltways, Traffic and Sprawl: The Empirical Evidence, 1990- 1997</i> (Charlotte, NC: Center for Transportation Studies, University of North Carolina at Charlotte)

<b>Term/Acronym</b>	<b>Definition</b>
IMP	Integrated Management Practices Best practices designated by the Environmental Protection Agency to design, implement, and evaluate their stormwater management efforts.
Impervious Surface	Structures (usually artificial) that are covered by impenetrable materials such as concrete, brick, asphalt and stone. Impervious surfaces include parking lots, rooftops, roads and sidewalks. Increases in impervious surface have been linked to decreases in the overall quality of surface waters.
Indirect Effects	Effects which are caused by the project or action and occur later in time or farther in distance, but are still reasonably foreseeable. Indirect effects include land use changes, population density or growth rate, or environmental effects.
Induced Land Use Change	Changes in land use development caused by the construction of a road or other infrastructure project.
Inverse Distance Weighted Method	Analysis of distance within a scattered set of points. It assigns a greater weight to points closest to the location and the weight diminishes as a function of distance.
LID	Low Impact Development Infrastructure and urban design approach to manage stormwater runoff limiting the environmental effects and protect water quality.
LNRPO	Lake Norman Rural Planning Organization The rural planning organization responsible for Iredell, Lincoln and Cleveland Counties along with the non-urban portions of Gaston County in North Carolina.
L RTP	Long Range Transportation Plan A metropolitan planning organization's plan to assess future population growth in a metropolitan region and how to meet the growing population's mobility needs. The plan lists transportation projects that will serve the growing population and anticipated available revenue.
LUSAM	Land Use Allocation Model Analysis that measures land use changes by assigning future employment and population growth based on the current land use in a region.

<b>Term/Acronym</b>	<b>Definition</b>
MPO	Metropolitan Planning Organization A federally mandated and federally funded transportation policy-making organization in the United States that is made up of representatives from local government and governmental transportation authorities.
MRM	Metrolina Regional Model Estimation, based on socioeconomic projections, of traffic in the MUMPO region that will use transportation infrastructure in the future.
MRM05v1	2005 Metrolina Regional Model, Version 1
MRM09v1	2009 Metrolina Regional Model, Version 1
MRM11v1	2011 Metrolina Regional Model, Version 1
MRM11v1.1	2011 Metrolina Regional Model, Version 1.1
MTP	Metropolitan Transportation Plan A federal mandated document that assesses the transportation system of a region and identifies problem or shortfalls of the region's transportation system. The plan seeks to address the problems and shortfalls of the transportation system and meet demands of future growth.
MUMPO	Mecklenburg-Union Metropolitan Planning Organization responsible for the transportation development within the Charlotte, North Carolina region.
NC Data Center	A group of agencies cooperating with the US Bureau of the Census to provide the public with data about the state of North Carolina and its component geographic areas.
NCDENR	North Carolina Department of Environmental and Natural Resources
NCDOT	North Carolina Department of Transportation
NCGAP	North Carolina Gap Analysis Project State level representative of the National Gap Analysis Program sponsored by the United States Geological Survey. The GAP Analysis collects data to assess the conservation status of native terrestrial vertebrate species.
NCTA	North Carolina Turnpike Authority
NCWRC	North Carolina Wildlife Resource Commission

<b>Term/Acronym</b>	<b>Definition</b>
NEPA	National Environmental Policy Act (42 U.S.C. § 4321 United States environmental law that established national environmental policy and set up requirements for federal agencies to document environmental impacts.
No-Build Scenario	Scenario without the project or its growth-inducing impacts.
Parcel Data	Data based on County parcels. Counties will typically include information on the type(s) of development allowed and number of dwellings. This information is used to assign potential development for future land use.
Project Design Year	Time span during which a particular road, highway or bridge must adequately serve traffic needs.
Quantitative ICE	Quantitative Indirect and Cumulative Effects Assessment A report required by the National Environmental Policy Act that lists the effects of the project on the water quality and land use in the study area.
Raster Data	An image comprised of pixels that typically displays continuous data such as, land use, elevation, and weather.
RFATS	Rock Hill - Fort Mill Area Transportation Study Metropolitan Planning Organization for eastern York County, South Carolina
River Basin/Watershed	A watershed is the area of land where all of the water that is under it or drains off of it goes into the same place
ROD	Record of Decision Document issued by the Federal Highway Administration concerning a proposed highway project. The Record of Decision authorizes the respective state transportation agency to proceed with design, land acquisition, and construction based on the availability of funds.
RPO	Rural Planning Organization A voluntary association of local governments that plans rural transportation systems and advise each state's department of transportation on rural policy.
RRRPO	Rocky River Rural Planning Organization Rural planning organization serving Anson, Stanly and Union Counties in North Carolina.

<b>Term/Acronym</b>	<b>Definition</b>
SCALDS	Social Cost of Alternative Land Development Scenarios Analysis of the estimates monetary and non-monetary costs associated with land development in a region. Estimated costs include land use development, infrastructure development, air pollution, energy consumption and estimated passenger miles traveled.
NRCS	National Resource Conservation Service
SEPA	North Carolina State Environmental Policy Act A North Carolina legislative act that to review and report the environmental effects of all activities that involve an action by a State or with public money.
Socioeconomic Data	Social and economic data parameters such as, but not limited to, education, race, income, age and employment used to analyze populations.
STIP	State Transportation Improvement Program A state's comprehensive improvement plan for spending both state and federal funds on transportation projects
Stream Buffer	A vegetated area near a stream, that is usually forested, which helps shade and partially protect a stream from the impact of adjacent land use.
T&R Study	Traffic and Revenue Study A study conducted to measure the feasibility of pursuing toll financing for construction of a roadway.
TAZ	Traffic Analysis Zone Unit of geography most commonly used in conventional transportation planning models. A full definition, including how a TAZ is used in transportation planning, is provided on page 23 of this document.
TDM	Travel Demand Model Estimation, based on socioeconomic projections, of traffic that will use transportation infrastructure in the future.

<b>Term/Acronym</b>	<b>Definition</b>
TMDL	Total Maximum Daily Load - Under the Clean Water Act Section (1972, as amended) states are required to develop TMDL for waters that do not meet their designated uses (such as recreational use, drinking water, or aquatic life). A TMDL calculates the amount of a contaminant that water can carry and still meet its water quality standard. This amount of contamination is then allocated to sources of pollution throughout the watershed.
Top Down Process	A method of analysis that looks at the big picture first, then smaller components.
Traditional Neighborhood Design	Urban design approach which develops residential neighborhoods with principles including, but not limited to, include building developments with a range of housing types, a well-connected street system, integrated public spaces and some mix of uses.
TSS	Total Suspended Solids are solid materials that are suspended in water and will not pass through a filter. Suspended solids are present in sanitary wastewater and many types of industrial wastewater, as well as soil erosion from urban runoff, construction sites, and agricultural sites.
US Census Data	A population survey conducted every ten years that gathers information on location, households, income, race and education.
USACE	United States Army Corps of Engineers
USFWS	United States Fish and Wildlife Services
UZA	Urbanized Area An area of higher population density surrounding a city.
VHT	Vehicle Hours Traveled The total vehicle hours expended traveling on the roadway network in a specific area during a specific time period.
VMT	Vehicle Miles Traveled The total number of vehicle miles travelled within a specific geographic area over a given period of time.

<b>Term/Acronym</b>	<b>Definition</b>
Water Quality Quantitative ICE	Water Quality Indirect and Cumulative Effects Assessment A report that lists the effects of a project on the water quality in the study area.
WQA	Water Quality Analysis The testing or analysis of the condition of the water, including chemical, physical and biological characteristics to measure safety for humans and wildlife.
WSA	Wilbur Smith Associates
WWTP	Waste Water Treatment Plant

## **1.0 INTRODUCTION**

### **1.1 What Is the Proposed Project?**

The North Carolina Turnpike Authority (NCTA), a division of the North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT), in cooperation with the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA), proposes to construct a project known as the Monroe Connector/Bypass, which would be a controlled-access toll road extending from US 74 near I-485 in Mecklenburg County to US 74 between the towns of Wingate and Marshville in Union County, a distance of approximately 20 miles. Map 1 shows the proposed project and surrounding area. The proposed action is included in the NCDOT 2009–2015 State Transportation Improvement Program (STIP) as Project R-3329 (Monroe Connector) and Project R-2559 (Monroe Bypass) as a toll facility.

### **1.2 Why Is an Updated Quantitative Indirect and Cumulative Effects Analysis Needed?**

NCTA previously analyzed indirect and cumulative effects of the Detailed Study Alternatives for the proposed action through a Qualitative Indirect and Cumulative Effects Assessment (Qualitative ICE) completed for the Draft Environmental Impact Statement (DEIS Chapter 7) and incorporated into the Final Environmental Impact Statement (FEIS Appendix G). This analysis was expanded and extended for the Preferred Alternative through a Quantitative Indirect and Cumulative Effects Analysis for Land Use (Quantitative ICE) and Quantitative Indirect and Cumulative Effects Water Quality Analysis (WQA) completed for the Final Environmental Impact Statement (FEIS Appendices H & I). These reports were summarized in Section 2.5.5 of the FEIS and together these reports comprise the FEIS ICE analysis and conclusions. In August 2010, FHWA issued a Record of Decision (ROD) selecting Detailed Study Alternative D (DSA D) as the Selected Alternative for the proposed action based on the analysis of the DEIS and FEIS showing that this alternative had lower overall impacts to the natural environment and residential areas compared to other alternatives.

In November 2010, The North Carolina Wildlife Federation, Clean Air Carolina and Yadkin Riverkeepers (Plaintiffs) filed suit to overturn the ROD. The U.S. District Court for the Eastern District of North Carolina decided the case in October 2011, finding for FHWA and NCTA that the FEIS was sufficient. Plaintiffs appealed the decision to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Fourth Circuit and the appellate court vacated the District Court decision on May 3, 2012. The FHWA rescinded its ROD for the project on July 3, 2012 in response to the appeals court decision.

The FHWA and NCDOT conducted additional work, analysis and developed this report to address the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Fourth Circuit decision. The purpose of this report is to update the FEIS summary of the quantitative ICE effects documented in the FEIS Appendix H and to inform the public about the underlying assumptions of the models and how they were used to inform decisions for the project and the analysis. The findings of this report will be summarized and included in a draft supplemental FEIS. Furthermore, this document will

1. review the scope of this ICE analysis and conditions and trends in the study area (Section 1.0)
2. discuss the methods for developing an existing land use scenario (Section 2.0)
3. review the Metrolina Regional Model socioeconomic projections, including how other studies have used the projections, and evaluate the most appropriate use of those projections within the framework of this ICE analysis (Section 3.0)

4. explain the methods used to estimate induced growth and develop the future land use scenarios (Section 4.0)
5. report revised induced growth results and conclusions based on the updated land use scenarios (Section 5.0)
6. review measures that localities and others could adopt to minimize any impacts of future development, whether induced or not, on sensitive environmental resources (Section 6.0).

This report summarizes the conclusions reached in the evaluation of ICE and describes the data collected, methodologies used and analysis conducted for the ICE for the project. This document also re-evaluates and considers data, analytical research relevant to the project area, and new information relevant to the analysis of the indirect and cumulative effect on land use, water quality, and federally designated threatened and endangered species and their critical habitat in the surrounding area.

### **1.3 What Are Indirect and Cumulative Effects?**

**Indirect effects** are addressed under CEQ regulations, 40 CFR 1508.8 and are defined as effects “which are caused by the action and are later in time or farther removed in distance, but are still reasonably foreseeable. Indirect effects may include growth-inducing effects and other effects related to induced changes in the pattern of land use, population density or growth rate, and related effects on air and water and other natural systems, including ecosystems.”

**Cumulative effects** are addressed under two CEQ regulations, 40 CFR 1508.7 and 40 CFR 1508.25(a)(2). As stated in 40 CFR 1508.7, a “[c]umulative impact is the impact on the environment which results from the incremental impact of the action when added to other past, present, and reasonably foreseeable future actions regardless of what agency (Federal or non-Federal) or person undertakes such other actions. Cumulative impacts can result from individually minor but collectively significant actions taking place over a period of time.”

50 CFR §402.02 provides a somewhat different definition of cumulative effect to Federally listed threatened and endangered species, specifically. However, for the purposes of this analysis, Federal actions were included with the future changes that may affect protected species. This was determined to be the best approach for this study because 1) it provides a conservative (i.e., high) estimate of changes to land use, and 2) quantifying projected future Federal actions is particularly difficult. Many of the private, local, or state actions predicted in this analysis may become Federal actions in the future through permitting procedures (e.g., Clean Water Act Section 404 permit approvals by the US Army Corps of Engineers [USACE]). For this study, each reasonably foreseeable future non-Federal action was considered a contributor to the potential cumulative effect on protected species, regardless of whether it may be a Federal action in the future.

### **1.4 How Is an ICE Analysis Done?**

The National Environmental Policy Act of 1969, as amended (NEPA), the North Carolina State Environmental Policy Act (SEPA), and the United States Council on Environmental Quality (CEQ) regulations for implementing NEPA (40 Code of Federal Regulations [CFR] Parts 1500-1508) identify assessment of indirect and cumulative effects as a necessary component of environmental impact assessment for major Federal actions. The ICE analysis to evaluate potential land use changes and environmental effects associated with the Monroe Connector/Bypass project followed a process contained in guidance released in 2001 by the NCDOT, in consultation with the North Carolina Department of the

Environment and Natural Resources (NCDENR), the North Carolina State Attorney General's Office and the Association of Municipalities entitled *Guidance for Assessing Indirect and Cumulative Impacts for Transportation Projects in North Carolina, Volume I: Guidance Policy Report and Volume II: Practitioners' Handbook*.<sup>5</sup> In this guidance document, the agencies agreed to the following steps that should be taken to thoroughly assess indirect and cumulative impacts.

- Step 1: Definition of the Future Land Use Study Area (FLUSA)
- Step 2: Identification of the FLUSA's Direction and Goals
- Step 3: Inventory of Notable Features
- Step 4: Identification of Important Impact Causing Activities
- Step 5: Identification and Analysis of Potential Indirect/Cumulative Effects
- Step 6: Analyze Indirect/Cumulative Effects
- Step 7: Evaluate Analysis Results
- Step 8: Assess the Consequences and Develop Appropriate Mitigation and Enhancement Strategies.

The first five steps are undertaken for a qualitative ICE study. The last three steps are undertaken if a quantitative study is required. The ICE analysis previously conducted for the Monroe Connector/Bypass project included a qualitative analysis for inclusion and publication in the DEIS and a quantitative analysis for inclusion and publication in the FEIS.

FHWA and NCTA presented the results of the analysis of the first five steps in a Qualitative ICE, which was included in the DEIS and the FEIS as Appendix G. Based on a review of data and information available since that report was completed, the results and conclusions in the FEIS Appendix G would not be significantly different or introduce new significant impacts or information, which were not previously considered.

Subsequently, a Quantitative ICE was developed following steps six through eight and was presented in FEIS Appendix H. Because of new data, information and the results of the Fourth Circuit of the United States Court of Appeals, FHWA and NCTA have reanalyzed steps six through eight in this updated Quantitative ICE. The scope of this Quantitative ICE includes analysis of the potential of increased indirect and cumulative effects on water resources, threatened and endangered species, and in response to agency and public comment on the DEIS. The decision to use watersheds as boundaries to quantitatively analyze effects, instead of the zones presented in the Qualitative ICE, was made due to the water quality concerns expressed by resource agencies. Watershed boundaries were also used for analysis for compliance with Section 7 of the Endangered Species Act. Land use changes within watersheds were analyzed first and those results were used to estimate changes in water quality and impacts on the Carolina heelsplitter mussel. Map 2 shows each watershed within the project study area.

The Quantitative ICE analysis addresses the potential land use changes associated with the proposed project by developing three land use scenarios associated with the following conditions:

- **Existing (or Baseline) Land Use Scenario:** A scenario that reflects the land use conditions as they existed in 2010 to provide a basis for comparison for cumulative impacts assessment.

---

<sup>5</sup> NCDOT and NCDENR. *Guidance for Assessing Indirect and Cumulative Impacts for Transportation Projects in North Carolina, Volume I: Guidance Policy Report and Volume II: Practitioners' Handbook*. November 2001.

- **No-Build Land Use Scenario:** A scenario that reflects the best estimate of land use development conditions in 2030 if the proposed project is not built based on the assumptions and methods used in this report.
- **Build Land Use Scenario:** A scenario that reflects the best estimate of land use development conditions in 2030 if the proposed project is built based on the assumptions and methods used in this report.

### 1.5 What Is the Study Area for the ICE Analysis?

The NCDOT ICE Guidance indicates that the development effects of a new or improved roadway facility are most often found within one mile of an interchange, and approximately two to five miles along major intersecting roadways to the interchange. Using the ICE Guidance, it was determined for the purposes of the Draft EIS that the potential for ICE exists within about five miles of the various project alignments, which for the purpose of the study were evaluated as a single Build Alternative. This approximate five-mile radius is depicted in the Draft EIS, Figure 7-1, and is referred to in the Draft EIS and the Qualitative ICE Assessment as the Future Land Use Study Area (FLUSA).

For the more detailed purposes of this report, the Draft EIS FLUSA was expanded to include all of the Goose Creek watershed (14-digit Hydrologic Unit 03040105030020) as well as the headwaters of some of the area streams in the FLUSA. The Goose Creek watershed is located at its closest point approximately one mile north of the proposed project in northwestern Union County. Although some of the FLUSA watersheds overlap Anson County, the FLUSA was not expanded into Anson County because it lies outside the five-mile radius and does not contain special resources noted in comments on the Draft EIS. This expanded FLUSA is the area within which the Build Alternatives have the potential to affect the resources that are the subject of this report (water quality, threatened and endangered species, and land use). The expanded FLUSA is depicted in Map 1. The watersheds within the Study Area are shown in Map 2 and areas of each watershed within the study area are listed in Table 1; the Goose Creek watershed is the relatively large watershed along the northern border.

**Table 1: Study Area Watersheds**

Watershed Name	Area (Square Miles)
Beaverdam Creek	18.2
Richardson Creek (Upper)	10.6
Rays Fork	14.7
Bearskin Creek	15.2
Richardson Creek (Middle)	9.3
Gourdvine Creek	1.2
Salem Creek	21.7
Sixmile Creek	2.6
Twelvemile Creek	20.4
Richardson Creek (Lower)	23.3
Stewarts Creek	35.3
Fourmile Creek	12.1
Crooked Creek	38.3
Goose Creek	42.3
Irvin's Creek	14.8
McAlpine Creek	21.2
Bakers Branch	3.6
Wide Mouth Branch	10.8

## 1.6 What Are the Land Use Conditions and Trends in the Study Area?

To understand existing land use conditions and estimate future land use conditions, a review and assessment of land use conditions, land use regulations, growth trends, growth factors and other factors was completed. Much of this analysis was already completed in the original Quantitative ICE analysis. Additional background research for this Quantitative ICE updated included:

- Updated interviews with local planners
- The 2010 Census and growth trends and conditions in the study area
- Additional development activity
- New planning documents (such as new land use plans and new capital improvement plans).

### *Interviews*

In 2008, the study team interviewed planners with local jurisdictions within the FLUSA, such as the Council of Governments (COG) and city, county and town planning department representatives, as part of the Qualitative ICE Assessment. In August 2009, the study team interviewed the same organizations as part of the FEIS Quantitative ICE, with follow-up questions as necessary. In September 2012, the study team interviewed representatives of the same organizations again to determine if any new information was available to inform the update of the ICE analysis as these organizations are the most knowledgeable about current and future growth trends and land use patterns in the study area. Table 2 lists the organizations that were the focus of these recent interviews, the individual respondents, and the dates of contact. The study team was unable to schedule an interview with the mayor of Hemby Bridge. Additionally, the project team was unable to meet with staff from the Village of Lake Park, but their most recent Unified Development Ordinance was obtained. Beyond those staff and officials who were officially interviewed as documented in Table 2, the study team also coordinated with other staff and officials at NCDOT, MUMPO, the Charlotte Department of Transportation (CDOT), the Rocky River Rural Planning Organization (RRRPO) and many others, as documented in the administrative record, throughout the research, analysis and documentation phases of this report.

Each interview began with an introduction of the study and its purpose. A map of the study area was provided to facilitate communication, as were past interview summaries as applicable. The purpose of the interviews was to identify changes to future land use scenarios since the 2009 interviews for the Quantitative ICE and gather any new or updated databases or GIS data that would be useful to the analysis. The following data was requested:

- Approved developments
- Updated zoning
- Information on current stream buffer or other environmental protection areas
- Water and sewer utility information
- Water and sewer priority areas
- Future land use projections
- Existing land use
- Approved population and employment projections and anticipated variations from projections with each land use scenario.

**Table 2: List of Interviews Completed in 2012**

Organization	Respondent	Date of Interview
Town of Wingate	Patrick Niland – Town Manager	September 6, 2012
Centralina COG	Diane Dil – Centralina Planner I	September 12, 2012
Town of Matthews	Kathi Ingrish – Planning Director	September 10, 2012
Town of Unionville	Sonya Gaddy – Land Use Administrator	September 11, 2012
Union County Planning	Amy Helms – Water and Land Resources Division Manager Scott Huneycutt – Engineering Division Manager Richard “Dick” Black – Planning Director	September 12 & 19, 2012
Town of Marshville	Amanda Reid – Town Manager	September 12, 2012
Town of Indian Trail	Shelley DeHart – Director of Planning and Neighborhood Services Adam McLamb, Civil Engineer	September 14, 2012
Town of Mint Hill	John Hoard - Planner	September 14, 2012
Town of Weddington	Jordan Cook - Town Planner and Zoning Administrator	September 25, 2012
Town of Wesley Chapel	Josh Langen – Planning and Zoning Administrator	September 12, 2012
Charlotte – Mecklenburg Planning	Debra Campbell – Director, Charlotte-Mecklenburg Planning Department	September 14, 2012
City of Monroe	Doug Britt – Senior Planner	September 11, 2012
Town of Fairview	Ed Humphries – Land Use Administrator	September 11, 2012
Town of Stallings	Brian Matthews – Town Manager Lynne Hair – Town Planner	September 14, 2012
Union County Partnership for Progress*	Gretchen Carson – Planner Melanie O’Connell Underwood – Interim Director	September 27, 2012
Union County Planning*	Richard “Dick” Black – Planning Director	January 21, 2013
CSX Corporation*	Vance E. Bennett Jim Van Derzee	November 29-30, 2012
Monroe-Union County Economic Development	R. Christopher Platé – Executive Director Gretchen Carson – Project Manager	October 2, 2013

\*-Contacted after the initial round of interviews to obtain information on the Proposed Legacy Park Development

Prior to the discussion, staff provided a list of the questions to the respondents. Appendix A contains complete minutes from all of the interviews. The following 11 questions were asked during interviews with local planners (the interviews conducted concerning Legacy Park included different questions, which are documented in the appendix):

1. *The August 2009 interview covered land use and economic development trends, growth management and natural resource protection – in general, have any of these dynamics affecting future land use changed since the previous interview?*
2. *Have any changes to future land use plans, transportation plans or other plans, policies or projections been made that incorporate information from the 2010 Census?*
3. *Have new or amended land use regulations been developed since August of 2009? Please see the list we have provided of documents we collected and reviewed during the previous environmental*

documentation effort. Are there any updates to those plans or regulations? If there have been any changes, please provide specific web link or a copy of the document.

4. Has the local regulation of natural resources (including stream buffers) changed since August 2009? If so, how?
5. What can you tell us about any proposed or approved developments that have come to light since the August 2009 interviews? What information is available about any of these planned or approved developments that are not built yet? Can you provide any details and locations for these projects?
6. Have long-term growth expectations changed since the previous interview and if so how?
7. Has the city/town/county updated its Comprehensive Plan or Land Use plan since August 2009?
  - o If so, does this updated plan reflect conditions in the future with or without the Monroe Connector/Bypass?
8. We are reviewing and considering the predictions of future growth (2030 forecast year) included in the previous EIS. Are there any other factors that have changed since August 2009 that might affect the level of future growth and the location of that growth in your community?
  - o Do these changes reflect the future with the Monroe Connector/Bypass, without the Monroe Connector/Bypass, or is there no difference on that basis?
9. Have there been any changes in capacity of utility infrastructure or expectations about the future capacity since the last round of interviews? Do any of those changes affect growth expectations?
10. Are you or other planners or development review staff familiar with the North Carolina Wildlife Resources Commission “Green Growth Toolbox”? (<http://216.27.39.101/greengrowth/>)
  - o Have you attempted to implement any of the practices, ordinances or other policies recommended by the toolbox?
  - o Have you attempted to incorporate any other low-impact design type policies into zoning, subdivision or other land development ordinances?
  - o How would you rate the likelihood of incorporating any low-impact design principles in future regulations or plans?

Supplemental questions were asked pertaining to the specific interviewee’s location or expertise. Face-to-face interviews were conducted to the extent practical. The interviews generally took between 30 and 60 minutes to complete. Notable information included:

- Often, zoning maps provided the best representation of current land use, while land use plans provided the best representation of future land use. Much of this information was available as GIS data.
- Some land use plans were in the process of being updated and were not yet available for this study. For example, Indian Trail was in the process of updating their Comprehensive Land Use Plan. Marshville indicated that the next update of their land use plan would include the Monroe Bypass/Connector. The City of Monroe was developing the US 74 Corridor revitalization Plan, which included the Monroe Bypass/Connector in its assumptions. Older land use plans tended not to include the Monroe Connector/Bypass, while the updated plans usually included the project.
- Based on the 2010 Census, the MUMPO Urbanized Area is expanding to include Marshville.
- Mecklenburg County now administers the Goose Creek Management Plan<sup>6</sup>

---

<sup>6</sup> This is a plan to guide restoration, retrofit and preservation efforts aimed at achieving specific goals for improving water quality conditions in the Goose Creek Watershed in Mecklenburg County such that these waters meet or

- Goose Creek Water Quality Recovery Program Plan for the Fecal Coliform TMDL (Total Maximum Daily Load) was revised in 2010. This is a plan to reduce fecal coliform impairments based on the TMDL report completed in 2005.
- Areas in the eastern portion of the study area were more likely to indicate that their future plans included the Monroe Connector/Bypass and that the implementation of certain aspects of their plans was contingent on the development of the facility.
- Water and Sewer moratoria were rescinded in Union County in 2012.

**Plans and Ordinances**

Specific documents or information obtained during the interview process are summarized in Table 3.

In addition, CDOT staff were interviewed on June 19, 2012 to discuss the TAZ projections and any updates to their data since they were developed in 2008. Further communications were conducted with CDOT staff as this report was prepared. Summaries of that interview and follow up communications are provided in Appendix A along with the interviews listed in Table 3.

**Table 3: Zoning or Other Local Data Collected During Interviews\***

Jurisdiction/Area	Document	Year
Goose Creek Watershed	Goose Creek Water Quality Recovery Program Plan for the Fecal Coliform TMDL	2010
City of Monroe	Zoning Ordinance	Modified 2010
	List of Current Developments	Modified 2009
Village of Lake Park	Unified Development Ordinance	Draft 2012
Town of Unionville	Zoning Map	Updated 2011
	Future Land Use Map	2005
	Zoning Amendments	Modified 2012
Town of Fairview	Future Land Use Map	Modified 2010
	Land Use Ordinance	Updated 2009
Town of Stallings	<b>Unified Development Ordinance</b>	Adopted 2012
	Post Construction Ordinance	Adopted 2010
Town of Mint Hill	Unified Development Ordinance	Adopted 2011
	Lawyers Road & I-485 Small Area Plan	Adopted 2011
	Pedestrian Master Plan	Adopted 2011
Town of Marshville	Urbanized Area Expansion	Updated 2010
	<b>Comprehensive Pedestrian Plan</b>	Adopted 2010
	<b>Comprehensive Transportation Plan</b>	Updated 2010

---

exceed their State designated uses and are no longer rated as impaired on 303(d) lists. *Goose Creek Watershed Management Plan*. Charlotte-Mecklenburg Storm Water Services. October 31, 2009.  
<http://charmeck.org/stormwater/Projects/Documents/GooseCreekWatershedManagementPlan.pdf>

Monroe Connector/Bypass Draft Quantitative Indirect and Cumulative Effects Analysis Update

Jurisdiction/Area	Document	Year
Town of Wingate	Land Use Ordinance	Updated 2010
	<b>Wingate 2020 Plan (Comprehensive Plan and Concept Plan)</b>	Adopted 2010
	Wingate Mixed Use Center Plan	Draft 2012
Town of Weddington	Local Area Regional Transportation Plan	Updated 2009
	Land Use Map	Modified 2012
	Zoning Map	Modified 2011
	Land Use Plan	Modified 2011
Village of Wesley Chapel	Flood Damage Prevention Ordinance	Updated 2009
	Subdivision Ordinance	Updated 2011
	Western Union County Local Area Regional Transportation Plan	Prepared 2009
	Zoning Ordinance	Updated 2012
Town of Matthews	Zoning Code	Modified 2010
	Unified Development Ordinance	Draft 2012
	Downtown Master Plan	Draft 2012
	<b>Town of Matthews Land Use Plan</b>	Draft 2012
	Demographic/Economic Update	Prepared 2012
Charlotte-Mecklenburg	Growth Framework	Adopted 2010
	FY 2013-2017 Capital Improvements, including 10-Year Needs for Water and Sewer Projects	Updated 2012
	Water Quality Buffer Implementation Guidelines	Updated October 2011
	Floodplain Ordinance	Adopted 2012
Union County	Water Allocation Policy	Updated 2012
	Sewer Policy	Updated 2012
	Union County Water and Sewer Extension Ordinance	Updated 2012
	Carolina Thread Trail Master Plan	Adopted 2011
	Union County Land Use Ordinance	Adopted 2008
	Union County Thoroughfare Plan	Updated 2008
	<b>Union County 2025 Comprehensive Plan</b>	Adopted October 2010
	<b>Comprehensive Water and Wastewater Master Plan</b>	December 2011
<b>US 74 Corridor Revitalization Study</b>	Underway	

\*Bolded documents include the Monroe Connector/Bypass

### Growth Trends and Factors

A review of critical growth factors and trends indicates that Union County maintains a number of advantages relative to other suburban jurisdictions in the region. These growth trends and factors are discussed in detail in Appendix B. First, Union County has more land available for development than Mecklenburg, Gaston or Cabarrus counties. Union County has the highest median income of all surrounding counties, it has affordable housing relative to its median income level, and it has one of the best school districts in the region based on SAT scores and graduation rates. In terms of commute times, the interesting trend is that despite having one of the highest average commute times over the last decade, Union County has grown faster than any other county in the region. This finding suggests that factors other than accessibility to jobs are encouraging households to choose to locate in Union County. For the past decade, Union County has exhibited strong growth, and the factors driving those trends are poised to continue attracting growth to Union County regardless of whether the Monroe Connector/Bypass is constructed.

These findings are further supported by the analysis of the Operations Research and Education Laboratory of the Institute for Transportation Research and Education at North Carolina State University's February 28, 2007 *Land Use Study Final Report 2006-2007* (Appendix C). In its research on behalf of the Union County Public Schools, it described the leading factor of growth in Union County as its location within the Charlotte-Mecklenburg region. The Operations Research and Education Laboratory of the Institute for Transportation Research and Education determined the western area of Union County continues to experience a substantial population increase as a result of its desirable location. Marvin, Waxhaw, Weddington, Wesley Chapel and other western Union County suburbs continue to experience high demand for single-family homes. The report also listed the following other factors contributing to growth in Union County.

- Low taxes
- Good quality schools
- Comparatively reasonable land prices.

The report described the availability and cost of undeveloped land as a factor of future growth in the western part of the county. It concluded that a reduction in raw land would push development toward the eastern part of the county. The report described the eastern expansion of growth towards Monroe as constrained by a lack of easy access to Charlotte and Mecklenburg County.

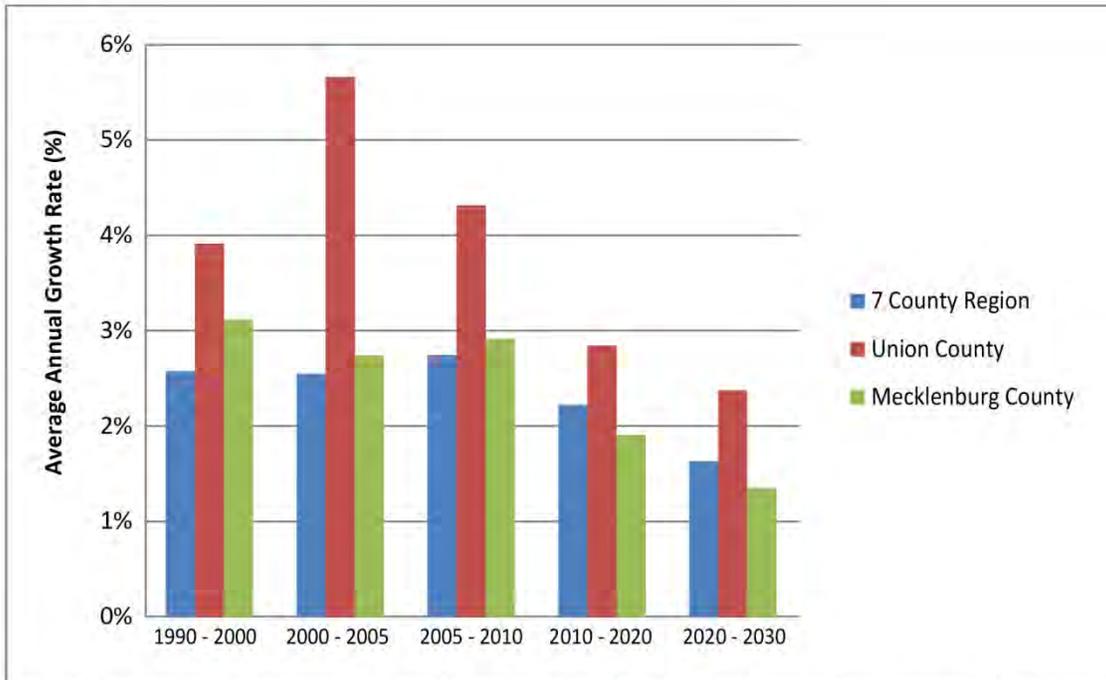
Lastly, a review of current growth trends and projected growth trends suggests that while growth has slowed in Union County since 2005, it has still grown at a pace above the regional average. While the MPO projections still foresees a growth rate above the regional average into the future, the projected growth rate is expected to decline dramatically. To reach the projected 337,317 estimate of population by 2030, growth in Union County would have to slow to an average annualized growth rate of 2.6 percent, based on the 2010 Census count. Figure 1<sup>7</sup> shows the differences in average annual growth rates across the five different periods (1990 to 2000, 2000 to 2005, 2005 to 2010, 2010 to projected 2020 and projected 2020 to projected 2030). The difference between 2000-2005, 2005-2010, 2010-2020 and 2020-

---

<sup>7</sup> Figure 1 compares growth rates to a 7 county region as the TAZ level forecasts for whole counties are only available for Cabarrus, Gaston, Lincoln, Mecklenburg, Rowan, Union and York Counties.

2030 average annual growth rates reflects a typical “s-curve” of decreasing growth rates over time as a population base expands.

**Figure 1: Average Annualized Growth Rates Comparison**



Note: The adopted MUMPO forecasts for whole counties are only available for Cabarrus, Gaston, Lincoln, Mecklenburg, Rowan, Union and York Counties.

Sources: US Census 2000 and 2010, MUMPO 2009 Socioeconomic Forecasts

**Specific Updates from Prior Quantitative ICE Analysis**

Based on the interviews and review of documents provided by local jurisdictions, this section outlines the new information that prompted modifications to the future land use scenarios, compared to the prior Quantitative ICE analysis.

**Charlotte/Mecklenburg County:** There were no major changes to growth expectations or land use plans. Local planners did note one subdivision and zoning update of a 24-acre parcel on land that previously was identified as Industrial or Undeveloped in the future scenarios of the last Quantitative ICE analysis. The area is now expected to develop as High Density Residential in the future under any scenario.

**Matthews:** There were no major changes in growth expectations or land use plans. Local planners did note one zoning change and one planned land use change affecting about 275 acres of land. These changes affected land that was previously identified as Low Density Residential Development or Undeveloped in the future scenarios of the last Quantitative ICE analysis. These areas were now expected to develop as Commercial, High Density Residential or Low Density Residential Development in the future under any scenario.

**Mint Hill:** There were no major changes in growth expectations but some changes to land use plans as a small area land use plan has been developed for the area around Lawyers Road and I-485 (see Figure 2).<sup>8</sup> The entire small area plan covers over 1,200 acres of land. In the prior Quantitative ICE analysis, most of this area was already designated as developed, as either Commercial or Low Density Residential. With the new information, some of the land previously identified as Low Density Residential is now identified as Medium Density Residential, Commercial, Institutional or Undeveloped (in the case of those areas identified as Open Space in the Small Area Plan). These updated development plans are expected to occur under any scenario.

**Stallings:** There were no major changes in growth expectations, land use plans or zoning that would necessitate adjustments to the ICE land use scenarios.

**Indian Trail:** There were no major changes in growth expectations or land use plans. One zoning change involves a 28-acre development. In the prior Quantitative ICE analysis, this area had been identified as a Low Density Residential Area. This area is now being zoned as Commercial and is expected to develop as Commercial under any scenario.

**Wesley Chapel:** There were no major changes in growth expectations, land use plans or zoning that would necessitate adjustments to the ICE land use scenarios.

**Fairview:** The town has adopted a new land use plan with some important changes. Specifically the town has added some commercial nodes at major intersections and is working with the County on expanding water and sewer availability at the US 601 and NC 218 intersection. The new land use plan calls for a commercial district at this intersection as well as at NC 218 and Mill Grove Road (SR-1525) and at US 601 and Lawyers Road (SR-1612). The new land use plan also calls for a new Industrial node along Price Tucker Road (SR-1603) and at NC 218 and Old Dutch Road (SR-1542). All of these new nodes are expected to develop with or without the Monroe Connector/Bypass. In the prior Quantitative ICE analysis, these areas were expected to be Low Density Residential and Undeveloped areas. These areas are now expected to develop as Commercial and Industrial areas under any scenario.

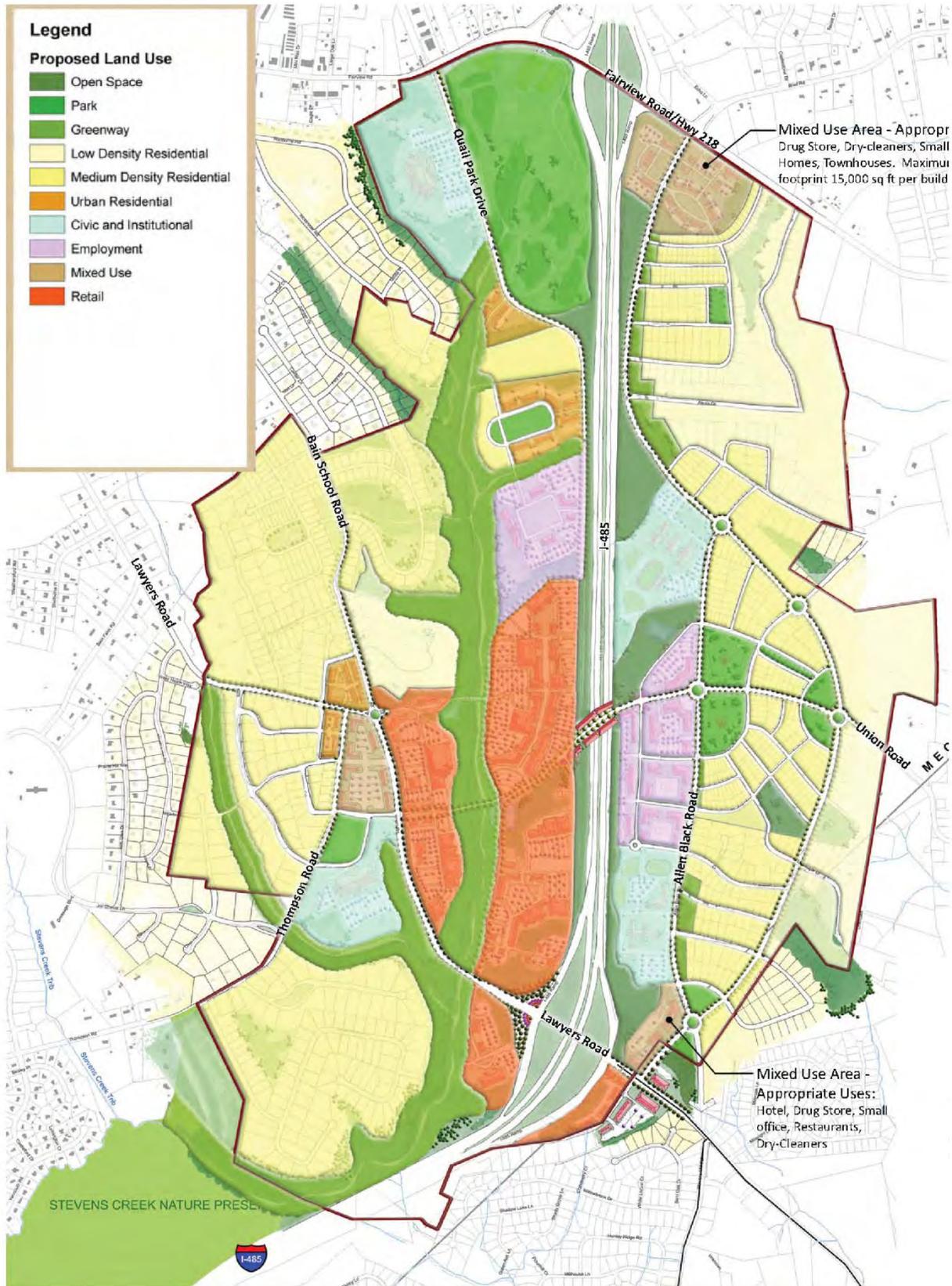
**Unionville:** Town officials noted that their land use plan includes some commercial clusters at US 601 and Ridge Road (SR-1504) (near the proposed 601 interchange), US 601 and Unionville-Indian Trail Road (SR-1367), US 601 and Lawyers Road (SR-1612), which were not fully incorporated into the previous Quantitative ICE analysis. Most of these clusters are expected to develop under any scenario; however, the cluster near the proposed US 601 interchange with the Monroe Connector/Bypass would likely see greater development build-out if the Monroe Connector/Bypass were built. In the prior Quantitative ICE analysis, these areas were designated as Low Density Residential and Undeveloped but are now expected to develop as Commercial with more Commercial development expected if the proposed project is built.

**Monroe:** There were no major changes in growth expectations or land use plans that would necessitate adjustments to the ICE. Local planners noted that there were zoning changes affecting parcels totaling about 80 acres that were previously identified as Low Density Residential in the previous Quantitative ICE analysis but that would now be expected to develop as Institutional and Commercial under any scenario.

---

<sup>8</sup> *Lawyers Road & I-485 Small Area Plan, Future Land Use Map*

Figure 2: Lawyers Road and I-485 Small Area Land Use Plan, Town of Mint Hill



**Union County:** The County has adopted a new land use plan that provides more detailed information on growth expectations in the eastern end of the county if the proposed project is built (see Figure 3)<sup>9</sup>. Specifically, the county plan shows larger swaths of Medium Density Residential development at the eastern end of the Monroe Connector/Bypass corridor in response to the expectation of the proposed project. Their definition of “medium density”, however, generally falls within the Low Density Residential category (2 units per acre or fewer) used in this Quantitative ICE analysis. This is the same section of the corridor where the previous Quantitative ICE analysis showed the greatest additional development. The new plan suggests planners, planning commissioners and elected officials expect the development to extend a bit farther than the previous plan anticipated.

To address these higher growth expectations, the study team analyzed the expected development in the TAZ level projections for this area. An additional 10 years of household growth was assumed to occur in this swath of the county north of Wingate and Marshville if the proposed project were built. The resulting land use adjustments affect land that was previously identified as Undeveloped; this area would now be expected to develop as Low Density Residential if the proposed project were built.

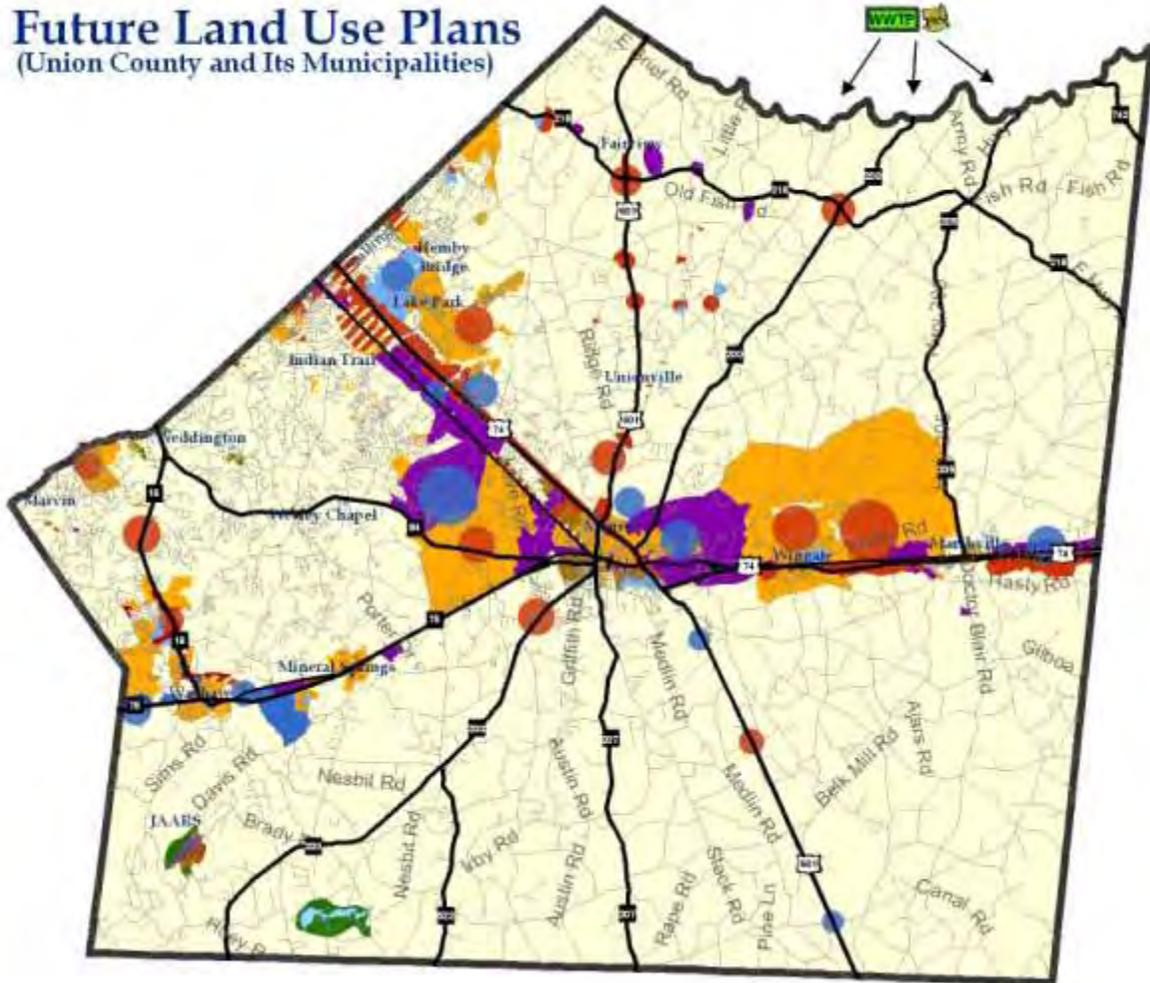
**Wingate:** There were no major changes in expectations, land use or zoning requiring adjustments to the ICE. The previously Quantitative ICE analysis used the town zoning to determine the most appropriate allocation and density of development under a No-Build Scenario. For the Build Scenario in the prior Quantitative ICE analysis, the study team incorporated many of the proposed zoning changes noted in the Strategic Plan for Economic Development, Town of Marshville, Town of Wingate (2008) as this plan assumes construction of the Monroe Connector/Bypass. These assumptions appear to remain reasonable and valid based on discussions with local planners.

**Marshville:** There were no major changes in growth expectations, land use plans or zoning that would necessitate adjustments to the ICE land use scenarios (see Wingate discussion above).

---

<sup>9</sup> *Union County 2025 Comprehensive Plan*, p 33

Figure 3: Union County Future Land Use Plan



**Legend**

- County Boundary
- Railroad
- Water Features

**Future Land Use:**

- RESIDENTIAL**
  - Low-Density (0-100 DU/Acre)
  - Medium-Density (1-25 DU/Acre)
  - Urban-Density (25+ DU/Acre)
- MIXED-USE**
  - Mixed-Use / Town Center
  - Commercial Center
  - Industrial
  - Employment Center (Office, Industrial, other)
  - Office/Institutional
- OTHER**
  - Parks and Open Space
  - Rural Conservation Area
- NOTES**
  - Future Need for County Park for This Area of County
  - Future Need for Waste Water Treatment Plant for This Area of County

## 2.0 EXISTING LAND USE

### 2.1 How Was Existing Land Use Modeled?

Existing land use was developed using parcel-based data from both Mecklenburg and Union counties combined with zoning layers from all the local jurisdictions and the NCGAP<sup>10</sup> land cover dataset, which is based on 1992 aerial photography. The existing land cover is largely a combination of these three data sets, with developed land based on current parcel data and the NCGAP data filling in the land cover types where parcels are undeveloped. Each parcel was classified as developed or undeveloped. Undeveloped properties included vacant land and farms. For parcels in the developed category, each was assigned one of five land use categories based on its zoning category and land use attributes from the parcel assessment records. The five categories were:

1. Low Density Residential
2. Medium Density Residential
3. High Density Residential
4. Commercial
5. Industrial/Office/Institutional.

Spot checks for the assessment were conducted by comparing recent aerial photography (2010) of the Study Area with the assessed land use. In addition to the zoning and parcel land use attributes, Union County provided a list of parcels that had applied for tax deferral based on agricultural use. This list was used to categorize farm properties as undeveloped. Aerial photography was used to identify farm properties in Mecklenburg County and also to check for other farms in Union County that were not included in the farm deferral list provided by the County.

Once each parcel was assigned to one of these five development categories or the undeveloped category, the parcel polygon feature class was converted to a raster image. A raster is a rectangular grid where each cell or pixel within the grid represents one unit of area and contains a value (which in this analysis represents land use). For this analysis, all rasters were formatted with a 30x30 meter cell size to match the NCGAP land cover dataset. Each raster cell is a 30x30 meter square, or about one quarter of an acre. For undeveloped properties, the NCGAP raster dataset was used to fill in the natural and farm land covers within those areas. Since parcels do not cover all land in the Study Area, a provision had to be made to account for areas outside parcel boundaries. Since nearly all land not included within a parcel boundary is a road right-of-way, these areas were categorized as transportation uses. Figure 4 illustrates how the existing land use raster was developed. It shows for an example area how the parcels were categorized and converted to a raster and then the undeveloped areas were filled in with the NCGAP land cover.

The resulting land cover is a raster image consisting of over 900,000 individual cells, each cell categorized into one of 26 land use categories. The 26 land cover categories consist of: 5 developed

---

<sup>10</sup> The Gap Analysis Program is a national program with the mission of developing key datasets needed to assess biological diversity across the nation. The North Carolina Gap Analysis Project (NCGAP) was a state affiliate based at the North Carolina Cooperative Fish and Wildlife Research Unit and charged with developing those data for the state. A map of North Carolina's land cover was developed using Landsat TM satellite imagery acquired in 1991 and 1992.

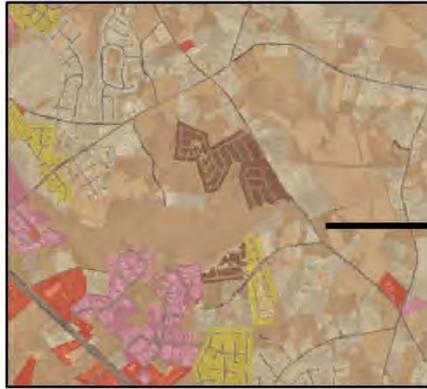
categories, 1 transportation category, 2 farm categories, 16 vegetation categories from the NCGAP land cover, and 2 barren categories from the NCGAP land cover. Existing land use, or Baseline condition, is presented in Map 3. To simplify the display of the land cover, many categories have been aggregated into larger categories in Maps 3, 16 and 18. These aggregated categories are:

- Agricultural Fields: includes both the Agricultural Fields and the Agricultural Pasture/Hay and Natural Herbaceous.
- Barren: includes both Barren (bare rock and sand) and Barren (quarries, strip mines, and gravel pits).
- Forested: includes Coniferous Cultivated Plantation (natural / planted), Successional Deciduous Forests, Piedmont Xeric Pine Forests, Piedmont Dry-Mesic Pine Forests, Piedmont Xeric Woodlands, Piedmont/ Mountains Dry-Mesic Oak and Hardwood Forests, Piedmont Mesic Forest, Xeric Pine-Hardwood Woodlands and Forests.
- Other Natural: includes Piedmont/Mountain Submerged Aquatic Vegetation, Piedmont/Mountain Emergent Vegetation, Riverbank Shrublands, Floodplain Wet Shrublands.

**Figure 4: Land Use Categorization Process**

**Parcel Categorization**

Parcels categorized based on zoning and land use attributes from assessment database. Aerial Photography used to spot check for accuracy. 5 Developed categories.



**Land Use Category**

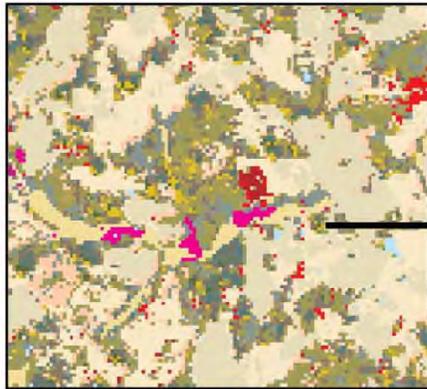
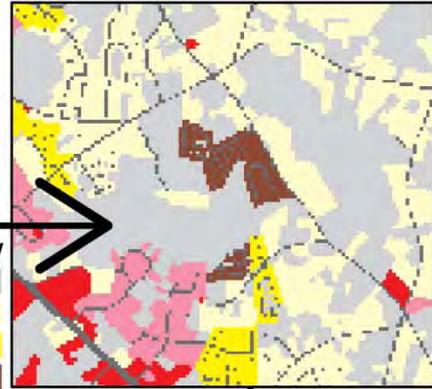
- Undeveloped
- Low Density Residential
- Medium Density Residential
- High Density Residential
- Commercial
- Industrial/Office/Institutional

**Land Use Category**

- Undeveloped
- Low Density Residential
- Medium Density Residential
- High Density Residential
- Commercial
- Industrial/Office/Institutional
- Transportation

**Parcel to Raster Conversion**

Parcels converted to raster layer and transportation use is added to the empty spaces between the parcels. 6 Developed categories.



**Natural Background Land Cover Categories**

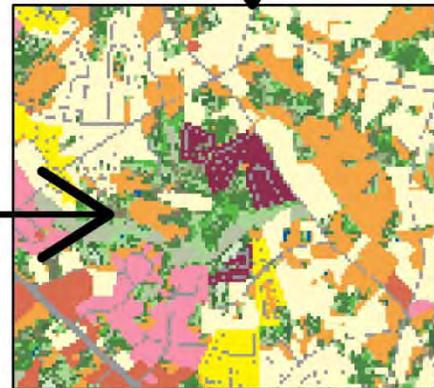
NCGAP Landcover developed in 1992 serves as the "background" land cover for natural areas. The 3 developed categories (Residential Urban, Urban Low and Urban High) were removed prior to merging with the developed land cover. 20 Natural categories.

**Final Existing Land Use Categories From Parcel Categorization**

- Low Density Residential
- Medium Density Residential
- High Density Residential
- Commercial
- Industrial/Office/Institutional
- Transportation

**From NCGAP**

- Open Water
- Agricultural Fields
- Barren (bare rock and sand)
- Barren (quarries, strip mines, and gravel pits)
- Coniferous Cultivated Plantation
- Dry Mesic Oak Pine Forests
- Floodplain Wet Shrublands
- Piedmont Deciduous Mesic Forest
- Piedmont Dry-Mesic Oak and Hardwood Forests
- Piedmont Dry-Mesic Pine Forests
- Piedmont Emergent Vegetation
- Piedmont Mixed Bottomland Forests



**Merged Land Cover**

Rasterized Parcel Land Cover and NCGAP Land Cover are merged to produce a complete land cover including developed and natural categories. Parcel Land Cover takes precedence. NCGAP is only included in the areas categorized as "Undeveloped" in the Parcel Land Cover.

26 Total Land Cover categories  
6 Developed  
20 Natural

- Piedmont Oak Bottomland and Swamp Forests
- Piedmont Submerged Aquatic Vegetation
- Piedmont Xeric Pine Forests
- Piedmont Xeric Woodlands
- Riverbank Shrublands
- Successional Deciduous Forest
- Xeric Pine-Hardwood Woodlands and Forests

### 3.0 REVIEW OF SOCIOECONOMIC PROJECTIONS

To assess potential impacts from induced development, two future land use scenarios are needed: a No-Build that reflects the future without the proposed project and a Build that reflects the future with the proposed project. Research on induced growth impacts of transportation investments indicates that typically induced development impacts fully arise within eight years of the opening of new roads or new capacity.<sup>11</sup> Therefore, if the proposed project is expected to be open to traffic before 2020, a 2030 horizon year would be an appropriate and reasonable analysis year. Since the prior Quantitative ICE analyzed 2030 conditions, it would also be appropriate to maintain that analysis year to make comparisons easier.

Since the Quantitative ICE analysis is looking at land use changes at the watershed level, the next question is how to estimate future growth under either scenario at that level of detail. Many entities, such as state level demographic agencies, private forecasters such as Woods and Poole, and even universities, produce projections of population and employment at the county, regional or state level, and these projections could be used to estimate growth in the study area. However, none of these sources provide detail on where that growth may occur below the level of individual counties. Metropolitan Planning Organizations (MPOs) develop similar projections of population and employment and, due to their federally mandated planning efforts, their projections typically include much smaller geographic divisions. MPO projections, therefore, represent the best available resource for population and employment projections at the necessary geographic and temporal scales to reasonably estimate quantitative land use impacts of transportation projects.

#### 3.1 What Is an MPO?

MPOs have been required under federal law since the early 1970s. Federal regulations requires any Census Bureau defined urbanized area (UZA) of at least 50,000 people to have an MPO to develop regional transportation plans and programs through a continuing, cooperative and comprehensive (3-C) transportation planning process (23 U.S.C. 134 and 135). An MPO is required to develop a number of planning documents to guide the planning and funding of transportation improvements across the metropolitan region. To address the long-range transportation needs of a region, MPOs are required under federal regulations to estimate and accommodate the mobility needs for persons and goods in their Metropolitan Transportation Plans (MTP). This requirement, therefore, necessitates estimating the long-range travel needs of their respective regions. As such, most MPOs use some form of travel demand modeling to estimate the long-range travel needs for their regions and help in addressing other policy concerns such as transportation conformity (through emissions estimates), estimation of freight movement and of non-motorized trips. Most MPOs, including those in the Charlotte region, use a standard four-step travel demand model while a few MPOs have begun using more advanced modeling techniques such as activity-based models.

#### What Is the Metrolina Regional Travel Demand Model and How Does It Relate to the MPO Projections?

The main reason that MPOs prepare regional socioeconomic projections is to operate a regional travel demand model (TDM). The TDM is used to project future travel demand for use in transportation planning activities. In the Metrolina region, the TDM is called the Metrolina Regional Model (MRM).

---

<sup>11</sup> Cervero, Robert. "Road Expansion, Urban Growth and Induced Travel: A Path Analysis." *Journal of the American Planning Association*. Vol. 69, No. 2. Spring 2003, p 158.

This model is used for the four major tasks that MPOs must complete as part of their federally mandated planning responsibilities:

1. Identifying existing transportation conditions and deficiencies on the major segments of the transportation network within the region
2. Identifying future transportation conditions and deficiencies on the major segments of the transportation network within the region
3. Prioritizing projects for inclusion in LRTPs and a plan of implementation for inclusion in the Transportation Improvement Plan
4. Demonstrating conformity to the National Ambient Air Quality Standards established by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), under the Clean Air Act, for the EPA designated non-attainment area(s) within the region (also known as the air quality conformity process).

Based on the *Metrolina Regional Travel Demand Model Memorandum of Agreement* (Appendix D), the Charlotte Department of Transportation (CDOT) is the custodian for the MRM and all its constituent parts (network files, socioeconomic data and projections, programming scripts, trip tables and any other files necessary to run the model). The MRM is the main tool used by state, regional and local planning agencies to assess regional travel patterns. The MRM covers the following areas, also shown in Map 4:

- Cabarrus-Rowan Metropolitan Planning Organization (CRMPO): Cabarrus and Rowan Counties
- Gaston Urban Area Metropolitan Planning Organization (GUAMPO): Most of Gaston County
- Mecklenburg-Union Metropolitan Planning Organization (MUMPO): All of Mecklenburg and most of Union County
- Part of the Lake Norman Rural Planning Organization (LNRPO): Iredell, Lincoln and Cleveland Counties and the remainder of Gaston County
- Part of the Rocky River Rural Planning Organization (RRRPO): Stanly and Anson Counties and the remainder of Union County
- All of York County and part of Lancaster County, South Carolina, including all areas within the Rock Hill-Fort Mill Area Transportation Study (RFATS, the MPO for eastern York County).

As custodian of the model, CDOT leads the model team and leads the model development and maintenance process, including all its constituent parts such as socioeconomic projections. Most CDOT staff members who oversee the model are also staff to MUMPO.

In addition to the above tasks, the MPO and others may use the travel demand model or its component parts to complete other planning or analytical tasks related to land use, transportation or environmental planning within the region. Often, in completing the necessary environmental studies, DOTs or others will use MPO socioeconomic projections and travel demand models for traffic forecasting or land use analysis as the MPO projections and travel demand models are often the only readily available source or tools available to complete the necessary analyses. As shown in Figure 5, the regional travel demand model is a “Four-Step Model” that uses the projections of population, households and employment as one key input file.

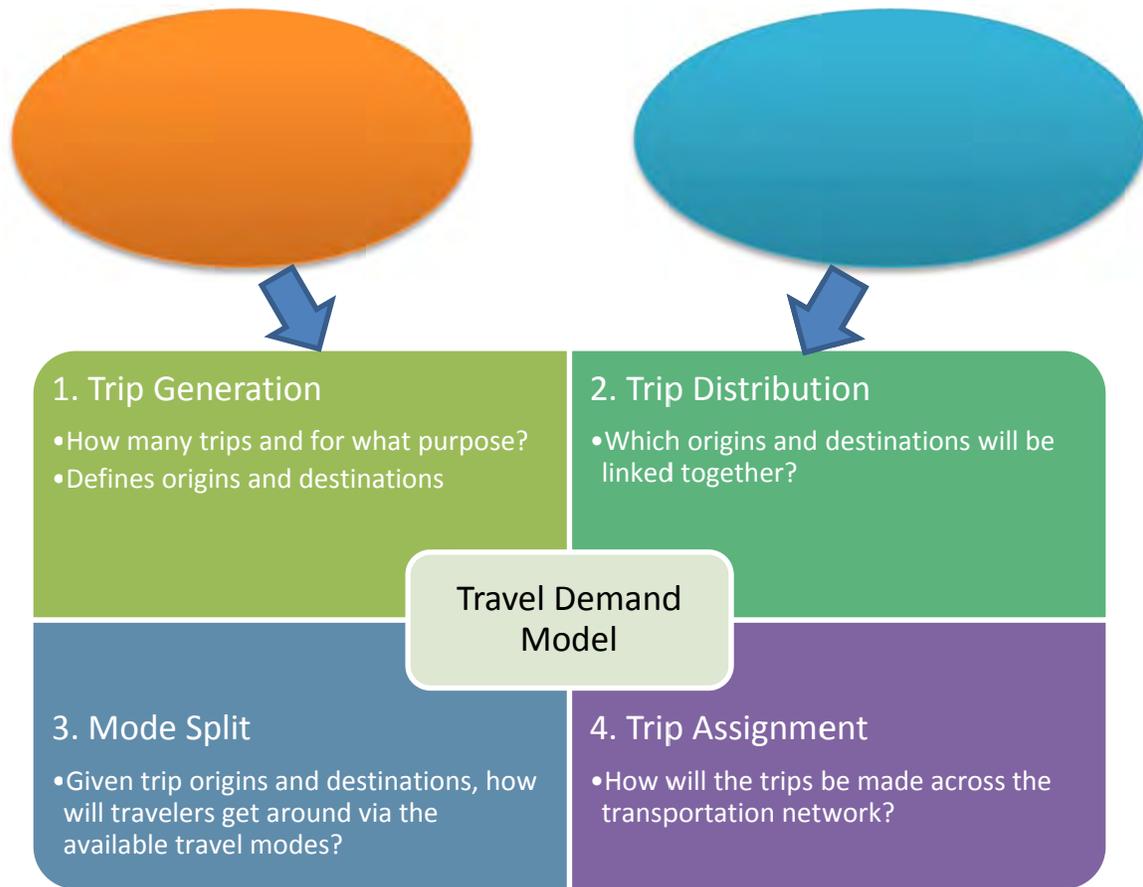
In most MPOs that use a Four-Step Model, the MPO develops the socioeconomic projections through some combination of projecting of historical trends, build-out capacity and other methods as appropriate for the specific region. To properly develop traffic forecasts, these socioeconomic projections must be provided at small geographic scales, thus the projections are allocated from a regional level, to a county

level and finally to smaller geographic areas called Traffic Analysis Zones (TAZs). The TAZ projections typically include data for a base year (with data based on Census counts and other survey resources) and future horizon years based on the MPO forecasting process. The data for each year typically includes, for each TAZ,

- the number of households
- number of persons within households
- number of persons within group quarters (i.e. dorms, prisons or other non-household living arrangements)
- median income for households
- the number of students (sometime divided into sub-categories by age group)
- number of employees (typically divided into multiple sub-categories by type of employment).

The regional travel model uses this data in Step 1 of 4 to predict how many trips and what type of trips are generated in each TAZ. The MRM TAZs for the Future Land Use Study Area (or FLUSA, the study area defined for the purposes of the ICE report) are shown in Map 5 to provide a sense of scale for these important geographic subdivisions. Also shown in Map 5 is the distinction between TAZs within the jurisdiction of MUMPO and those TAZs under the jurisdiction of another MPO or RPO. Of the 383 TAZs partially or fully within the FLUSA, 349 are within the jurisdiction of MUMPO, while the remaining 34 are under the jurisdiction of the Rocky River Rural Planning Organization (RRRPO). Each planning organization is the final authority of the socioeconomic projections at the TAZ level for the TAZs under its jurisdictions. As discussed in Section 3.2, the socioeconomic projections developed for the Metrolina region have been developed through an extensive and highly cooperative regional projection process.

**Figure 5: Four-Step Travel Demand Model and Inputs**



TAZs are delineated by the MPO working from Census data on population and employment and criteria set by the FHWA. These criteria recommend minimum populations of 600 persons or workers but they generally recommend approximately 1,200 persons or workers per TAZ. Additionally, FHWA recommends or requires that TAZs meet the following criteria<sup>12</sup>:

- Compactness: TAZs should be compact in nature.
- Nesting and boundaries: TAZs must nest within a county and must not cross county or state boundaries. Where possible, TAZs should follow city or town boundaries.
- Maximize contiguity: TAZs should be contiguous across each county without any missing slivers.
- Include all water and land: TAZs must include all area within the territory of a county; water bodies must be part of a TAZ.
- Unique and identifiable: TAZs must have unique identifiers and each MPO must have a unique identifier.

A TDM generates trip “productions” based on household location and characteristics, and trip “attractions” based on the employment data, which represent not only job destinations but also shopping

<sup>12</sup> FHWA CTPP Data Products. March 2010. “TAZ Delineation Business Rules.” [http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/planning/census\\_issues/ctpp/data\\_products/tazddbrules.cfm](http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/planning/census_issues/ctpp/data_products/tazddbrules.cfm)

and other activities that attract household trips. The overall number of productions and attractions are balanced, providing a set of trip origins and destinations, which is then taken into Step 2 of the Travel Demand Model for Trip Distribution – the linking of the origins and destinations into trips. At this point, the model begins to use a separate input file that represents the network of available roadways in the region, including data about the capacity, speeds, and other characteristics of each road or highway.

Other modes of transportation such as public transit are also taken into account in Step 3 of the model, which estimates the division of all trips across the available travel modes. The final “loading” of trips onto the network happens in an iterative process in Step 4 of the model, in which trips are distributed across all of the roads in the network and the impacts of congestion on travel patterns are incorporated.

What is both important and relevant to the ICE analysis process is the fact that the socioeconomic projections (the projection of where population and employment will be in the future) are a distinct input to the travel demand model from the transportation network. Consequently, the extent to which the socioeconomic projections represent the land use impacts of any given project cannot be answered by solely looking at the transportation network used in the travel demand model or its outputs. Instead, it requires examining the process and data used by the MPO in developing the population and employment projections. The assumptions behind the MRM socioeconomic projections are discussed below.

### **3.2 How Did the MPO and CDOT Develop the Projections?**

It is important to note that regional socioeconomic models and projections are somewhat fluid in their development. Factors and variables may be created in the development stage that are either applied narrowly or omitted due to data limitations or other aspects of the extremely complex process of creating future land use projections at regional, county, and TAZ levels. This is one factor that caused confusion in the past quantitative ICE analysis and which could persist in spite of the additional information provided here. As such, it is necessary not only to conduct a very careful review of how the models were designed, but more importantly, how they were ultimately used in developing socioeconomic projections. This is necessary in order to understand fundamental questions regarding the role of the Monroe Connector/Bypass in the ultimate socioeconomic projections. For this reason, the following discussion reviews not just the model processes, but also reviews the model results and includes information from CDOT, who created and applied the many of these models. These reviews are needed to understand the true meaning and bases of the regional projections and to develop a full understanding of the projections and their appropriate use in other analyses.

#### **Review of Projection Versions**

As custodian of the MRM, CDOT and MUMPO staff oversaw the various regional socioeconomic projection processes and updates that have occurred over the last decade. As the discussions below shows, the projection process is a continuous and evolving process, so it is important to document exactly which datasets are used for any different purposes and different planning efforts.

The current MRM 2011 v 1.1 uses projections finalized in 2009 and is used as the basis for air quality conformity approvals for the 2035 Long-Range Transportation Plan (LRTP) adopted May 3, 2010. These current projections (hereafter called the 2009 Projections) were the latest update to projections that were first developed beginning in 2003. Table 4 summarizes the various socioeconomic projections, the associated file naming conventions, the month and year the projections were completed, associated MRM versions and the base and horizon years for each socioeconomic projection dataset. Figure 6 shows the

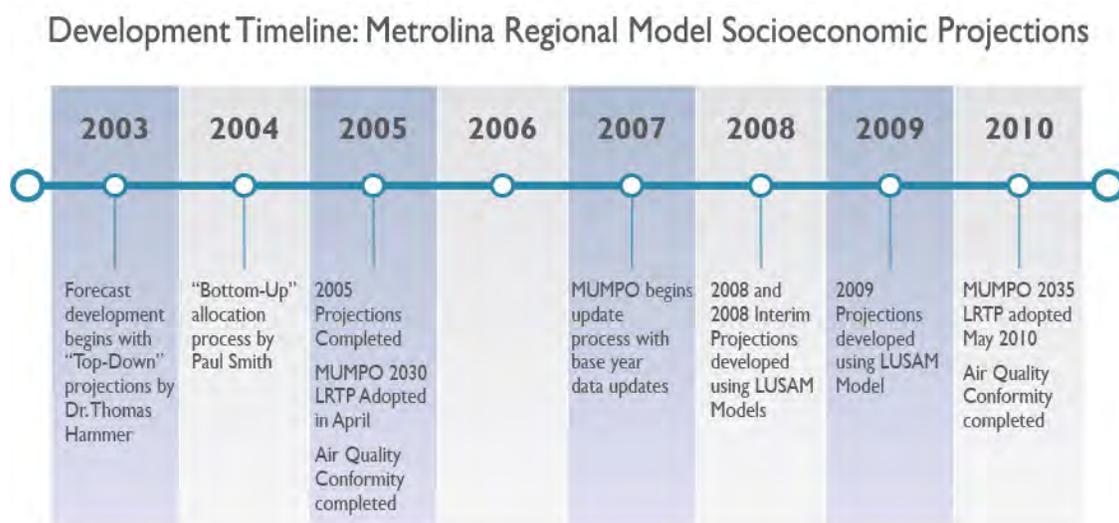
timeline of when the projections were developed relative to the adoption of each MUMPO LRTP. The Projection Names shown in the table and figure are not an official name but are used in this document for ease of reference. Each socioeconomic projection dataset includes projections for ten-year increments, with five-year increments interpolated between horizon years. Thus for the 2009 Projections (which were used in the 2035 LRTP), the horizon years were 2015, 2025 and 2035, but interpolated projections were also available for 2020 and 2030. Similarly, for the 2005 Projections (which were used in the 2030 LRTP), the horizon years were 2010, 2020 and 2030, but interpolated projections were also available for 2015 and 2025.

In the 2003-2004 timeframe, MUMPO and its regional partners at other MPOs and Rural Planning Organizations (RPOs) prepared the TAZ-level 2030 projections of population, households and employment in support of the development of the 2030 LRTP. The projections originally developed for this purpose were completed in 2005 and became the projections used in the official Metrolina Travel Demand Model 2005 version 1 (MRM05v1) and all versions of the model through MRM06v1.1.

**Table 4: MRM Socioeconomic Projection Versions**

Projection Name	TAZ File Name	Projections Completed	Use for LRTP Conformity Determination	Associated Model Version	Base and Horizon Years
2009 Projections	SE_Year_091028	October 2009	MUMPO 2035 LRTP	MRM 09 v1.0 MRM 11 v1.0 MRM 11 v1.1	Base: 2005 Horizon: 2015, 2025, 2035
2008 Interim Projections	SE_Year_081119_MUMPO_interim	November 2008	None	None	Base: 2005 Horizon: 2015, 2025, 2035
2008 Projections	SE_Year_081024	October 2008	RFATS 2035 LRTP	MRM 08 v1.0	Base: 2005 Horizon: 2015, 2025, 2035
2005 Projections	SE_Year_taz2934	April 2005	MUMPO 2030 LRTP	MRM 05 v1.0 MRM 06 v1.0 MRM 06 v1.1	Base: 2000 Horizon: 2010, 2020, 2030

**Figure 6: Timeline of MRM Projection Development**



Subsequent to the adoption of the 2030 LRTP, MUMPO conducted an update process for their projections in 2008-2009 and extended their projections to 2035. These updates used the 2005 Projections as a critical input as described below. All of these updates used a spreadsheet model system called a Land Use Allocation Model (LUSAM) to develop the 2008 and 2009 Projections. The details of this process are described in later sections.

The first of these updates was completed and incorporated into MRM 08 v1.0, which was the official model used to support the 2035 LRTP for the Rock Hill-Fort Mill Transportation Study Area. CDOT continued to update the regional projections based on new information and developed interim projections in 2008 for use in the Northeast Transit Corridor planning process. These projections are known as the 2008 Interim Projections. These projections were further updated and finalized in 2009 and eventually incorporated into the 2035 LRTP adopted May 3, 2010 and modeled using Metrolina Travel Demand Model 2009 version 1 (MRM09v1). Subsequent Metrolina Travel Demand Model versions (MRM11v1, MRM11v1.1) also use these same projections.

The FEIS Quantitative ICE (developed in 2009 and completed in 2010) used the 2008 Interim Projections, as they were the most up-to-date projections available at the time of that analysis. Given that CDOT has updated its projections since that report, it would be most appropriate to use the 2009 Projections. The following sections describe the 2009 Projections and the various inputs and processes used to develop those projections, as well as describing the prior process for developing projections. The purpose of this review is to fully disclose and explain what, if any, impact the Monroe Connector/Bypass had on the 2009 Projections to determine the most appropriate way to use those projections in the update of the ICE analysis.

#### 2008 and 2009 Projections (LUSAM Process)

In 2008, CDOT, MUMPO and other regional MPOs began development of their 2035 LRTPs and in doing so, needed to update population and employment projections for 2015 and 2025 and develop a TAZ level projection for 2035. The initial step was to develop the socioeconomic base year of 2005 by reviewing recent development activity and updating TAZ level data on households, population and employment estimates as of 2005. Next, CDOT staff developed a spreadsheet model system called a Land Use Allocation Model (LUSAM) to consider multiple factors as part of the projection process. CDOT documented how the model worked in an internal draft document titled *Metrolina Regional Travel Demand Model LUSAM: Land Use Allocation Model Technical Documentation* dated December 4, 2007 (Appendix E).

The LUSAM model uses a number of inputs to generate the future projections of households and employment for each TAZ and uses a district level approach to determining the factors considered in the distribution of the households and employment to each TAZ. The LUSAM model requires TAZs to be grouped into districts with up to 32 districts defined in the model. This simplifies the process of entering model weights, targets and factors. The model outputs its horizon year projections in an iterative process, such that each horizon year projection builds upon the next. Each iteration requires the input of base year values. For the first iteration, which produced the 2015 projections, the 2005 base year was used as the base year in all LUSAM model runs. For later LUSAM model iterations, the prior model output was used. Thus, for the 2025 horizon year, the 2015 output would be input as the base year and for the 2035 horizon year, the 2025 output would be input as the base year. The LUSAM model uses a district level targeting approach, where target household, population and employment values are set for each horizon year and

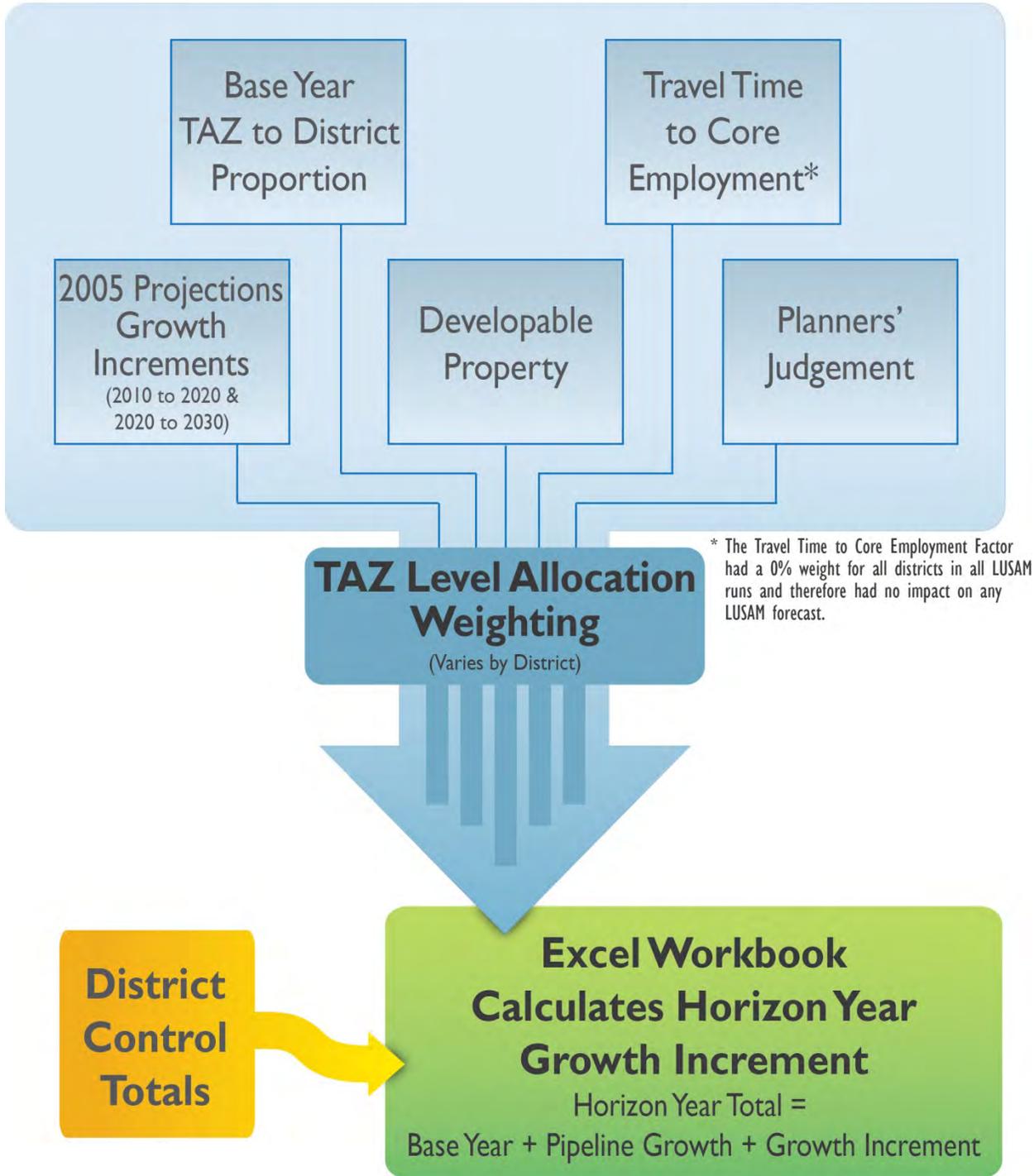
the model attempts to adjust the projections such that the totals for the TAZs within each district would equal the district target. LUSAM aggregates the base TAZ data into the same districts as the targets. The difference between the target and base is allocated by percentages to the TAZs within the district and a new TAZ land use dataset is created. These targets were developed independent of the LUSAM model and the inputs to those are discussed later.

Figure 7 provides a visual representation of the LUSAM model process. The model would use up to five weighted factors to determine how to allocate the district level target of growth to each TAZ within the district. The growth increment would then be added to the base year plus the pipeline growth (the number of households or jobs under construction or approved for construction) to yield to total for the horizon year. The five factors available in the LUSAM workbook are described below; however, as applied in the projection process, not all factors were used:

- **2005 Projections Growth Increment:** The change (growth) over time from an earlier projection (e.g. – projections for a new 2015 dataset would use the same growth allocation as an earlier projection between 2010 and 2020). In practice, the 2005 Projections growth increments for 2010 to 2020 and 2020 to 2030 were used as the input for this factor. Thus, the 2008 Interim and 2009 Projections relied on the growth increments in the 2005 Projections.
- **Base Year Proportion:** The same proportion of TAZ to District as in the base TAZ file (e.g. if TAZ “1” has 100 retail employees of the 1000 retail employees in the district – it would receive 10 percent of all new retail employees)
- **Developable Property:** This is based on an estimate of households or jobs per acre (and total acres). Relative development density is a primary input to this category. It differs across categories and across geographies, for example, employment density by acre is considerably higher in the center city than in suburbs.
- **Travel Time to Core Employment:** The estimated travel time to downtown Charlotte under peak highway congestion conditions. This factor was inverted as shorter travel times are preferred over longer. In the LUSAM Models for the 2008 Interim and 2009 Projections the weight applied to this factor was zero. Therefore, this factor was never used (See Appendix F and G).
- **Planners’ Judgment:** A direct 1-5 scale rating that could be applied to specific TAZs to reflect highly popular or unpopular TAZs for residential or non-residential development.

Figure 7: Visualization of LUSAM Workbook Process

# Land Use Allocation Model (LUSAM) for 2008 and 2009 Projections



The LUSAM model also incorporated “Pipeline” data by TAZ. The number of households or jobs under construction or planned could be added to a specific TAZ. Similarly, known decreases, such as that for a factory being closed, could be subtracted from a particular TAZ. Pipeline data would be added or subtracted to the base prior to allocation from districts.

The LUSAM model allowed for a weighting of the factors by each district. Thus, one district could have its entire weight based on the previous projections while another could have its entire allocation weight based on planners’ judgment. The basic allocation equation is essentially the same for all categories and households are used in the example below.

$$\begin{aligned}
 & HH\_future_{taz} \\
 &= HH\_base_{taz} + HH\_pipeline_{taz} \\
 &+ (HH\_target_{dist} - (HHbase_{dist} - HH\_pipeline_{dist})) * \\
 & (Wgt1 * (\Delta HH\_y2 - y1_{taz} / \sum \Delta HH\_y2 - y1) \\
 &+ Wgt2 * (HH\_base_{taz} / \sum HH\_base) \\
 &+ Wgt3 * (Vacant\_res_{taz} / \sum Vacant\_res) \\
 &+ Wgt4 * (TravTime_{taz} / \sum TravTime) \\
 &+ Wgt5 * (PlannersJudgment / \sum PlannersJudgment))
 \end{aligned}$$

Where:

$HH\_future_{taz}$	Future (projection) year TAZ households
$HH\_base_{taz}$	base year TAZ households
$HH\_pipeline_{taz}$	Pipeline households added to TAZ between base year & future year
$\Delta HH\_y2-y1_{taz}$	Change in no. of HH in TAZ between y1 and y2 in “old” projection set
$\sum \Delta HH\_y2-y1$	Change in no. of HH in district (sum of all TAZ) between y1 and y2 in old projection set
$HH\_base_{taz}$	No. of base households in district
$\sum HH\_base$	Sum of base households for district
$Vacant\_res_{taz}$	Vacant residential acres for TAZ
$\sum Vacant\_res$	Sum of vacant residential acres for district
$TravTime_{taz}$	Reciprocal of travel time to core employment for TAZ
$\sum TravTime$	Sum of reciprocal of travel time to core employment for district
$PlannersJudgment_{taz}$	Planners Judgment value (1-5) for TAZ
$\sum PlannersJudgment$	Sum of Planners Judgment values for district
$Wgt1 \dots Wgt5$	Weights (0 – 1 for each factor, weights must sum to 1.0)

The 2008 Projections were the first projections developed using the LUSAM methodology. These projections were developed and used for the Rock Hill-Fort Mill Area Transportation Study 2035 LRTP air quality conformity analysis. The 2008 Projections were not used for any planning purposes within the MUMPO or RRRPO regions. Also, these projections were not used in development of the 2008 Interim or 2009 Projections, either. Therefore, they were not analyzed as part of this report.

The 2008 Interim Projections were the projections provided to NCTA for use in the FEIS Quantitative ICE analysis. The LUSAM input and output sheets for the 2008 Interim Projections are provided in Appendix F. The model inputs show that for the 2008 Interim Projections the major focus of adjustment was on Mecklenburg County, with the remainder of the region largely relying on the growth projections from the 2005 Projections to guide the LUSAM adjustments. Of the factors in the model, the Travel Time

to Core Employment is not used at all for any district for any horizon year. For all areas outside Mecklenburg County, the previous projections (2005 Projections, which were used in the 2030 LRTP) were the main factor in the household and population projections. For employment projections outside Mecklenburg County, the previous projections had the highest weighting but some weight (10-25 percent) was placed on the estimate of available land and densities. Within Mecklenburg County, projections of households and population were based on a mixture of the previous projections, available land and density and planners' judgment, with the exact weighting varying from district to district within the county.

The 2009 Projections are the most recently completed projections that have been fully adopted and used in regional air quality conformity analysis. These projections are very similar to the 2008 Interim Projections and, in fact, LUSAM runs were only used in Mecklenburg County to adjust between the 2008 Interim Projections and the 2009 Projections. The LUSAM input and output sheets for the 2008 Interim Projections are provided in Appendix G. Only minor adjustments were made in Union County and only to employment. Within Mecklenburg County, projections of households and population were based on a mixture of the previous projections, available land and density and planners' judgment, with the exact weighting varying from district to district within the county.

To illustrate how the LUSAM workbook produces the projections, Figure 8 shows the LUSAM process with district targets and changes for household projections for all TAZs in the Marshville District for the 2015 horizon year from the 2009 and 2008 Interim Projections LUSAM Model run. The example is somewhat simplified as there are no pipeline household adjustments and 100 percent of the weight is on the Old Projection factor. Pipeline households would be any planned or under construction households in a TAZ. The process begins with the base year households, which are the number of households in each TAZ in 2005. The model then adds the pipeline households to the base year households. Next, the model works to distribute the households from the district level targets to the TAZ level using the weighted factors. In the example of Marshville, the full weight is placed on the distribution from the Old Projections (the 2005 Projections used in the 2030 LRTP). Thus, in the example shown below, TAZ 9333 captures 16.1 percent of the district household growth in the Old Projections. Thus, it receives that same percentage of the district household growth from the new, targeted growth ( $16.1\% \times 344 = 55$  households). Thus, the household projection for 2015 for TAZ 9333 is 531 households.

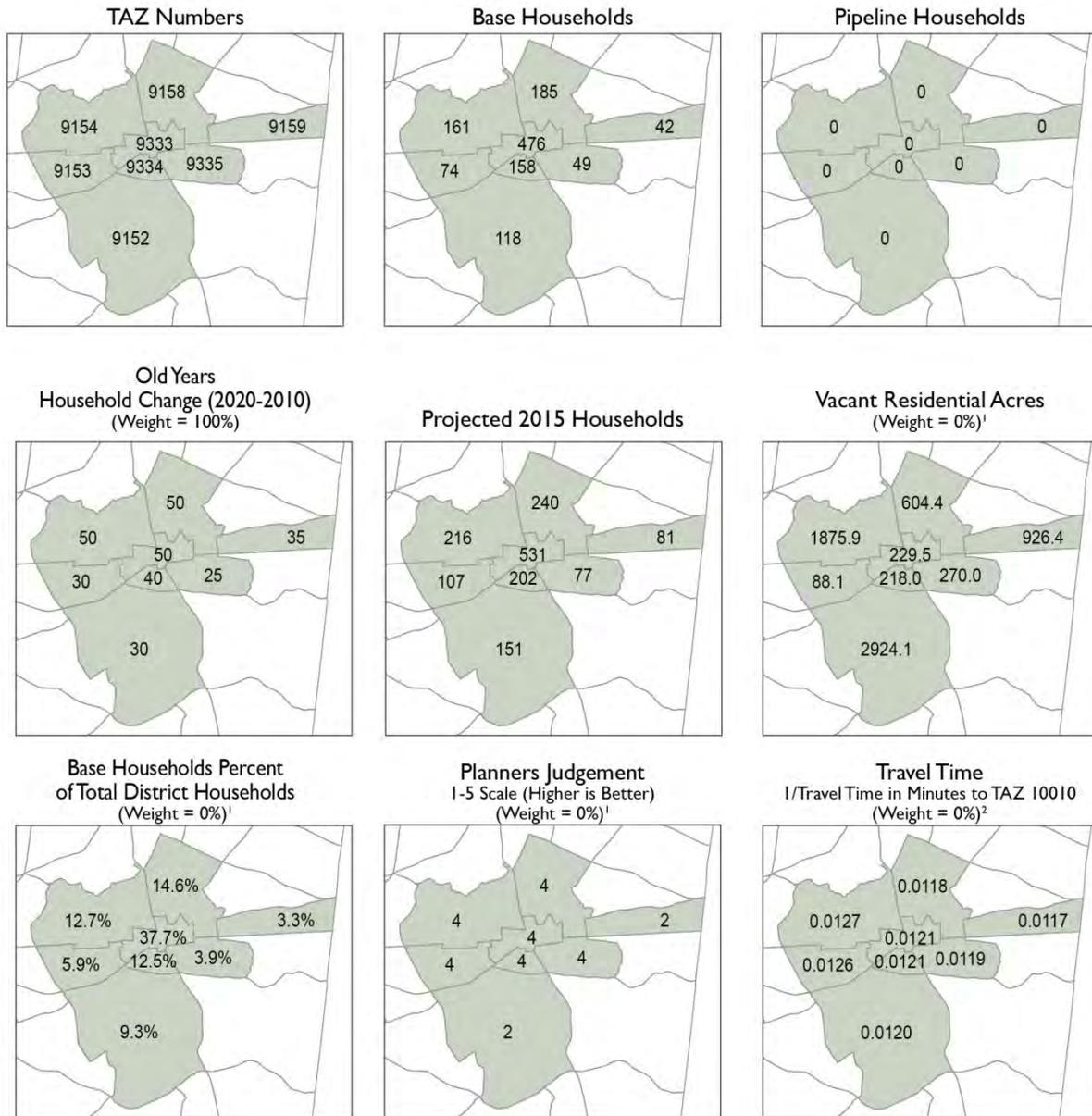
Based on these inputs and the LUSAM process, the Monroe Connector/Bypass could only have affected the LUSAM model through four possible inputs:

- The Planners' Judgment Factor
- The Travel Time to Core Employment Factor
- The Old Projections Growth Increments Factor (2005 Projections)
- District Level Targets.

As discussed above, however, the Travel Time to Core Employment Factor was not used (its weight was zero percent) for any LUSAM runs. Furthermore, the Planners' Judgment Factor was not used at all in Union County for any LUSAM run. Thus, based on the weighting of factors, the Monroe Connector/Bypass could not have influenced the projections through these two factors.

Thus, to fully assess whether the 2008 Interim or 2009 Projections were affected by the Monroe Connector/Bypass, one must fully understand the 2005 Projections (since the allocation of those projections guided the allocation of the newer projections) and the District Level Targets.

Figure 8: LUSAM Example, Marshville, 2009 and 2008 Interim Projections, 2015 Horizon Year



Marshville District		Marshville District Old Projections	
2005 Base HHs	1,263	2010 Projected HHs	1,415
2015 Target HHs	1,607	2020 Projected HHs	1,725
Difference	344	Difference	310

**TAZ 9333 Example Calculation**

$$2005 \text{ Base HHs} + \text{Pipeline HHs} + \left( \frac{\text{Old Years}_{\text{TAZ}}}{\text{Old Years}_{\text{Dist}}} \right) \times \text{HH\_Target}_{\text{Dist}} = 2015 \text{ HH Projection}$$

$$476 + 0 + \left( \frac{50}{310} \right) \times 344 = 531 \text{ HHs}$$

<sup>1</sup> These factors were not used at all in Union County for the 2008 Interim or 2009 Projections. These variables were used in Mecklenburg County projections with the weights varied by district.

<sup>2</sup> While the LUSAM includes values for the Travel Time to Core Employment factor, the factor was not used for any projection. The weight applied to it in all cases was 0%. It is shown here for the purposes of full transparency. For full details please see Appendices B, C and D.

**Development of the 2005 Projections (Used in the 2030 LRTP)**

The 2005 Projections (which were used in the 2030 LRTP) were developed through a process with three main components, a Top-Down projection, a Bottom-Up projection and input from an advisory group on the final projections. Each component in the process had a key role, as shown in Table 5. The development of the TAZ-level projections relied first on the Top-Down process to project future growth at the regional level and then allocate the regional growth to the county level. A subsequent Bottom-Up process allocated the county-level growth to the TAZ level within each county. Different parts of the Metrolina region used different approaches to the Bottom-Up process, but for the MUMPO area, which included most of Union County, a process prepared by Paul Smith of UNC-Charlotte provided the initial allocation. As was the case with the Top-Down projections, the Bottom-Up steps used input from local planners and jurisdictional representatives to review and refine the projections prior to adoption.

**Table 5: Roles, Factors and Accessibility Considerations of the MRM Socioeconomic Projection Process Components**

	<b>Roles</b>	<b>Projection Factors</b>	<b>Accessibility Considerations</b>
<b>Macroeconomic (Top-Down) Projections</b>  <b>Completed by Dr. Thomas Hammer</b>	Projects regional household, population and employment totals and sets county level control totals	<b>Regional Projection</b> National population and employment trends linked by economic sector to regional trends	None
		<b>County Level Allocation</b> Past economic and demographic trends Economic and demographic conditions (as of 2003) Influence of income on growth Proximity Land availability Past land use and infrastructure policies	Explicitly includes two major road projects: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• NC 16 Freeway to Lincoln County</li> <li>• Garden Parkway</li> </ul> Only considers proximity in linear terms (county centroid to county centroid); no use of roadway networks
<b>Household and Employment Allocation: (Bottom-Up) Process</b>  <b>Completed by Paul Smith, UNC-Charlotte</b>	Distributes growth from county-level to the Traffic Area Zones level	Developable Residential Land Redevelopable Residential Land Recent Population Change Travel Time to nearest Employment Center Water Availability Sewer Availability Expert Panel (High Growth Areas) Growth Policy Factor	Considers travel time from each TAZ to the NEAREST employment center, NOT regional employment centers  Uses the TDM network, including the Monroe Connector/Bypass, but only in travel time to nearest employment calculations for final period (2020-2030).
<b>Advisory/ Expert Input</b>	County representatives agree on final county totals based on Top-Down process  Local planners refine the Bottom-Up allocation based on adopted plans and local land use expertise; serves as a reality check on the allocation	Discretionary	Reflects local advisors' expectations (in 2003-2004) of whether new roads would be built  Reflects the assumptions in adopted land use plans at the time regarding the anticipated road network

*Regional Socioeconomic Projection and County Level Allocation (Top-Down Process)*

The process to develop regional socioeconomic projections and allocate them to the county level (known as the Top-Down process) was a rigorous, research-based approach to developing a regional and county level projection of households and employment. Led by Dr. Thomas Hammer and documented in his report to the region titled *Demographic and Economic Forecasts for the Charlotte Region* (hereafter referred to as the “Hammer Report” and incorporated into this report as Appendix H), Dr. Hammer developed a long-range regional growth projection based on economic factors in the Charlotte region.

Dr. Hammer described his model as a demand-side model where the model determined economic employment (earnings) from a breakdown of different employment groups based on their link to national employment trends. The model also assumed by 2030, population demographic changes would constrain regional earnings. His report described large transportation projects and public policy land use or development controls as supply-side factors that do not necessarily contribute to the growth demand, but act as limits or constraints to where growth might occur at smaller scale projections.<sup>13</sup> Therefore, Dr. Hammer’s projections were not sensitive to large transportation projects such as the construction of the Monroe Connector/Bypass. Therefore, his methods and approach would not be appropriate to model potential indirect and cumulative effects and thus other methods were used as described in Section 4.

Dr. Hammer’s process started with descriptions of the national economy and regional economy to quantitatively link the economies based on worker earnings, referred to as employment. His modeling broke the regional economy into a 42-industry classification scheme to quantitatively link to the national economy. The procedure separated employment in each regional industry into a “basic” component and a “population-serving” component to quantitatively link the regional industry employment trends to national industry employment trends. Separate quantitative analysis was performed to create a linkage between the basic component of employment between the regional and national trends and the “population-serving” component of employment between the regional and national trends. The two separate quantitative linkages were combined to develop overall industry profiles for the region. Demographic projections were obtained by finding a regional population profile for each future year that yielded a labor force consistent with expected employment level.<sup>14</sup> The process yielded region-wide employment and demographic totals that became control totals to help determine where in the region the overall growth would occur.

The region-wide employment and household totals were allocated among the counties and districts with the aid of 35 equations to identify factors used in the determination of county level growth shares of the regional industry growth total. These equations included three for demographic variables of upper, middle and low-income housing, and 32 equations for employment by sector. These equations were calibrated on the experience of 227 counties in 29 separate U.S. metropolitan areas chosen for their comparability to the Charlotte region. The modeling allocation process also included factors such as available land in each county and location proximity between employment and households. The location proximity was incorporated by weighting an inverse function of distance to the county for which a variable was being measured to another county. However, the model omitted such supply side factors of large-scale transportation projects, new land use policies and provision of infrastructure, and natural land constraints

---

<sup>13</sup> Appendix H, p 10

<sup>14</sup> Appendix H, p 7

on development. Table 6 summarizes Dr. Hammer’s description of the capacity of his projection and allocation model to capture growth influences.

**Table 6: Capacity of Allocation Model to Capture Growth Influences**

	Demand Side	Supply Side
<b>Growth Factors Covered</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Past economic &amp; demographic trends</li> <li>• Existing economic &amp; demographic conditions</li> <li>• Economic-demographic linkages</li> <li>• Influence of income on growth patterns</li> <li>• Location</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Land area and land availability (as estimated on the basis of development magnitudes)</li> <li>• Past land use and infrastructure policies (to the extent they register in past growth)</li> </ul>
<b>Growth Factors Omitted</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Refinements                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Some measures could be improved such as distance and area descriptors</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• New or altered public policies governing land use and the provision of infrastructure</li> <li>• Large-scale transportation projects</li> <li>• Natural land constraints on development (if not strongly reflected in past growth)</li> </ul>

Appendix H p 14

Dr. Hammer provided ranges of population and employment projections to account for variability and error in the model. He specifically noted, “. . . the upper and lower limits that express the ranges are specifically intended to express 90 percent or 95 percent confidence intervals. They cover only the year 2030, but could be extended to other years using the same proportions of past 2002 growth involved in their derivation”<sup>15</sup>. He obtained the upper and lower limits of growth by adding and subtracting amounts from the “most-likely” projection shown in Table 7.

*The additions or subtractions at each geographic level equal a common percentage times the difference between the most likely values for 2030 and the actual values for 2002. Thus, the greater the expected growth, the wider the error margin, on the logic that unforeseen supply-side influences will operate mainly by reallocating growth rather than affecting urban development already present.*<sup>16</sup>

Dr. Hammer noted that different percentage margins are appropriate at different geographic levels, since the potential for error increases as area size decreases. He stated that “[s]mall margins are appropriate for the region as a whole because supply-side factors exert little influence at that scale.” He calculated regional margins for population and employment by adding and subtracting 10 percent of the most likely 2002-2030 growth. He further noted that “[a]t the county level and district levels, the calculations involve larger downside margins than upside margins, on the argument that land use policies and environmental factors can have larger effect in diverting growth than in attracting development over and above location based demands.” He obtained the county ranges from the 2030 most-likely projection, by applying a 25 percent deduction of the 2002-2030 most-likely growth and a 15 percent addition to the 2002-2030 most-likely growth.<sup>17</sup> Table 7 shows Dr. Hammer’s 2030 population projection ranges.

<sup>15</sup> Appendix H, p 66

<sup>16</sup> Appendix H, p 66

<sup>17</sup> Appendix H, p 66

**Table 7: Dr. Hammer’s Population Projection for the Charlotte Region**

County	2030 Population		
	Lower	Most-Likely	Upper Limit
Anson County	36,967	40,847	43,175
Cabarrus County	247,142	283,115	304,699
Cleveland County	125,373	134,563	140,077
Gaston County	235,228	249,261	295,071
Iredell County	227,287	259,906	279,477
Lincoln County	113,206	128,857	138,247
Mecklenburg County	1,051,400	1,157,311	1,220,858
Rowan County	183,747	200,639	210,774
Stanly County	80,171	87,366	91,682
Union County	268,543	312,147	338,309
Cherokee County	83,228	93,168	99,132
Chester County, SC	52,278	58,306	61,923
Lancaster County, SC	91,781	101,680	107,619
Union County, SC	38,480	41,466	43,258
York County, SC	272,096	305,228	334,080

Appendix H p 67

*Regional Projection and County Allocation (Top-Down Process) and the Monroe Connector/Bypass*

Correspondence from interested parties suggests that Dr. Hammer’s regional projections implicitly included the Monroe Connector/Bypass and therefore the regional projections should be used as the basis for a Build scenario or should be recalculated for the purposes of the Quantitative ICE.<sup>18</sup> Specifically, one comment suggests that Dr. Hammer’s analysis assumed that there would be sufficient infrastructure available to accommodate any future growth and that this assumption implies that the Monroe Connector/Bypass is therefore assumed in the socioeconomic projections. As detailed above, supply side constraints were not a factor in Dr. Hammer’s projections.<sup>19</sup> The following quotes from Dr. Hammer’s report show that his process did not assume construction of the Monroe Bypass/Connector in projecting socioeconomic projections for the region or in allocation to the county level.

*The strengths of the model approach include its objectivity and ability to capture a wide variety of relationships and spatial interactions. Its weaknesses derive from the severe limits on types of variables that can be feasibly collected for large sample model calibration. Because whole classes of variables must be omitted, the factors driving the model (other than regional totals) are limited to earlier values of the target variables themselves – i.e. to demographic and economic descriptors – plus functions of distance,*

<sup>18</sup> Letter from Southern Environmental Law Center to Jennifer Harris, NCTA, November 30, 2012, p 19.

<sup>19</sup> Appendix H, p 11

*land area and density. The most important omissions are factors that typically must be measured at a fine-grain level of detail (and often are hard to quantify in a relevant fashion) such as land use controls, natural land characteristics and availability of infrastructure. Since these factors mostly affect the supply of land suitable for development, and since the factors that allocation models do cover are most predictors of development demand, the limitations of such constructs can be summarized by calling them demand-side models<sup>20</sup>.*

*Two circumstances allow demand-side models to capture some supply-side influences. First such models can express the general role of land availability using crude measures that consider total land area (minus large-scale deductions like the military installations, wetlands and parks) and existing development density. Second because the model equations operate partly by extrapolation and are pegged to replicate past conditions in the subject areas, they implicitly cover all supply-side factors to the extent that future impacts of these factors equal past impacts.<sup>21</sup>*

*But what models of the given type cannot do is capture the influence of exceptionally large infrastructure projects or shifts to more or less stringent development controls. They basically assume that the tendency of public actions to restrict or encourage growth will resemble the conditions prevailing in the calibration period (at the present meaning the 1990s).<sup>22</sup>*

Other comments from correspondence suggest that the “proximity factor” used by Dr. Hammer implicitly assumes an improved transportation network.<sup>23</sup> Dr. Hammer’s proximity factor cannot include the transportation network. Since Dr. Hammer used the growth rates that occurred in the county between 1990 and 2000 to calibrate his model equations and there has been no controlled access freeways built in Union County in the last two decades, his projections, therefore, could not have assumed construction of a limited access roadway like the Monroe Connector/Bypass. Further, 2000-2010 growth that occurred in the region moved Union County’s population rank among regional counties from sixth in 2000 to fourth in 2010. This growth occurred without a freeway. Thus, a freeway (even less so a toll-road), is not a factor contributing to the extremely high growth occurring in Union County. Rather Dr. Hammer describes major infrastructure projects as an influence that will operate by mainly reallocating growth rather than affecting the urban development that is already present.<sup>24</sup> As discussed in Section 3.3, this conclusion is not exclusive to the analytical work performed by Dr. Hammer.

Correspondence from interested parties also suggests that the county level population projections and employment projections should be re-calculated to exclude the Monroe Connector/Bypass.<sup>25</sup> Again, Dr. Hammer’s model to allocate the region growth to County population and employment projections was not

---

<sup>20</sup> Appendix H, p 10

<sup>21</sup> Appendix H, p 10-11

<sup>22</sup> Appendix H, p 11

<sup>23</sup> Letter from Southern Environmental Law Center to Jennifer Harris, NCTA, November 30, 2012, p 19.

<sup>24</sup> Appendix H, p 66

<sup>25</sup> Letter from Southern Environmental Law Center to Jennifer Harris, NCTA, November 30, 2012, p 19.

sensitive to a large-scale transportation project like the Monroe Connector/Bypass as he described in his report.<sup>26</sup>

*In North Carolina, county-level forecasts from a calibrated allocation model should ordinarily be reliable – to the extent any forecast is reliable – with little or no adjustment for omitted supply-side influences. But supply-side factors gain potential importance at progressively smaller geographic scales, so the question is how far below the county level a model application should extend.*

Later in the report, Dr. Hammer notes how he adjusted outputs from the model to account for a particular major highway project that he believed would influence growth in a particular county.

*The present approach is designed to avoid any need for ad hoc adjustment of results (other than systematic reconciliation with bottom-up, supply-side forecasts, if these are available). However, one after the fact adjustment has occurred here to improve the validity of the numbers in an area relevant for a particular planning project. The failure of the top-down forecasting procedure to acknowledge the impacts of special infrastructure development was judged a critical weakness in eastern Lincoln County, where the upgrading of Route 16 to a freeway will clearly yield growth increments over and above those predicted by demand-side model. This situation has been addressed by advancing the population forecast for one sub-district of Lincoln County from 2035 to 2025 and advancing the forecasts for two other Lincoln sub-districts from 2029 to 2025<sup>27</sup>.*

Finally, explaining the ranges of population and employment projections shown in his tables, Dr. Hammer noted how he adjusted model results for the upper limit of the projections for East Gaston, Southwest Gaston, North York districts for the proposed toll road over the Catawba River.

*The second factor is the possibility that a toll expressway will be constructed across the Catawba River to link southern Gaston County with western Mecklenburg. Such a facility would have substantial development impacts on East Gaston, Southwest Gaston, North York and the two counties in aggregate. These potential impacts are incorporated into the upper-limit population and employment values as explained in the footnotes to tables 11 and 12. Adjustments of this nature are not provided for the Route 16 freeway in Lincoln County because the impacts of this facility have already been incorporated into the forecasts, as discussed near the end of Section I. There are also not adjustments for completion of the I-485 beltway around Charlotte because it is not clear whether or how the beltway will alter district-level development patterns relative to what has already been predicted.<sup>28</sup>*

It should be noted that no changes were made to the “most likely” or “lower-limit” scenarios for Gaston and Mecklenburg Counties based on the proposed toll facility. In summary, Dr. Hammer’s analytical approach estimated regional and county growth within the Metrolina Regional Travel Demand model

---

<sup>26</sup> Appendix H, p 11

<sup>27</sup> Appendix H, p 12-13

<sup>28</sup> Appendix H, p 69

area. This projection was designed to establish regional and county level household, population and employment control totals and as such was not influenced by projects that primarily impact accessibility within one county such as the Monroe Connector/Bypass. This means Dr. Hammer’s regional and county projections would not have changed with or without the construction of the project.

*MUMPO 2030 LRTP Household, Population and Employment Allocation Process (Bottom-Up Process)*

In 2004, CDOT hired Paul Smith and his team from the UNC-Charlotte Center for Applied GIS to create a model to allocate households, population and employment from the county level to the TAZ level. The methodology of the process is described in Mr. Smith’s report *Mecklenburg-Union Metropolitan Planning Organization Population Projections and Employment Allocations, 2000-2030* (Appendix I). Mr. Smith’s process focused on the household (and by default population) allocation and the allocation of population-chasing employment. Population-chasing employment is that employment associated with retail and services that tend to follow population growth. Non-population-chasing employment was distributed solely based on the input of staff and expert panel participants. Mr. Smith’s allocation process started with the county-level control totals developed in the Top-Down process, existing baseline data (2000), and the influence of the of land development factors chosen and ranked by expert panels. Within Union County there were eight land development factors used to assess the attractiveness and capacity of each TAZ in the county to draw future growth. These variables are listed in Table 8.

**Table 8: Union County Land Development Factors**

Factor	Weight by Year of Allocation		
	2010	2020	2030
<b>Developable Land</b>	3	3	3
<b>Travel Time to Employment</b>	3	3	3
<b>Water</b>	2	2	2
<b>Sewer</b>	2	2	2
<b>Redevelopable Land</b>	2	3	3
<b>Population Change</b>	3	1	Not used
<b>Expert Panel</b>	2	2	2
<b>Growth Policy</b>	1	1	1

Mr. Smith used a raster cell based analysis system where Union County was split into a set of 500 feet by 500 feet grid cells and the value for each land development factor was calculated for each grid cell. Each land development factor would also be normalized to a 0 to 1 scale and weighted so that all scores could be combined into a composite score. The composite grid scores were calculated for each cell and then averaged across each TAZ to calculate land attractiveness scores for each TAZ. The TAZ land attractiveness scores were used to derive the available residential acreage to be consumed during each allocation period. The 2005 Projections (which were used in the 2030 LRTP) were developed for 2010, 2020 and 2030. Thus for each allocation period (2000-2010, 2010-2020, 2020-2030) land development factors were calculated and normalized then weighted and the composite score calculated for each cell. Finally, for each TAZ, an average of the composite scores for all cells within each TAZ was calculated. Higher scores reflected higher attractiveness and would result in higher acreage consumed, until a TAZ reached its calculated maximum capacity. Allowable development densities per TAZ multiplied by the

derived residential acres to be consumed were used to calculate the number of households in each TAZ. Historical household size was used to generate TAZ population at each allocation period. Existing development and available land acted as limits on further growth. Thus, while the available developable land served as a land development factor, it also served as a constraint in the model to ensure that growth in a TAZ was predicted within its capacity to accept development. Once the developable land within a TAZ was consumed, future development would be assigned to TAZs with lower composite scores in subsequent iterations. The land development factors and corresponding weights that were used in the Union County portion of the model are shown in Table 8.

The modeled predictions were subject to feedback and adjustment from the panel of experts. These experts reviewed and adjusted projections as documented in *Land Use and Socioeconomic Data and Projections for the Greater Charlotte Region* (Appendix J). No specific changes to household, population or employment projections are documented in Appendix J but the overall process of expert panel input is reviewed. Expert panel review is a common and recommended method in long-range projection to improve the acceptance of projections by political entities and data users.<sup>29</sup> Within Union County, however, no changes were made to the household and population projections as developed by Paul Smith at the TAZ level for the horizon years of 2010, 2020 and 2030. These projections were included as the socioeconomic projections for the adopted MUMPO 2030 LRTP.

Consultation with CDOT staff indicates that there was no influence from the Monroe Connector/Bypass on growth expectations associated with these projections (Appendix A). The travel time to employment factor did include the Monroe Connector/Bypass in the road network used to calculate travel times for the final period, but the assessment of CDOT staff was that the methodology used to calculate that factor would have minimized any impact of the Monroe Connector/Bypass on the 2005 Projections (which were used in the 2030 LRTP).<sup>30</sup> Furthermore, a review of Mr. Smith's results shows no indications of population or employment growth clusters along the project corridor. If the 2005 Projections had included growth expectations associated with the Monroe Connector/Bypass, one would expect to see higher than average population and employment growth and density in TAZs along the project corridor. There are no indications of such clusters of growth along the project corridor in Mr. Smith's results (Appendix I pp 42-67).

#### *Review of the Travel Time to Employment Factor within the Bottom-Up Process*

Since May 2012, NCTA has worked with CDOT staff and Paul Smith to reanalyze the travel time factor to determine if the factor affected the 2005 Projections (which were used in the 2030 LRTP) in a way that would indicate those projections include the induced growth effects of the proposed project. Specifically, NCTA engaged Paul Smith and CDOT staff in a reevaluation of the factor beginning in June 2012 and Paul Smith completed his analysis and reported his results to NCTA in September 2012.

The travel time to employment factor for Mr. Smith's model used an estimate of travel time to the nearest employment center. Mr. Smith defined an employment center as any location with 5,000 jobs within a ½-

---

<sup>29</sup> Smith, Stanely K., Tayman, Jeff, Swanson, David A. *State and Local Population Projections: Methodology and Analysis*. Kluwer Academic/Plenum Publishers, New York, 2001. p 358

<sup>30</sup> Mr. Smith included the proposed project in his model as his travel time analysis for major roadways relied on speed data from the regional travel demand model in use at the time. The travel demand model in use at the time included the proposed project in its future year roadway network. See Appendix A (June 19<sup>th</sup>, 2012 discussion with CDOT Staff and follow up) for detail.

mile area. Travel time was calculated using a composite approach, combining travel speed information from the Metrolina Region Travel Demand Model (MRM), a GIS shapefile of existing roads and assumed walking speed of 2.5 miles per hour.<sup>31</sup> The MRM was used to estimate travel speeds for all roads within the MRM network. For the 2010 and 2020 horizon years, the 2010 model network was used and for the 2030 horizon year the 2025 model network was used. Using the speed assumptions above, travel times to the nearest employment center were then calculated for each horizon year (2010, 2020 and 2030). These travel times were then normalized to a 0 to 1 scale and averaged across each TAZ to determine the score for each TAZ.

The Monroe Connector/Bypass was included in the 2025 MRM network and thus the speed of that facility influenced the travel time to employment factor for the 2020 to 2030 period. Map 6 shows the original travel times calculated using this methodology. These travel times formed the basis of the original Travel Time to Employment Factor used in the Bottom-Up allocation process. As illustrated in the map and detailed in the discussion that follows, the Monroe Connector/Bypass does have a minor influence on the travel time used as an input to the Bottom-Up allocation process as indicated by the area of travel times of less than 10 minutes around the proposed project from Unionville-Indian Trail Road to Rocky River Road. The map also shows that many employment centers were used as destination points for the analysis in Mecklenburg and Union Counties. The closest employment centers within the FLUSA are at the following locations:

- US 74 and Rama Road in Charlotte
- Monroe Road and Sardis Road in Matthews
- US 74 at NC 51 in Matthews
- US 74 just west of Seacrest Short Cut Road in Monroe
- Downtown Monroe
- US 74 at Sutherland Ave in Monroe
- Along Seacrest Avenue, north of US 74 in Monroe.

The methodology to calculate the travel time to employment for the Bottom-Up allocation calculated travel times to the *nearest* employment center, not to major destinations such as downtown Charlotte. The average distance from an employment center for the MUMPO study area Mr. Smith analyzed was only 3.8 miles, while the greatest distance was 14 miles. Thus, the methodology was a relatively localized analysis of travel time. Freeway type facilities, such as the proposed 20-mile long Monroe Connector/Bypass, tend to serve longer trip lengths. As such, the travel time to employment center analysis methodology would largely miss the travel time savings that would accrue to longer trips like those most likely to occur on the Monroe Connector/Bypass. Lastly, the location of the employment centers Mr. Smith used relative to the Monroe Bypass/Connector would tend to minimize the travel time savings the project could provide. A number of employment centers are located in and around downtown Monroe, as seen in Map 6, and since the proposed project bypasses the downtown Monroe area, Mr. Smith's travel time analysis would largely not account for travel time savings associated with the project in central and eastern Union County.

---

<sup>31</sup> FHWA guidance on signal design recommends using 3 to 5 feet per second (2 to 2.7 mph) walking speeds in developing pedestrian clearance times for signal timings. FHWA. *Traffic Signal Timing Manual*. Chapter 5, Section 5.3.3. <http://ops.fhwa.dot.gov/publications/fhwahop08024/chapter5.htm>

*Revising the Travel Time to Employment Factor without the Monroe Connector/Bypass*

Since May 2012, NCTA worked with CDOT staff and Paul Smith to rerun the MRM model and the Bottom-Up allocation process with a revised MRM network that did not include the Monroe Connector/Bypass. NCTA requested the analysis to compare the results to the original 2005 Projections to determine whether removal of the proposed project would affect the results. CDOT staff obtained the 2025 MRM model used to calculate the travel speeds for the original travel time to employment factor analysis and revised the network by removing the Monroe Connector/Bypass. They subsequently reran the travel demand model with the revised network to get new speed data for the transportation network that did not include the Monroe Connector/Bypass. Mr. Smith then incorporated this new speed data into his other speed assumptions and recalculated the travel times used to develop the travel time to employment factor score for each TAZ. He then recalculated the composite attractiveness scores and subsequently reapplied his allocation model with the new composite attractiveness scores to determine if there would be any differences in population or employment allocations with the new travel time results.

When Mr. Smith removed the Monroe Connector/Bypass from his analysis, it resulted in minor changes to the travel times and composite attractiveness index. Out of 256 TAZs in the MUMPO analysis area of Union County, most had little to no change in travel time to employment centers when the Monroe Connector/Bypass was removed from the network:

- 150 TAZs (59 percent) had no change in their travel time
- 85 TAZs (33 percent) had a travel time increase of less than 1 minute
- 21 TAZs (8 percent) experienced a travel time increase of 1 minute or more
- The maximum change for a TAZ was 5.7 minutes, and the average change throughout Union County was 16 seconds.

The areas with increased travel time are shown in Map 7. The areas with the greatest increase in travel time are in western Union County, centered around the proposed corridor between Stallings and Monroe. The impact of this travel time change is highly localized around the western end of the Monroe Connector/Bypass. As described above, the model uses travel time to employment as one of several weighted factors in the calculation of composite grid attractiveness scores, which are averaged across a TAZ to derive the percentage of available acreage to be consumed by TAZ for each period. Mr. Smith used the recalculated travel time to employment factor to recalculate the grid attractive scores and TAZ scores for the 2020 to 2030 period. When the composite attractiveness scores were recalculated to include the revised travel time results above and then further averaged for each TAZ, the results showed that most TAZs had little to no change in attractiveness score. Of those that did change, the result was a reduction in attractiveness scores, as increased travel time would result in lower attractiveness to development. Out of 256 TAZs in the MUMPO portion of the study area:

- 150 TAZs (59 percent) had no change in composite attractiveness score
- 92 TAZs (36 percent) had a reduction of less than 1 percent
- 14 TAZs (5 percent) had a reduction of 1 percent or more change in composite score
- The greatest Composite Score reduction is 3.9 percent, and the average Composite Score reduction is 0.21 percent.

Changes in composite attractiveness scores by TAZ, calculated by Mr. Smith, are shown in Map 8. The geographic distribution of the changes roughly parallels those in the travel time map.

Next, Mr. Smith reapplied the allocation model to determine specifically if the change in travel times and composite scores would result in a different allocation of households and employment. The allocation model uses the composite scores to determine the percentage of available land in each TAZ that would be consumed by growth. The higher the composite score the higher the percentage of available land that would be consumed. The model would then multiply the percentage consumed by the actual available land in each TAZ to determine the acreage of land consumed within each TAZ. Then the acreage would be multiplied by the development density for each TAZ (calculated from tax and zoning records) to determine the actual number of households to be added to each TAZ for each period. Thus any change in composite score could potentially change the percentage of land consumed and thus the number of households added to any given TAZ.

When Mr. Smith reran the allocation model with the new composite scores, the results showed that the land use projections were identical to those produced in his original report; in other words the results did not change. For the 106 TAZs where the change in travel time led to a reduction in their composite attractiveness index, the allocation model in the original allocation (i.e. before the Monroe Connector/Bypass was removed) had calculated that those TAZs would use 100 percent of available land by 2030. For those same TAZs, when the new allocation model was run (i.e. after the Monroe Connector/Bypass was removed) the lower attractiveness scores did not reduce their attractiveness in the allocation model enough to cause the allocation model to request less than 100 percent of the developable land within each of those TAZs by 2030. These 106 TAZs already had relatively high composite scores as they were in areas with sewer and water availability, where growth policy was favorable and where Expert Panel members expected growth already. The relatively small reduction in composite attractiveness that resulted from the changes in travel time did not reduce the score for these TAZs enough to reduce the percentage of land the model would consume. In addition, many of these TAZs had little available land to fill in the 2020 to 2030 period. This result is logical given that the areas where travel time and composite scores changed have experienced extensive growth since 1990 and thus are likely to reach build out sooner than most other areas of the County.

These results show clearly that removal of the Monroe Connector/Bypass from the travel time to employment factor had no effect on the results of the 2005 Projections. Therefore, it is clear that the Bottom-Up portion of the 2005 Projections was insensitive to the presence or absence of the proposed project. Since this factor was the only factor that explicitly included the project in either the Top Down or Bottom Up, it is clear that the 2005 Projections are insensitive to the presence or absence of the proposed project. As such, it is reasonable to conclude, that the proposed project had no influence on the “Old Projections” factor used in the LUSAM process for the 2008 and 2009 Projections.

#### District Level Targets

The only remaining area that the Monroe Connector/Bypass could have influenced the LUSAM process would be through the district level targets. The household, population and employment targets used in the LUSAM models were developed based on the following inputs:

- Interpolation and extrapolation of the previous projections (2005 Projections, which were used in the 2030 LRTP)
- NC State Data Center Demographic Projections (Summer 2007)
- Hammer Report Five-Year Projections.

As previously documented, neither the Hammer Report nor the 2005 Projections (which were used in the 2030 LRTP) were influenced by the Monroe Connector/Bypass growth expectations. The NC State Data Center develops its projections based on trend growth over the previous two decades drawing from both Census counts and estimates. The projections are then developed using the most appropriate smoothing model that best fits the trend line data.<sup>32</sup> Since these projections rely entirely on trend data, there is no influence in these projections from proposed transportation improvements. Therefore, it is reasonable to conclude that the district level targets were unaffected by any influence from growth associated with the Monroe Connector/Bypass.

### Review of Projection Results

An examination of density levels along the project corridor is illustrative regarding the relationship (or lack thereof) between the proposed project and the MPO projections of households, population and employment. Map 9 shows the household density by TAZ in 2030 from the 2009 Interim Projections. The household density levels in TAZs along the proposed project corridor in the 2030 projections are similar to the household densities of surrounding TAZs. If the projections were representative of a Build Scenario then one would expect to see higher household density levels along the project corridor, particularly at interchange locations. Map 10 shows the employment density by TAZ in 2030 from the 2009 Interim Projections. The employment density levels in TAZs along the proposed project corridor in the 2030 projections are similar to the densities of surrounding TAZs. If the projections were representative of a Build Scenario then one would expect to see higher employment density levels along the project corridor, particularly at interchange locations. Overall, the density pattern in the 2009 Projections shows no signs of influence from the Monroe Connector/Bypass. Furthermore, CDOT staff indicated that growth impacts of the proposed road were not a consideration in the projection process.

### **3.3 How Have Other Studies Used the MRM Socioeconomic Projections**

The NCTA hired other consultants and researchers to perform work on traffic and revenue studies to obtain investment ratings for Toll Revenue Bonds. The work performed consisted of a Preliminary Traffic and Revenue Study, an Independent Economist Evaluation of the Socio-economic Estimates Underlying the Study of the Feasibility of the Proposed Monroe Connector/Bypass, and a Comprehensive Traffic and Revenue Study. This section will provide a summary of the work and the relevance to the research performed and used in the Quantitative ICE analyses.

#### WSA, Proposed Monroe Connector Preliminary Traffic and Revenue Study, Final Report, October 11, 2006

The NCTA hired Wilbur Smith Associates (WSA) to conduct a preliminary traffic and revenue study for the proposed Monroe Connector. The purpose of the study was to determine the feasibility of pursuing toll financing for construction of the Monroe Connector and/or Monroe Bypass. WSA assumed that the proposed project would provide significant time savings for travelers moving between I-485 south of Charlotte and Monroe or points south and east based on their analysis of travel conditions on US 74 in 2006 and travel demand model analysis of travel speeds in their study area. It should be noted that WSA completed this preliminary study in 2006 before analysis for the EIS had begun. WSA used the 2005

---

<sup>32</sup> Smoothing models use historical data on past population or employment conditions and apply exponential functions that best fit those past trends to then forecast future conditions.

Projections socioeconomic data set (which were used in the 2030 LRTP) as it was the most recent projection available at the time of their study.

WSA collected traffic counts in the project corridor and used the information to re-calibrate the Metrolina Regional TDM model and provide traffic scenarios for No-Build, Build (Toll Free) and Build (Tolled) scenarios. They also updated the network within the model to account for proposed transportation improvements. WSA also collected information regarding regional and corridor income characteristics to aid in the development of estimated values of time for potential users of the toll facility. WSA stated that this is a critical parameter used to assess a motorist's willingness to pay for tolls and use the facility.

WSA concluded that the Monroe Connector/Bypass would help reduce congestion in the study area even with the planned widening of US 74. Its preliminary traffic and revenue study concluded that pursuing project financing with tolling was feasible and would be best served by combining the Monroe Connector and Bypass in a proposed toll financed project.

WSA's analysis relied upon the socioeconomic projections incorporated in the Metrolina Regional TDM. They concluded that the population projections contained in the Metrolina Regional TDM at that time were directly related to the growth rate of traffic predicated by the model. In their report, WSA indicated that the Monroe Connector/Bypass is included in the model and influences the growth projections therein. However, WSA did not perform a Build versus No-Build analysis for purposes of determining the project influence on the socioeconomic conditions in its study area. Furthermore, WSA provided no basis for the assumption that the Monroe Connector/Bypass influenced the growth projections in the model nor did they provide any documentation to justify the assumption. WSA's report clarified that its work was performed without the benefit of an independent economic review of the socioeconomic projections. WSA also acknowledged that such work would typically be required to support project financing.

In summary, this report was a preliminary traffic and revenue study and conducted prior to the DEIS Qualitative ICE and FEIS Quantitative ICE analyses. Furthermore, as shown through the analysis by Mr. Paul Smith discussed in section 4.4, the Monroe Connector/Bypass did not influence the 2005 Projections (which were used in the 2030 LRTP). Additionally, as discussed in the following sections, in their final *Comprehensive Traffic and Revenue Study* (October 2010), WSA did not assume the Monroe Connector/Bypass influenced growth projections in the base model, but instead, used an independent economist to develop TAZ projections specific for the final traffic and revenue study

[Kenan Institute of Private Enterprise, Technical Memorandum, Proposed Monroe Connector/Bypass Comprehensive Traffic and Revenue Study, Initial Report of Independent Economist, September 28, 2009](#)

In subsequent work on the traffic and revenue studies, the WSA team, in consultation with NCTA, hired the Kenan Institute of Private Enterprise at the University of North Carolina's Kenan-Flagler Business School (Kenan Institute) in 2009 to develop a set of TAZ projections specifically for the Monroe Connector/Bypass Traffic and Revenue Study. The Kenan Institute developed their projections based on Dr. Hammer's 2003 projections for regional and county growth, a review of the MUMPO Bottom-Up process to allocate county and district growth from Dr. Hammer's projections to TAZs; a review of recent economic, employment and population trends and estimates produced by other organizations; a regional scan of the project area; and, interviews with planners, developers and business/economic experts within the region. The Kenan Institute Report, entitled *Initial Report of Independent Economist* (Appendix K), was used in the development of WSA's *Comprehensive Traffic and Revenue Study*, October 22, 2010.

The main objective of the Kenan Institute Report was to determine the socioeconomic conditions that would be prevalent in its project study area with the construction of the Monroe Connector/Bypass toll road. As part of its work, the Kenan Institute conducted an independent economic review of the 2008 Interim Projections, which were the most up to date TAZ level projections available at the time of their study. The Kenan Institute’s corridor study area for evaluation and analysis is shown in Map 11.

Map 11 also includes the Qualitative and Quantitative ICE analysis areas. One key observation is the Kenan Institute’s study area is much smaller than the either the Qualitative or Quantitative ICE study areas. The Quantitative ICE study boundary was established to evaluate effects on the natural environment in consultation with resource agencies and is focused on impacts to watersheds and protected species. The Kenan Institute’s study area appears to have been established based on the project’s travel time savings during peak travel times. The Kenan Institute study area is 132,436 acres compared to the Quantitative ICE study area of 202,000 acres or 66 percent of the Quantitative ICE study area. This observation also highlights that the area of influence of change in socioeconomic projections is much less than the project area, the county and the region as a whole. In other words, the Kenan Institute analysis and resulting study area provide further evidence that the Monroe Connector/Bypass would have little to no effect on regional or county level growth.

The Kenan Institute reviewed the 2008 Interim Projections and determined that for the purposes of forecasting traffic for Toll Revenue Bond issuance, adjustments would be required to develop socioeconomic projections that were reasonable but did not overestimate traffic forecasts. The Kenan Institute made two adjustments to the socioeconomic estimates. “The first was to make region-wide adjustments consistent with the national growth expectations. The second was to reallocate growth in Union County in line with development factors and constraints.”<sup>33</sup>

The Kenan Institute’s analysis determined that the growth in the 2008 Interim Projections needed to be adjusted to account for the extended recession, which it determined was not accounted for in the projections. Based on its research, the Kenan Institute lowered the TAZ level projections by 8.7 percent to account for the national economic correction, which suggests that as growth resumes, the gross domestic product is expected to be 91.3 percent as high as it would have been at the same time in the absence of the national crisis.<sup>34</sup> Table 9 shows the original 2008 Interim Projections of household and population, the Kenan Institute adjustments for the national economic correction, and their project specific adjustments.

**Table 9: Household and Population Projections for the Corridor Study Area (132,436 acres)**

Year	MRM 2008 Interim Projections		Kenan Adjustments for “National Correction”		Kenan Adjustments due to Project	
	Households	Population	Households	Population	Households	Population
2005	42,595	120,054	42,595	120,054	42,595	120,054
2010	49,393	140,267	45,164	128,258	45,346	128,732
2015	56,454	161,371	51,556	147,364	51,968	148,486
2020	62,479	178,152	57,056	162,689	57,974	165,207
2025	68,407	194,812	62,469	177,902	63,869	181,775
2030	74,497	211,973	68,029	193,573	69,843	198,613

<sup>33</sup> Appendix K, p 29

<sup>34</sup> Appendix K, p 24

Looking within the project corridor, the Kenan Institute accepted the allocation of growth by the MPO in Mecklenburg County. However, it reallocated the projected population growth within Union County away from the line of high growth in the southwest quadrant of the county to the Connector/Bypass corridor because of the project. A portion of the expansion in several high growth TAZs in the northeastern quadrant of the county was also reallocated towards the corridor. The Kenan Institute made these adjustments based on results of interviews with local planners, analysis of growth trends in the area, and analysis of water and sewer demand and capacity in the area. The Kenan Institute report notes that many of the regional planners could not recall critical details of the regional and TAZ level socioeconomic projection and allocation modeling and reasoning behind specific projections. They also concluded from the interviews that a few biases may have entered into the Union County small area projections. Dr. Appold specifically noted the line of growth in southwest Union County along and south of NC 75 that did not appear to be appropriate given limitations on growth in that area.<sup>35</sup> However, that the Kenan Institute found it necessary to reallocate growth to account for the influence of the Monroe Connector/Bypass is consistent with the contention that the existing projections did not represent a Build Condition for the Monroe Connector/Bypass.

Table 10 provides a comparison between the MRM 2008 Interim Projections in the corridor to the overall adjustments made by the Kenan Institute.

The set of projections in the second column of Table 10, shown under the heading Kenan National Correction Adjusted, was calculated by multiplying the MPO projection for 2030 by 8.68 percent (the same reduction that the Kenan Institute used to adjust the projection for all TAZs). This calculation allowed a comparison of the Kenan Institute adjustments within the corridor due to the project (third column set of projections) with projections adjusted due to the national correction. Thus, the last column set in the table shows how the project would increase growth by zones in the corridor of the Kenan Institute study area. It is important to note that the Kenan Institute did not conduct a “Build versus No-Build” analysis, but only created a scenario of a 2030 projections of population and households with the project.

Although the growth rate difference in the entire corridor is rather small (3 percent), the tables show the substantial difference in the allocation of growth between the western corridor zones to the eastern corridor zones. This re-allocation of growth by zone is very similar to the growth patterns in the DEIS Qualitative ICE and FEIS Quantitative ICE. Therefore, the Kenan Institute reallocation of adjusted regional growth in Union County supports the Quantitative ICE conclusions regarding the project’s influence on accelerated growth in central and eastern Union County.

---

<sup>35</sup> Appendix K, p 24-25

**Table 10: Change in Household and Population Projections within the Corridor Study Area**

Year	MRM 2008 Interim Projections <sup>1</sup>		Kenan “National Correction” Adjusted		Kenan Project Adjusted <sup>1</sup>		Change in Kenan Projection due to project in 2030 (%)	
	Households	Population	Households	Population	Households	Population	Households	Population
<b>Corridor</b>								
2005	42,595	120,054	42,595	120,054	42,595	120,054		
2030	74,497	211,973	68,029	193,573	69,843	198,613	3%	3%
<b>Zone 1</b>								
2005	14,118	38,774	14,118	38,774	14,118	38,774		
2030	19,307	55,413	17,631	50,603	17,730	50,871	1%	1%
<b>Zone 2</b>								
2005	11,017	30,859	11,017	30,859	11,017	30,859		
2030	16,676	47,280	15,228	43,176	15,474	43,842	2%	2%
<b>Zone 3</b>								
2005	7,617	20,404	7,617	20,404	7,617	20,404		
2030	11,369	30,980	10,382	28,291	11,074	30,225	7%	7%
<b>Zone 4</b>								
2005	6,164	19,084	6,164	19,084	6,164	19,084		
2030	17,827	51,435	16,279	46,970	16,455	47,580	1%	1%
<b>Zone 5</b>								
2005	3,679	10,933	3,679	10,933	3,679	10,933		
2030	9,318	26,865	8,509	24,533	9,110	26,095	7%	6%

<sup>1</sup> Appendix K Table 11

One may argue that the Kenan Institute concluded that the growth in the corridor area would reallocate outside Union County without the project. However, the Kenan Institute acknowledged that it did not conduct a no-build versus build analysis. It also acknowledged that its analysis relied upon the regional growth allocation to the counties, which did not consider supply-side factors such as large infrastructure projects. Lastly, the Kenan Institute’s study area of 132,436 acres is much smaller than the area of Union County. Therefore, any conclusion the Kenan Institute report made regarding a No-Build Scenario was not reached with the same degree of analytical work performed in developing the adjusted projections.

A final point regarding the reports prepared by the Kenan Institute for the project is the complimentary narratives regarding Dr. Hammer’s methodologies, models and projections of region and county

population and employment described in his report, *Demographic and Economic Forecasts for the Charlotte Region*, 2003.

*Our basic assessment of the MPO socio-economic projections is twofold. First, although the region-wide projections were prepared with an unusual degree of competency and care, they may have been over-adapted to new information during the boom years which followed.*<sup>36</sup>

*The large area projections performed by Thomas Hammer and summarized above appear to be thoughtfully and carefully constructed.*<sup>37</sup>

*Recognizing that no projection is completely accurate (error bounds are discussed in the full report), our judgment is that Thomas Hammer, the consultant hired by MUMPO to estimate county and sub-county population and employment for selected years, has the most credible methodology of any known population and employment projection. His estimation process relies on Census data, the quantified detailed experiences of similar metropolitan regions, and extensive feedback from knowledgeable regional (Charlotte) informants. We feel that his estimates, modified with the best available information about development subsequent to his work, form the best possible basis for NCTA decision-making.*<sup>38</sup>

#### WSAs, Final Report, Proposed Monroe Connector/Bypass Comprehensive Traffic and Revenue Study, October 22, 2010

WSA's Comprehensive Traffic and Revenue Study (T&R Study), begun in 2009, was a follow up to the preliminary study performed in 2006. This research was conducted parallel to but separate from the NEPA analyses conducted for the FEIS and ROD. The report was not completed until after issuance of the ROD and it was not relied upon in the previous EIS process. The T&R Study used the Kenan Institute's socioeconomic projections of population, household and employment described above as inputs to the Metrolina Regional TDM. WSA also conducted an Origin-Destination Study in the project study area to identify current travel patterns and trip characteristics. They also supplemented NCDOT traffic counts with further counts during March 2009. WSA also updated the proposed transportation projects into the transportation network. Finally, based on traffic counts, WSA adjusted the model during a calibration process to achieve model predictions better aligned with current traffic observations.

WSA's T&R Study Report also compared population projections from the 2005 Projections (which were used in the 2030 LRTP), the 2008 Interim Projections, and the projections developed by the Kenan Institute in 2009 within the corridor. WSA found that the three different population projections for the corridor in the year 2030 closely correlate. For example, in 2009, the Kenan Institute estimated the 2030 population in their study area to be 198,613. This projection clearly included the effects of the project. However, the information WSA extracted from the 2005 Projections estimated the 2030 population in their study area to be 210,900. The information WSA extracted from the 2008 Interim Projections estimated the 2030 population in their study area to be 211,973. As previously discussed, none of the

---

<sup>36</sup> Appendix K, p 4

<sup>37</sup> Appendix K, p 23

<sup>38</sup> Appendix K, p 3

MRM socioeconomic projection versions included growth effects from the project. All of these projection results are within seven percent and suggest a high degree of similarity among different projection versions. Since the Kenan Institute's charge in developing their projections was to err on the side of not overestimating traffic so as to provide a conservative estimate for financing purposes, it would not necessarily be appropriate to use those adjusted projections as a basis for environmental impacts analysis. Finally, WSA's T&R Study did not construct a No-Build versus Build scenario to analyze the effects of the project on the study area. However, they did break down the project zones to more precisely describe where increased growth was likely to occur. This work is similar to the work conducted in the FEIS Quantitative ICE analysis and the implications from their analyses regarding the areas most likely to see additional growth due to the project are similar to the conclusions of the DEIS Qualitative ICE and FEIS Quantitative ICE.

### 3.4 How Do the MRM Socioeconomic Projections Compare to Other Projections?

The ICE Guidance recommends using adopted regional projections authored by MPOs where available.<sup>39</sup> FHWA guidance also recommends use of MPO projections and model forecasts when properly vetted.<sup>40</sup> Yet it would be best to compare those projections to others before using them. Therefore, it is instructive to compare the MPO projections to other population projections for the area. Projections from other sources show a wide range of future growth trends for Union County. Two of the most commonly cited privately developed projections are from Woods & Poole and Global Insights. Both firms use cohort-component projections, a demographic projection method that focuses on fertility, mortality and net migration to estimate total population by year. The Global Insight model incorporates the predictions of a regional macroeconomic model, thereby incorporating some economically driven assumptions of jobs growth into the process. The North Carolina State Data Center also generates population projections using a time series trends projection process. Table 11 summarizes five different projections of population to 2030 from four different sources:

1. MRM 2009 Projections (developed between 2004 and 2009)
2. Global Insights Projections (developed in 2009)
3. Woods & Poole Projections (developed in 2009)
4. NC State Data Center Projections (developed in 2009)
5. NC State Data Center Projections (developed May 2011).

As all of the projections operate from either demographic trend projection or economic modeling projections; they do not incorporate expectations of transportation infrastructure development except to the extent that past infrastructure development has affected past trends. One key to understanding the differences in these projections is to compare the actual change in each five-year increment. The demographically driven approaches used by Woods & Poole and the NC State Data Center produce very similar changes in each five-year increment of their projections, whereas the Global Insights and MPO projections, which are more economically driven models, show significant differences in each five-year increment of changes.

---

<sup>39</sup> NCDOT & NCDENR, 2001a, p III-16

<sup>40</sup> FHWA. *Interim Guidance on the Application of Travel and Land Use Forecasting in NEPA*. March 2010. p 12.

As to the actual projection of future population in Union County, the highest projection is from the NC Data Center in 2009, which projected a 2030 population of 400,683. The NC Data Center's projection from 2011, however, predicts a 2030 population of 271,289, the lowest of all the projections. The Global Insights projection from 2009 predicts a 2030 population of 393,407, while Woods & Poole from 2009 predicts a 2030 population of 283,433. The MRM 2009 Projections fall generally in the middle of all these projections, predicting a 2030 population of 337,314 for Union County. Most interesting is how closely the MPO projections predicted the 2010 populations (based on actual 2010 Census counts) of Mecklenburg and Union Counties. In the case of Mecklenburg County, the MPO projection for 2010 population of 931,666 (Table 11) is only 1.3 percent higher than the actual 2010 Census count of 919,628. In the case of Union County, the projected population in 2010 of 200,450 is only 0.4 percent lower than the actual 2010 Census count of 201,292. This compares favorably to other projections completed prior to 2010. The Global Insights projections from 2009 overestimated population in Mecklenburg and Union Counties by four percent and nine percent respectively. The Woods & Poole projection from 2009 underestimated population for Mecklenburg and Union Counties by 0.3 percent and two percent respectively. The NC State Data Center projections from 2009 underestimated Mecklenburg County population by one percent and overestimated Union County population by four percent. Given that these other projections were all completed about one year prior to the horizon year in question (the 2010 Census counts) whereas the MRM Socioeconomic projections were largely completed two years prior (and the underlying work dates back to 2004), the MRM socioeconomic projections for Mecklenburg and Union Counties compare favorably.

**Table 11: Comparison of Population Projections**

Global Insights (2009)									
	Mecklenburg	Change	Annualized % Change	Union	Change	Annualized % Change	Region*	Change	Annualized % Change
2005	806,834			161,765			1,314,553		
2010	956,823	149,989	3.5%	219,690	57,925	6.3%	1,570,976	256,423	3.6%
2015	1,065,308	108,485	2.2%	263,298	43,608	3.7%	1,749,656	178,680	2.2%
2020	1,171,442	106,134	1.9%	303,978	40,680	2.9%	1,920,865	171,209	1.9%
2025	1,275,768	104,326	1.7%	349,186	45,208	2.8%	2,097,412	176,547	1.8%
2030	1,382,406	106,638	1.6%	393,407	44,221	2.4%	2,280,808	183,396	1.7%
Woods & Poole (2009)									
	Mecklenburg	Change	Annualized % Change	Union	Change	Annualized % Change	Region*	Change	Annualized % Change
2005	802,400			160,876			1,307,329		
2010	916,747	114,347	2.7%	197,554	36,678	4.2%	1,497,063	189,734	2.8%
2015	1,000,055	83,308	1.8%	218,988	21,434	2.1%	1,630,535	133,472	1.7%
2020	1,084,264	84,209	1.6%	240,490	21,502	1.9%	1,765,570	135,035	1.6%
2025	1,168,900	84,636	1.5%	261,995	21,505	1.7%	1,901,371	135,801	1.5%
2030	1,253,544	84,644	1.4%	283,433	21,438	1.6%	2,037,236	135,865	1.4%
MRM 2009 Projections									
	Mecklenburg	Change	Annualized % Change	Union	Change	Annualized % Change	Region*	Change	Annualized % Change
2005	837,862			168,728			1,369,445		
2010	931,666	93,804	2.15%	200,450	31,722	3.51%	1,544,779	175,334	2.44%
2015	1,025,004	93,338	1.93%	231,986	31,536	2.97%	1,719,218	174,439	2.16%
2020	1,111,254	86,250	1.63%	266,612	34,626	2.82%	1,891,996	172,778	1.93%
2025	1,196,999	85,745	1.50%	301,053	34,441	2.46%	2,063,849	171,853	1.75%
2030	1,271,300	74,301	1.21%	337,314	36,261	2.30%	2,221,345	157,496	1.48%
NC State Data Center (2009)									
	Mecklenburg	Change	Annualized % Change	Union	Change	Annualized % Change	Region*	Change	Annualized % Change
2005	796,529			159,726			1,298,879		
2010	911,252	114,723	2.7%	210,069	50,343	5.6%	1,518,920	220,041	3.2%
2015	996,414	85,162	1.8%	257,378	47,309	4.2%	1,706,871	187,951	2.4%
2020	1,081,577	85,163	1.7%	304,688	47,310	3.4%	1,894,854	187,983	2.1%
2025	1,166,740	85,163	1.5%	351,996	47,308	2.9%	2,082,842	187,988	1.9%
2030	1,253,198	86,458	1.4%	400,683	48,687	2.6%	2,274,700	191,858	1.8%

NC State Data Center (2011)									
	Mecklenburg	Change	Annualized % Change	Union	Change	Annualized % Change	Region*	Change	Annualized % Change
2005	802,998			160,260			1,305,092		
2010	923,144	120,146	2.8%	202,200	41,940	4.8%	1,510,094	205,002	3.0%
2015	1,009,658	86,514	1.8%	219,522	17,322	1.7%	1,634,793	124,699	1.6%
2020	1,095,857	86,199	1.7%	236,778	17,256	1.5%	1,758,306	123,513	1.5%
2025	1,182,056	86,199	1.5%	254,034	17,256	1.4%	1,881,818	123,512	1.4%
2030	1,268,257	86,201	1.4%	271,289	17,255	1.3%	2,005,336	123,518	1.3%

\* The Regional projections here are for a four county region of Cabarrus, Gaston, Mecklenburg and Union Counties. This is due to data limitations from the various sources.

### 3.5 How Accurate are the MPO Projections?

Projecting socioeconomic conditions, and any projection of the future, is an uncertain process fraught with the potential for error. Available evidence on socioeconomic projection indicates that “forecast errors are generally larger for small places [such as an individual TAZ] than for large places; are generally larger for places that have very high [such as Union County] or negative growth rates than they are for places that have moderate, positive growth rates; generally increase with the length of the projection horizon; and vary from one launch year to another.”<sup>41</sup> Errors for long-range socioeconomic projection can also be quite high, especially for smaller geographies. For county level projections of 25 years, the typical mean algebraic percentage errors are about 30 percent while for census tracts (which are typically larger than TAZs) errors are typically 45 percent for the same period.<sup>42</sup> Thus, despite the best efforts of researchers and forecasters, the error rates for long-range projections are still quite high and thus any projection or estimate of induced and cumulative effects must be considered the best estimate within a wide range of error. The accuracy of projected growth under any future scenario could be affected by many variables. These include individual owner or developer actions, the timing of or changes in utility provision, changes in local or state regulations on land use and, most importantly, changes in national or regional economic conditions. While the potential for error is high, the techniques used by the MPO are the best available and provide the best available data for projecting population and employment conditions in the future.

### 3.6 Conclusions

#### What Influence Did the Monroe Connector/Bypass Have on the MPO Projections?

As discussed above, an assessment of the MRM socioeconomic projections reveals the following regarding the influence of the Monroe Connector/Bypass on the projections:

- The proposed project did not affect the Travel Time to Core Employment factor in the LUSAM process as this factor had zero weight for all districts for all LUSAM runs.

<sup>41</sup> Smith, Stanely K., Tayman, Jeff, Swanson, David A. *State and Local Population Projections: Methodology and Analysis*. Kluwere Academic/Plenum Publishers, New York, 2001. p 292

<sup>42</sup> Smith, Tayman, Swanson, p 340

- The proposed project did not affect the Planners' Judgment factor in the LUSAM process as this factor had zero weight for all districts in Union County for all LUSAM runs.
- The proposed project was included in the Travel Time to Employment factor used by Paul Smith in developing the 2005 Projections, but a reassessment of that factor without the proposed project shows that the project had no influence on the projection results.
- The proposed project did not affect Dr. Hammer's projections of households and employment that were used in the 2005 Projections for county level control totals and were used in the 2008 Interim and 2009 Projections for developing the district level targets.
- There is no evidence or indication that any other factor in the LUSAM process or the other projection processes was influenced by the proposed project and communications with CDOT staff indicate that the proposed project was not a consideration in development of the projections.
- A review of the results of the projections shows no signs that the proposed project influenced the projections.

Based on this review, the overall evidence suggests that the MRM socioeconomic projections are insensitive to the presence or absence of the proposed project in the land use models used to develop the projections. The methodology used by CDOT and MUMPO to develop the projections is effectively insensitive to the Monroe Bypass/Connector. In the methodology used by Dr. Hammer, specific adjustment had to be made to account for the expected growth-induced by large roadway projects in the Top-Down process. As the sensitivity analysis of Paul Smith's Travel Time to Employment Factor showed, the proposed project made no difference in the Bottom-Up allocation process. Thus, the methodology used does not incorporate the full accessibility impacts of major roadway projects. Consequently, if the ICE analysis were to follow the exact same methodology as the MRM socioeconomic projections to calculate induced growth impacts of the Monroe Connector/Bypass, then the result would be to find no induced growth. However, the qualitative ICE analysis and all other studies point to localized land use impacts occurring with the Build Alternative, particularly in eastern Union County. Therefore, it would be inappropriate to use the MPO socioeconomic projection and allocation methods to attempt to estimate induced growth or induced land use changes associated with the Monroe Bypass/Connector. As described in Section 4, the study team has chosen other methodologies to estimate induced growth and induced land use changes associated with the proposed project.

#### How Did the Quantitative ICE Use the MPO Projections?

Based on the above review of the assumptions and variables used in the Top-Down and Bottom-Up processes, the inputs and variables used in the LUSAM models, a review of the actual results of the various projection versions, and a re-evaluation of the 2005 Projections without the project, we concluded that the MUMPO models did not incorporate the induced land use effects of the Monroe Connector/Bypass. Furthermore, comparisons to other projections for Union County, the MPO projections appear to be reasonable and in the middle of the range of available projections. Since the MPO projections are also the only source that provides growth projections at a small geographic scale, which is critical to a Quantitative ICE analysis, the MPO projections appear to be the best resource to developing a starting point for future land use conditions in the study area.

A review of the actual distribution of growth in the projections indicates that there is no pattern of development along the proposed project corridor that would suggest that the proposed project was considered in the projection development. Furthermore, a review of how other entities have used the MRM Projections for Traffic and Revenue analyses shows that minor adjustments were made to the MRM socioeconomic projections to account for the presence of the Monroe Connector/Bypass. These adjustments generally consisted of increases in household and employment in eastern portions of the study area. These conclusions suggest that additional analysis is needed to estimate the induced land use effects of the project. As described in Section 4, this Quantitative ICE analysis used the MPO projections as control totals, along with various other information, to develop a scenario without the project or its growth inducing impacts (i.e., the No-Build Scenario). The study team then estimated the induced growth potential of the project and added that estimated induced growth to the No-Build land use scenario to create a new scenario that represents future conditions with the project and its growth inducing impacts (i.e. the Build Scenario).

The prior Quantitative ICE analysis (2010) examined two build scenarios, one with an interchange at US 601 (the RPA) and one without an interchange at US 601. The prior analysis found very little difference in land use change between the RPA and the alternative without the US 601 interchange. Therefore, only one build scenario was used in this analysis.

## 4.0 INDUCED GROWTH ASSESSMENT AND FUTURE LAND USE SCENARIOS

To assess the induced growth potential of the proposed project and compare, quantitatively, the land use conditions with and without the proposed project, two land use scenarios were developed. The Build Scenario would represent the best estimate of land development conditions with the proposed project and its growth inducing impacts. The No-Build Scenario would represent the best estimate of land use conditions without the proposed project or its growth inducing impacts. As noted above, a reference point for the future growth of the study area was needed from which to base the two scenarios and that reference point was the MPO socioeconomic projections. The sections below describe specifically how each scenario was created and how the projections were used in the development of those scenarios.

### 4.1 How Did the ICE Analysis Project Land Use without the Proposed Project?

To estimate the land use conditions in 2030 without the proposed project or its growth-inducing impacts, the study team used three main inputs:

- Stream buffer regulations
- Land use plans or zoning ordinances (as appropriate per the research phase)
- MPO socioeconomic projections of growth.

All undeveloped parcels were isolated from the process to develop the Existing Land Use Scenario and these parcels were considered available for development unless specifically excluded by regulations. These parcels were then compared to the areas designated for stream buffers and the zoning and land use plans for the various communities to determine the potential use and density for each parcel. Then, based on the growth estimates in the TAZ level projection, the total amount of development was estimated for 2030. The specific steps and methods are detailed below.

#### *Lands Excluded from Development*

Prior to allocating growth, stream buffers were excluded from the subset of developable parcels because development within these areas is prohibited by local and/or state regulations. Buffers were developed based on the Post Construction Ordinance regulations and NCDENR's *Site Specific Water Quality Management Plan for the Goose Creek Watershed* (NCDENR, 2009). These regulations vary somewhat between jurisdictions but generally require the following buffers: 30 feet on streams draining areas less than 50 acres; 35 feet on streams draining more than 50 acres and less than 300 acres; 50 feet on streams draining areas more than 300 acres less than 640 acres; and 100 feet plus the floodplain on streams draining more than 640 acres. Special rules apply in the Goose Creek watershed where undisturbed riparian buffers within 200 feet of waterbodies within the 100-year floodplain and within 100 feet of waterbodies that are not within the 100-year floodplain are now required.<sup>43</sup> Buffers were developed on all

---

<sup>43</sup> North Carolina Department of Environment and Natural Resources (NCDENR). 2009. *Site Specific Water Quality Management Plan for the Goose Creek Watershed*.

streams in the National Hydrographic Dataset available for the area.<sup>44</sup> While it is possible to obtain an exemption to these restrictions, it is assumed that mitigation requirements would offset any impacts.

### *Residential Development Allocation*

Once the total land available for development was determined, the next step was to estimate the level of development needed to accommodate future household growth. The study team used the projected household growth from the MPO 2009 Projections. For each TAZ, the total undeveloped (vacant or agricultural) area was determined based on the parcel categorization completed for the Existing Land Use Scenario (see Section 2.1). For the future scenario, each undeveloped parcel was re-categorized into one of the five development categories based on the future land use plans and zoning of the local jurisdictions. For residential properties, the land use categories equated to the following densities:

- Low Density Residential – two dwelling units (DU) per acre or fewer
- Medium Density Residential – greater than two DU per acre but fewer than five
- High Density Residential – five or more DU per acre.

Household growth by TAZ based on the MUMPO’s projections is depicted in Map 12. The allocation for residential growth followed a four-step process, as detailed below.

Step 1 - Identification of TAZ Build-Out Capacity: The total acreage of currently undeveloped land that is zoned or planned for future residential development based on local land use plans was calculated for each TAZ to determine the total build-out capacity of that TAZ. Based on local future land use plans, each parcel was assigned a residential land use category, and the total number of possible dwelling units was determined.

Step 2: - Identification of Projections by TAZ: The build-out capacity values calculated in Step 1 were then compared to the household growth in the MUMPO TAZ projections.

Step 3 - Density Adjustments for Over-Capacity TAZs: Where projected growth based on MUMPO’s TAZ projection exceeded capacity (determined in Step 1 above), spot checking was done to determine where infill development could be expected to increase density, and parcels were reclassified to a higher residential density appropriately to allow the projected growth to “fit” within the TAZ area.

Step 4 - Distribution of Growth for Under-Capacity TAZs: Where projected growth was equal to or less than capacity, a “percentage of capacity factor” was calculated by dividing the projected growth by the capacity. This factor was used to determine the reduction of the potential build-out area necessary to represent the projected level of growth.

Rather than selecting some parcels to build-out and others to remain undeveloped, the methodology spreads the growth across a proportionate amount of every potential parcel. This provides a more fragmented land use projection than that which might actually occur; therefore, it is a conservative estimate (i.e., overestimate), in terms of coverage, of the areas that may have future development. Given that TAZ boundaries are smaller than watershed boundaries, distributing growth to control totals within the TAZs does not appear to potentially skew the indirect or cumulative effects results for watersheds.

---

<sup>44</sup> U.S. Geological Survey Water Resources Division and U.S. Department of Agricultural Natural Resources Conservation Service (USGS & USDA). 1999. National Hydrography Dataset, Watershed Boundaries Dataset.

It should be noted that only a portion of each developable parcel was converted to development for the future land use scenario, as described below, so that the total acres of development in each TAZ was maintained according to the projections. For example, if a TAZ had 1,000 acres of currently undeveloped parcels categorized for low density residential growth in the future (two DU per acre), the TAZ would have capacity for 2,000 households. If the TAZ was expected, based on the MPO projections, to add 1,000 households in the future, the TAZ would be filling only 50 percent of its capacity. Thus, a 50 percent reduction factor would be applied to all currently undeveloped parcels in that TAZ categorized for future low density residential development. Therefore, each of those parcels in that TAZ would be reduced in size by 50 percent to reflect the expectation that growth under the 2030 No-Build scenario will only fill 50 percent of the total capacity of low density residential development in that TAZ, and the remaining 50 percent was classified as undeveloped. These undeveloped areas retained the previously assigned NCGAP land cover category (as listed in Section 2.1).

*Non-Residential Development Allocation*

A similar process was completed for future non-residential development. All currently undeveloped parcels with non-residential zoning or future land use designations were summarized at the TAZ level to calculate the difference between projected growth and capacity.

The MPO TAZ projections include projections for the number of new employees by economic sector for each TAZ. Those sectors were aggregated into Office, Retail or Industrial/Warehouse/Distribution employment growth. Total employment growth by TAZ is depicted in Map 13. Projected new employees were used to calculate new acres of employment-related development using the Social Cost of Alternative Land Development Scenarios (SCALDS) model values provided in the NCDOT’s ICE Guidance for assessing future land use (NCDOT & NCDENR, 2001b, p. A-14). These model values are presented in Table 12.

**Table 12: Non-Residential Land Use by Employment**

Employment Type	Employees/Acre
Office	52.32
Retail	21.78
Industrial/Warehousing/ Distribution	16.33

As with the residential land use analysis, the resulting values from the conversion of employees to acres of land developed were compared to the total capacity for each land use in each TAZ. Reduction factors were calculated in similar fashion to the residential process. These reduction factors were then applied to the non-residential parcels. As with residential development, the growth was spread across a portion of all developable parcels rather than selecting which parcels would develop and which would not within each TAZ.

Once both residential and non-residential development had been accounted for in the parcel and TAZ analysis, the “reduced” parcels categorized by land use were converted to 30x30-meter raster and overlaid on the existing land cover raster to create a new 2030 No-Build scenario raster image.

**4.2 How Was Project-Induced Growth Estimated?**

As National Cooperative Highway Research Program (NCHRP) Report 423A notes:

*When a transportation project or policy makes it easier to access certain locations, these places can become attractive to more or different types of development. However, improving accessibility does not guarantee that land use changes will follow. The type, amount, and timing of land use changes will also depend upon the state of the regional economy, the current levels of accessibility, the types of development permitted by land use regulations, the availability of services such as sewer and water, the desirability of the area for development, and other factors.*<sup>45</sup>

This statement suggests that induced growth impacts of major road projects will be dependent upon five major factors:

- The state of the regional economy
- Current levels of accessibility
- The types of development permitted by land use regulation
- The availability services such as sewer and water
- The desirability of an area for development.

Thus, in some cases, induced growth impacts of specific projects may be negligible. The Monroe Connector/Bypass would certainly improve travel times to eastern Union County; however, most of the county is already highly accessible with a well-connected roadway network and no major barriers limiting access from Union County to the major employment centers in Mecklenburg County. Various studies have shown that accessibility improvements of highway projects have had diminishing impacts on land values since the 1950s. This is logical—as the national and regional highway systems have been more fully built out, the addition of any single additional link in the network provides a diminishing return to the overall accessibility of any given area. Boarnet and Haughwout note that:

*As more highways are built, and the metropolitan highway network matures, the incremental effect on accessibility from new or improved highways decreases, thus accounting for a smaller change in land prices due to any access premium.*

*New evidence suggests that metropolitan highway projects still influence land use in the way that theory predicts. The important difference between the new evidence and earlier studies is that the geographic scale of the land use effect appears to be somewhat smaller. A new highway or improvement might importantly reduce travel times in the immediate vicinity of a project, even if the resulting changes in metropolitan-wide transportation accessibility are small. Hence the land use effects of modern highway projects likely operate over a very fine geographic scale, rather close to the project.*<sup>46</sup>

Therefore, other factors that might affect land use change, such as utility availability and planned and zoned land uses were also analyzed to estimate the potential induced impacts of the project. The methods

---

<sup>45</sup> NCHRP Report 423A. *Land Use Impacts of Transportation: A Guidebook*. Washington DC: National Academy Press, 1999.

<sup>46</sup> Boarnet, Marlon G. and Haughwout, Andrew F. *Do Highways Matter? Evidence and Policy Implications of Highways' Influence on Metropolitan Development*. The University of California Transportation Center, Berkeley, CA. August 2000. <http://escholarship.org/uc/item/5rn9w6bz>. p. 9

used to estimate the induced growth potential of the proposed project can be summarized as a combination of the following analytical techniques:

- a scenario writing approach to identify areas most likely to see induced growth based on planning information and interviews
- a build-out analysis to see which areas had the most capacity for induced growth
- an accessibility analysis to see which areas would most benefit from the proposed project and thus most likely to see induced growth
- a Hartgen Analysis to estimate potential commercial growth at interchange areas.

This combination of approaches was deemed most appropriate as the local land use regulatory restrictions varied dramatically across the FLUSA and a more direct gravity model approach would likely overstate growth in some areas and understate it in others by missing the regulatory restrictions. The accessibility analysis did not consider that the cost of a toll would offset the value of the time saved using the road and therefore that portion of the analysis may actually overstate the potential for induced growth.

### **Build Land Use Scenario**

This Quantitative ICE examines potential effects of the alternative DSA D, which was the Recommended, Preferred Alternative (RPA) for the Monroe Connector/Bypass in the Final Environmental Impact Statement (FEIS). NCTA found no reason to change the conclusions previously reached by NCTA and its agency partners as to the RPA when evaluating changes in the study area since the publication of the ROD and therefore this ICE report analyzes only the RPA in the Build Land Use Scenario.

### **Improvements in Accessibility/Travel Time**

An analysis of accessibility was completed to determine the areas most likely to see development increases attributable to the Monroe Connector/Bypass. The main areas of employment in the region are in Mecklenburg County; therefore, improving accessibility (as measured by travel time) to I-485 and the major employment centers in Mecklenburg County would be the main reason for changes in development patterns. This assertion is supported by the Qualitative ICE Assessment and the ICE discussion in the Draft EIS. To identify the areas with substantially improved accessibility, an estimate of the improvement in travel time to the US 74/I-485 interchange attributable to the proposed project was calculated for the FLUSA.

Map 14 shows the changes in driving time under the Build scenario compared to the No-Build scenario. This analysis was completed using the Network Analyst extension of ArcGIS and a general roadway network with posted speed limit attributes. The travel time from all intersections within the Study Area to the I-485/US 74 interchange was calculated in both the No-Build and Build scenarios. The scenarios are compared on the basis of traffic operating at posted speed limits. The difference in travel time to each intersection was calculated, and the result was converted to a raster surface using the Inverse Distance Weighted method. The resulting map shows the estimated travel time improvement that the Monroe Connector/Bypass will provide to the study area, given the assumptions noted above. The results are not intended to represent the exact travel time savings that the project would provide to the study area. It is mostly an illustrative tool for determining which areas will see the greatest and least accessibility improvements because of the proposed project. The analysis shows improvement in accessibility, especially east of Monroe and around Wingate due to the proposed project. There are also improvements for some sections of Unionville along NC 200 (Morgan Mill Road).

### *Scenario Writing and Build Out Analyses*

Other factors considered in the allocation of growth in the project area with the Monroe Connector/Bypass included the availability of water and sewer, and the inclination of local jurisdictions to new development. Availability of sewer service in the future was determined by using Future Public Sewer System coverage from the NC Center for Geographic Analysis. Map 15 shows the estimates of existing and future availability of sewer service in the FLUSA. Existing sewer service is relatively limited north of the proposed project, particularly east of Rocky River Road. In the future, sewer service is expected to be extended into Fairview and northern parts of Unionville, but these areas are relatively far from the proposed project and do not coincide with areas that see travel time savings from the proposed project. East of Morgan Mill Road, sewer service exists around each interchange and in the future sewer service is expected to be expanded especially north and south of Wingate. These areas to coincide with areas that would benefit substantially from the travel time savings of the proposed project. These areas would logically be the most likely to see some induced land use changes associated with the proposed project.

The inclination of local jurisdictions toward new development is also critical to the likelihood of induced land use changes and induced growth. Based on the interviews and review of planning documents, the localities in the western portions of the study area, particularly Indian Trail and Stallings, are less interested in fostering significant growth within their jurisdictions. Unionville, while not opposed to new development, is not interested in increasing densities and would prefer to maintain its rural character, though they are planning for a commercial node at the US 601 interchange with the proposed project.

Other jurisdictions, however, are more interested in fostering growth and development associated with the proposed project. Union County, as noted above, has a new land use plan that specifically recommends residential development north of Wingate and east of Monroe that is expected to occur with the proposed project. Additionally, Wingate and Marshville have plans to encourage development around the interchange areas within their jurisdictions. These observations were suggested in the Qualitative ICE Assessment and Draft EIS, and are supported by the GIS analysis and interviews conducted for the quantitative ICE analysis. Based on this improved accessibility, as well as the availability of sewer service, the areas east of Monroe and north of Wingate, in the eastern portions of the Study Area, are most likely to see increased growth as a result of the project.

### *Hartgen Analysis of Interchanges*

In addition to the accessibility analysis described above, a “Hartgen analysis” was completed for each interchange area to gauge potential for development, using methods researched by Dr. David Hartgen.<sup>47</sup> A Hartgen analysis reviews the traffic volumes, distance to nearest towns, and access to sewer and water services to gauge the potential for induced development at interchanges in rural areas. The results of that analysis indicated that all interchanges except the Forest Hills School Road interchange have at least moderate potential for commercial development. Thus, the Build scenario analysis indicates that more dense growth would be expected where accessibility will improve and other needed infrastructure will be available in the future. Results of this analysis are shown in Appendix L.

---

<sup>47</sup> NCDOT & NCDENR, 2001a, p. IV-27

### *Project-Induced Growth Allocation*

The preceding analysis identified the general locations and types of development that the proposed project would induce in a Build Scenario. The amount of additional development was determined based on the availability of land in the vicinity of proposed interchanges, the density allowed by zoning and land use plans for the jurisdictions and the capacity for additional development. Capacity for additional development is limited primarily by the access to sewer services. Thus, those areas around the interchanges that are not expected to receive sewer service in the future were not considered for higher density uses. Most new commercial development was allocated in the immediate vicinity of interchanges or at major crossroads nearby. Additional residential development or increases in residential density were allocated in areas near (within roughly two to three miles) but not immediately adjacent to interchanges. The resulting adjustments in parcel-level land use from the 2030 No-Build scenario was then converted to a 30x30 meter raster land cover and overlaid on the 2030 No-Build raster.

Finally, one method often considered in induced growth analysis is the possible reallocation of growth within a study area. As accessibility improves in the eastern parts of Union County, the expanded opportunities for development may result in less development in the western portions of the FLUSA in a Build Scenario, relative to a No-Build Scenario, as new development may prefer less costly land and more growth friendly jurisdictions. Other ICE analyses have sometimes taken a reallocation approach to the issue of induced growth. In this case, the study team has specifically chosen not to reallocate growth, but instead to add the estimated induced growth over and above that growth expected under a No-Build Scenario. With this assumption, the ICE analysis is taking a more conservative approach to assuming higher possible cumulative effects across the entire study area.

### *Project-Induced Growth Estimates*

Induced land use changes in the area of US 74 at the western terminus of the project were expected to be limited. Under the No-Build Scenario, 84 percent of the land within one mile of the interchange is already developed and many of the remaining undeveloped areas are within or near regulated riparian buffers and would therefore be more difficult to develop. Thus, most of the land in the vicinity of this interchange is already developed or planned for development and there would be little opportunity for additional development under the Build Scenario. Additionally, the proposed project does not provide substantial time savings to major regional employment centers from this area and would therefore be unlikely to spur development in this area.

**At Indian Trail-Fairview Road**, approximately 50 acres of additional industrial development was expected with the Build scenario. This is consistent with the Indian Trail's zoning and land use plans for the interchange area to become a major industrial park.

**At Unionville-Indian Trail Road**, Indian Trail land use plans projected a village center as the focal point of the interchange area. Land use plans called for additional commercial space to take advantage of the interchange and medium density residential using Traditional Neighborhood Design (TND) principles. TND principles include building developments with a range of housing types, a well-connected street system, integrated public spaces and some mix of uses. Land use changes under the Build scenario were a shift from residential to commercial for about 50 acres and increases in residential density affecting about 100 acres.

**At Rocky River Road**, an addition of approximately 50 acres of commercial land use was expected, with about half being converted from a different use compared to the No-Build, consistent with City of

Monroe's Rocky River Land Use Corridor Plans (November 2008) for additional commercial development in this area should the proposed project be built.

**At US 601**, an additional 100 acres of commercial development, with about half being converted from residential use compared to the No-Build, was expected and was consistent with the City of Monroe zoning and plans for areas near this interchange. About 100 acres of residential land use were expected to increase in density. While this was not consistent with existing zoning for the area, it was projected that additional residential density would follow commercial development in the vicinity of this interchange.

**At Morgan Mill Road**, additional commercial development of less than 50 acres was expected just south of the interchange, mostly converted from residential compared to the No-Build scenario. In addition, about 50 acres of increased residential density was expected in the Build scenario. Also, less than 50 acres of industrial land use, converted from residential as compared to the No-Build, was expected, which was consistent with existing land use and zoning.

**At Austin Chaney Road**, additional industrial/office development of about 100 acres, plus additional commercial development of about 50 acres was expected. Most of these additions would replace residential development as compared to the No-Build scenario. Additional or increased residential density of about 150 acres was also expected. These were generally consistent with the *Strategic Plan for Economic Development, Town of Marshville, Town of Wingate* (2008) indicating that this interchange area should be a focal point for non-residential development in eastern Union County. In addition, approximately 1,000 additional acres of Low Density Residential development is expected in the areas north of Wingate and east of Monroe. This is generally consistent with the expected land use changes identified in the updated Union County Comprehensive Plan.

**At Forest Hills School Road**, only new residential development was expected as the results of Hartgen Analysis indicated poor conditions for commercial development. About 100 acres of additional or higher density residential development was expected around this interchange.

#### Legacy Park Proposal

The resource agencies and others have questioned whether the Quantitative ICE should consider the effects associated with the proposed Legacy Park development in eastern Union County and include them in one or both of the future land use scenarios. The proposed Legacy Park is a potential industrial park and intermodal shipment terminal advocated by the former economic development agency for Union County (Union County Partnership for Progress) and mentioned in several regional reports, including the NCDOT Seven Portals Study. The potential development was proposed to be sited north and east of Marshville, along and north of the CSX railroad. Estimates from the Union County Partnership for Progress of the full build-out of the proposed industrial park and rail terminal included up to 5,000 acres of development and up to 20,000 jobs on site.

The Qualitative ICE and the previous Quantitative ICE addressed this development as not being reasonably foreseeable as there were no definite project plans or financing behind the project. Research by the Kenan Institute at the same time as the Quantitative ICE indicated that the proposal did not have

any funding commitment and needed to surmount a significant number of hurdles before becoming a reality.<sup>48</sup> These hurdles include:

- a feasibility study to determine potential site constraints,
- infrastructure including water and sewer,
- a company interested in developing such a facility at a distance from the core of the Charlotte region,
- funding for feasibility studies, infrastructure development and other pre-development activities.

Further research by the study team since the FEIS has reinforced the conclusion that Legacy Park is currently not a reasonably foreseeable development, particularly in the timeframe of the ICE analysis (see interview summaries in Appendix A). There are a few factors that do indicate planning for the project is continuing. For example, the most recent Union County Water and Wastewater Master Plan (2011) does include provisions for ensuring sufficient capacity to provide service if Legacy Park is built, but the plan includes no actions items or financing recommendations for providing the specific water or sewer lines to directly serve the site. Three localities (Anson County, Marshville and Wingate) have adopted resolutions supporting the proposal, but these localities do not have jurisdiction over most of the proposed site.

The vast majority of evidence at this time suggests the proposal is highly speculative and unlikely to develop in a foreseeable timeframe, if ever. In an interview with the project's main sponsor, staff from the Union County Partnership for Progress indicated that planning for the project is "dead" and that they felt the project was highly speculative and unlikely to develop. Their most optimistic estimate was that if the Monroe Connector/Bypass were built there might be a 25 percent chance of some industrial development at the proposed site.

In an interview with the Planning Director for Union County, Richard Black noted that the site of the proposed development was marked for rural residential development in the most recent Union County Land Use Plan. The first draft of that plan did include industrial planned land use at the site of the proposal, but the planned land use was changed as Planning Commissioners and others felt the Legacy Park proposal was too speculative and highly unlikely to occur. Furthermore, the current zoning for most of the site is rural residential. Mr. Black also noted that his impression was that the proposal hinged on the participation of CSX Transportation and, in particular, the development of an intermodal (rail-truck) terminal at the site to spur connected industrial development.

The project team corresponded with CSX staff who noted that the site was topographically well suited to development and situated in a manner that would make it easy to develop rail-served industrial development or an intermodal terminal. They noted that they have previously marketed the site to a number of customers but that none had showed interest. As to the development of an intermodal terminal, CSX staff noted that they did not see the level of market demand necessary to proceed with a feasibility study at this time.

The project team communicated with Dr. Stephen J. Appold, Assistant Professor at the Kenan Institute at UNC-Chapel Hill. Dr. Appold has been involved with CDOT and the Metrolina Region on new Top-Down projections and has worked on logistics studies for the State Logistics Task Force. Dr. Appold

---

<sup>48</sup> Appendix K, p 34-35

noted that the anchor tenant for Legacy Park has expressed interest but made no commitment. He noted that the location of Legacy Park is distant from the main traffic flows in the region and that even if the Monroe Connector/Bypass were constructed as a non-toll facility, it would not be clear that Legacy Park would develop as a logistics node. Additionally, Dr. Appold noted that while many proposed developments may cite large potential “build out” projections, such projections are often inflated and that many proposals never reach their build out and some may never attract any tenants or users at all.<sup>49</sup>

Finally, the project team communicated with Christopher Platé and his staff at Monroe-Union County Economic Development. Mr. Platé and his staff indicated that while there was interest in seeing some industrial development in the area where Legacy Park had been planned, the ideas on the table as of 2013 were for a much smaller industrial park of up to 200 acres. While the economic development staff was taking steps to secure property options and to encourage utility infrastructure planning, the much smaller proposal was still considered speculative.

The totality of information points toward the likelihood that Legacy Park is a highly speculative proposal that is unlikely to see development within the time horizon of the ICE analysis (2030) with or without the Monroe Connector/Bypass. Therefore, no development associated with Legacy Park has been incorporated into any future land use scenarios for this analysis. However, NCDOT and FHWA will continue to monitor the Legacy Park proposal and other proposed development projects throughout the NEPA process.

#### US 74 Revitalization Study

Beginning in 2011, Union County, and the Towns of Stallings, Indian Trail and Monroe worked together to begin development of the US 74 Revitalization Study. The study completed a draft plan in 2013 and those draft recommendations are currently under review and consideration. The study team reviewed the draft US 74 Revitalization Study and its recommendations for their potential impact to future land use scenarios. Since the study is still draft and has not been adopted and since the land use and other recommendations would result in minimal changes to the land use scenario results, the study team determined it was not reasonably foreseeable to incorporate the draft plan recommendations into any future land use scenario.

---

<sup>49</sup> Letter from Dr. Stephen J. Appold to Jamal Alavi, NCDOT, May 29, 2013, p 3-4.

## 5.0 UPDATED LAND USE RESULTS

### 5.1 What Are the Land Use Results?

The following section outlines the updated results from the three updated scenarios, the 2010 Existing (Baseline), the 2030 No-Build, and the 2030 Build scenario. The results of the Updated 2010 Baseline Scenario are shown in Table 13. The Update 2010 Baseline Land Use is illustrated in Map 3.

**Table 13: Updated 2010 Baseline Land Use**

Land Use	Total Area (acres)	% of Total Area
Total Residential	71,500	35%
<i>Low Density Residential</i>	55,600	28%
<i>Medium Density Residential</i>	12,900	6%
<i>High Density Residential</i>	3,100	2%
Commercial	3,900	2%
Industrial/Office/Institutional	7,100	4%
Transportation	12,700	6%
<b>Total Developed</b>	<b>95,200</b>	<b>47%</b>
Agricultural Fields	20,100	10%
Agricultural Pasture/Hay and Natural Herbaceous	32,800	16%
<b>Total Agricultural</b>	<b>52,900</b>	<b>26%</b>
Coniferous Cultivated Plantation	1,100	1%
Successional Deciduous Forest	4,100	2%
Piedmont Xeric Pine Forests	1,000	0%
Piedmont Dry-Mesic Pine Forests	4,600	2%
Piedmont Xeric Woodlands	4,000	2%
Piedmont Dry-Mesic Oak and Hardwood Forests	16,200	8%
Piedmont Deciduous Mesic Forest	5,700	3%
Xeric Pine-Hardwood Woodlands and Forests	1,800	1%
Dry Mesic Oak Pine Forests	9,500	5%
Piedmont Mixed Bottomland Forests	1,800	1%
Piedmont Oak Bottomland and Swamp Forests	2,000	1%
<b>Total Forested</b>	<b>51,900</b>	<b>26%</b>
Barren (quarries, strip mines, and gravel pits)	100	0%
Barren (bare rock and sand)	100	0%
Piedmont Submerged Aquatic Vegetation	0	0%
Piedmont Emergent Vegetation	0	0%
Riverbank Shrublands	200	0%
Floodplain Wet Shrublands	0	0%
Open Water	1,500	1%
<b>Total Other</b>	<b>1,900</b>	<b>1%</b>
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>202,000</b>	<b>100%</b>

Notes: Results have been rounded to the nearest 100 acres and whole percent. Differences were calculated prior to rounding. Totals may appear not to equal the sum of the parts because of rounding.

The results of the Updated No-Build Scenario compared to the Baseline are shown in Table 14. These results are analyzed in the indirect and cumulative impacts review below. Map 16 illustrates the No-Build Scenario land use conditions and Map 17 shows the changes from the Existing (Baseline) land use conditions to the the No-Build land use scenario conditions.

**Table 14: Updated 2030 No-Build Land Use**

Land Use	Total Area (acres)	% of Total Area	Difference in Percentage from Baseline
Total Residential	97,900	48%	13%
<i>Low Density Residential</i>	79,500	40%	12%
<i>Medium Density Residential</i>	14,900	7%	1%
<i>High Density Residential</i>	3,500	2%	0%
Commercial	5,600	3%	1%
Industrial/Office/Institutional	8,700	4%	1%
Transportation	12,800	6%	0%
<b>Total Developed</b>	<b>125,000</b>	<b>62%</b>	<b>15%</b>
Agricultural Fields	14,600	7%	-3%
Agricultural Pasture/Hay and Natural Herbaceous	22,900	11%	-5%
<b>Total Agricultural</b>	<b>37,500</b>	<b>19%</b>	<b>-8%</b>
Coniferous Cultivated Plantation	600	0%	0%
Successional Deciduous Forest	3,000	1%	-1%
Piedmont Xeric Pine Forests	600	0%	0%
Piedmont Dry-Mesic Pine Forests	3,100	2%	-1%
Piedmont Xeric Woodlands	2,700	1%	-1%
Piedmont Dry-Mesic Oak and Hardwood Forests	11,800	6%	-2%
Piedmont Deciduous Mesic Forest	4,500	2%	-1%
Xeric Pine-Hardwood Woodlands and Forests	1,200	1%	0%
Dry Mesic Oak Pine Forests	7,000	3%	-1%
Piedmont Mixed Bottomland Forests	1,600	1%	0%
Piedmont Oak Bottomland and Swamp Forests	1,500	1%	0%
<b>Total Forested</b>	<b>37,700</b>	<b>19%</b>	<b>-7%</b>
Barren (quarries, strip mines, and gravel pits)	0	0%	0%
Barren (bare rock and sand)	100	0%	0%
Piedmont Submerged Aquatic Vegetation	0	0%	0%
Piedmont Emergent Vegetation	0	0%	0%
Riverbank Shrublands	100	0%	0%
Floodplain Wet Shrublands	0	0%	0%
Open Water	1,500	1%	0%
<b>Total Other</b>	<b>1,800</b>	<b>1%</b>	<b>0%</b>
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>202,000</b>	<b>100%</b>	<b>0%</b>

Notes: Results have been rounded to the nearest 100 acres and whole percent. Differences were calculated prior to rounding. Totals may appear not to equal the sum of the parts because of rounding.

The results of the updated Build Scenario are shown in Table 15. These results are analyzed in the indirect and cumulative impacts review below. Map 18 shows the 2030 Build Scenario land use conditions and Map 19 compares the Build Scenario land use conditions to the No-Build Scenario land use conditions.

**Table 15: Updated 2030 Build Land Use**

Land Use	Total Area (acres)	% of Total Area	Difference in Percentage from 2030 No-Build
Total Residential	99,700	49%	1%
<i>Low Density Residential</i>	80,600	40%	0%
<i>Medium Density Residential</i>	15,600	8%	1%
<i>High Density Residential</i>	3,500	2%	0%
Commercial	5,900	3%	0%
Industrial/Office/Institutional	8,800	4%	0%
Transportation	13,900	7%	1%
<b>Total Developed</b>	<b>128,200</b>	<b>63%</b>	<b>2%</b>
Agricultural Fields	13,800	7%	0%
Agricultural Pasture/Hay and Natural Herbaceous	21,600	11%	-1%
<b>Total Agricultural</b>	<b>35,500</b>	<b>18%</b>	<b>-1%</b>
Coniferous Cultivated Plantation	600	0%	0%
Successional Deciduous Forest	2,900	1%	0%
Piedmont Xeric Pine Forests	600	0%	0%
Piedmont Dry-Mesic Pine Forests	3,000	1%	0%
Piedmont Xeric Woodlands	2,600	1%	0%
Piedmont Dry-Mesic Oak and Hardwood Forests	11,500	6%	0%
Piedmont Deciduous Mesic Forest	4,300	2%	0%
Xeric Pine-Hardwood Woodlands and Forests	1,200	1%	0%
Dry Mesic Oak Pine Forests	6,800	3%	0%
Piedmont Mixed Bottomland Forests	1,600	1%	0%
Piedmont Oak Bottomland and Swamp Forests	1,500	1%	0%
<b>Total Forested</b>	<b>36,500</b>	<b>18%</b>	<b>-1%</b>
Barren (quarries, strip mines, and gravel pits)	0	0%	0%
Barren (bare rock and sand)	100	0%	0%
Piedmont Submerged Aquatic Vegetation	0	0%	0%
Piedmont Emergent Vegetation	0	0%	0%
Riverbank Shrublands	100	0%	0%
Floodplain Wet Shrublands	0	0%	0%
Open Water	1,500	1%	0%
<b>Total Other</b>	<b>1,800</b>	<b>1%</b>	<b>0%</b>
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>202,000</b>	<b>100%</b>	<b>0%</b>

Notes: Results have been rounded to the nearest 100 acres and whole percent. Differences were calculated prior to rounding. Totals may appear not to equal the sum of the parts because of rounding.

## 5.2 How Was Impervious Surface Estimated?

In order to determine the amount of impervious surface in the FLUSA and by watershed under all the land use scenarios, each land use category was assigned an assumed level of impervious surface. This step of the analysis followed guidance in the Soil Conservation Service (SCS) TR-55 Manual. The SCS TR-55 Manual is widely used for drainage studies and runoff calculations. Land use categories with their associated percentage of impervious coverage applied in this quantitative ICE analysis are presented in Table 16.

**Table 16: Percent Impervious Surface for Each Land Use Category**

Land Use Category	% Impervious using SCS TR-55 Manual
Commercial	85%
Industrial/Office/Institutional	70%
High Density Residential	38%
Medium Density Residential	25%
Low Density Residential	20%
Transportation	100%
Agricultural and Natural	0%

Source: SCS, 1986

These percentages were applied to the land use acreages, and results are summarized here. Since the FEIS Quantitative ICE analyses included a Water Quality Analysis based on the results of the prior Quantitative ICE for Land Use, the results of the impervious surface analysis will be compared to the prior results from the FEIS Appendix H to determine if the changes are substantial enough to necessitate rerunning the water quality modeling. Table 17 shows the changes in impervious surface between the original 2007 Baseline and the updated 2010 Baseline results. The updated Existing 2010 Land Use shows that most watersheds have seen little to no change in impervious surface percentage since 2007. Two watersheds, Crooked Creek and Sixmile Creek have seen an increase in their impervious percentages of one percentage point. Bakers Branch Creek had a reduction in its impervious percentages of less than one percentage point due to some slight adjustments in land use classification.

**Table 17: Updated 2010 Baseline Imperviousness Compared to Previous 2007 Baseline Imperviousness**

Watershed Name	Original Impervious Cover	Updated Impervious Cover	Difference in Percentages
Beaverdam Creek	6%	6%	No Change
Richardson Creek (Upper)	14%	14%	No Change
Rays Fork	12%	12%	No Change
Bearskin Creek	24%	24%	No Change
Richardson Creek (Middle)	23%	23%	No Change
Gourdvine Creek	6%	6%	No Change
Salem Creek	9%	9%	No Change
Sixmile Creek	25%	26%	1% ↑
Twelvemile Creek	22%	22%	No Change
Richardson Creek (Lower)	10%	10%	No Change
Stewarts Creek	15%	15%	No Change
Fourmile Creek	32%	32%	No Change
Crooked Creek	21%	22%	1% ↑
Goose Creek	13%	13%	No Change
Irvins Creek	35%	35%	No Change
McAlpine Creek	36%	36%	No Change
Bakers Branch	6%	5%	1% ↓
Wide Mouth Branch	10%	10%	No Change

Notes: Results have been rounded to the nearest one whole percent. Differences were calculated prior to rounding. Totals may appear not to equal the sum of the parts because of rounding.

**Table 18: Updated 2030 No-Build Imperviousness Compared to Previous No-Build Imperviousness**

Watershed Name	Original Impervious Cover	Updated Impervious Cover	Difference in Percentages
Beaverdam Creek	7%	7%	No Change
Richardson Creek (Upper)	18%	18%	<1% ↑
Rays Fork	16%	16%	<1% ↑
Bearskin Creek	31%	31%	<1% ↑
Richardson Creek (Middle)	27%	27%	No Change
Gourdvine Creek	8%	8%	No Change
Salem Creek	13%	13%	<1% ↑
Sixmile Creek	30%	31%	1% ↑
Twelvemile Creek	25%	25%	No Change
Richardson Creek (Lower)	15%	15%	<1% ↑
Stewarts Creek	20%	21%	<1% ↑
Fourmile Creek	34%	35%	1% ↑
Crooked Creek	25%	26%	1% ↑
Goose Creek	17%	18%	1% ↑
Irvin Creek	37%	38%	1% ↑
McAlpine Creek	37%	38%	1% ↑
Bakers Branch	8%	8%	No Change
Wide Mouth Branch	12%	12%	<1% ↑

Notes: Results have been rounded to the nearest one whole percent. Differences were calculated prior to rounding. Totals may appear not to equal the sum of the parts because of rounding.

Table 18 shows the changes in impervious surface between the original No-Build and the updated No-Build results. Five watersheds have no change from the previous results. Seven watersheds have an increase in imperviousness of less than one percentage point. Only six watersheds (Sixmile Creek, Fourmile Creek, Crooked Creek, Goose Creek, Irvin Creek and McAlpine Creek) show an increase of at least one full percent point but none of those sees more than a one percent increase. Therefore, the overall results are similar to the previous results.

**Table 19: Updated 2030 Build Imperviousness Compared to Previous 2030 Build Imperviousness**

Watershed Name	Original Impervious Cover	Updated Impervious Cover	Difference in Percentages
Beaverdam Creek	7%	7%	No Change
Richardson Creek (Upper)	18%	18%	No Change
Rays Fork	17%	17%	<1% ↑
Bearskin Creek	31%	31%	<1% ↑
Richardson Creek (Middle)	29%	30%	1% ↑
Gourdvine Creek	8%	8%	No Change
Salem Creek	14%	16%	2% ↑
Sixmile Creek	30%	31%	1% ↑
Twelvemile Creek	25%	25%	No Change
Richardson Creek (Lower)	16%	17%	1% ↑
Stewarts Creek	22%	23%	1% ↑
Fourmile Creek	34%	35%	1% ↑
Crooked Creek	27%	28%	1% ↑
Goose Creek	17%	18%	1% ↑
Irwins Creek	37%	38%	1% ↑
McAlpine Creek	37%	38%	1% ↑
Bakers Branch	8%	8%	No Change
Wide Mouth Branch	12%	12%	No Change

Notes: Results have been rounded to the nearest whole percent. Differences were calculated prior to rounding. Totals may appear not to equal the sum of the parts because of rounding.

Table 19 shows the changes in impervious surface between the original Build and the Updated Build results. Six watersheds show no discernible change, while two have increases of less than one percent. Nine watersheds see increases of one percent over the previous results. Only one watershed, Salem Creek, sees an increase of more than one percent. The increase in Salem Creek is mostly attributable to increases in Low Density Residential Development attributable to new information from Union County described in Section 1. Overall the results are similar to the previous results. This suggests that additional water quality modeling would find the same results as the prior water quality modeling, given the standard errors associated with both land use projections and water quality modeling. The indirect and cumulative effects of these impervious surface results are discussed further in Section 5.4.

### 5.3 What Were the Indirect Land Use Impacts?

Table 20 shows the indirect land use differences between the Updated No-Build and Updated Build scenarios.

**Table 20: Indirect Land Use Comparison**

Land Use Category	2030 Updated No-Build		2030 Updated Build		
	Total Area (acres)	% of Total Area	Total Area (acres)	% of Total Area	Difference from 2030 No-Build
Total Residential	97,900	48%	99,700	49%	1%↑
<i>Low Density Residential</i>	79,500	40%	80,600	40%	<1%↑
<i>Medium Density Residential</i>	14,900	7%	15,600	8%	1%↑
<i>High Density Residential</i>	3,500	2%	3,500	2%	0%
Commercial	5,600	3%	5,900	3%	0%
Industrial/Office/Institutional	8,700	4%	8,800	4%	0%
Transportation	12,800	6%	13,900	7%	1%↑
<b>Total Developed</b>	<b>125,000</b>	<b>62%</b>	<b>128,200</b>	<b>63%</b>	<b>&lt;2%↑</b>
<b>Total Agricultural</b>	<b>37,500</b>	<b>19%</b>	<b>35,500</b>	<b>18%</b>	<b>1%↓</b>
<b>Total Forested</b>	<b>37,700</b>	<b>19%</b>	<b>36,500</b>	<b>18%</b>	<b>1%↓</b>
<b>Total Other</b>	<b>1,800</b>	<b>1%</b>	<b>1,800</b>	<b>1%</b>	<b>0%</b>
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>202,000</b>	<b>100%</b>	<b>202,000</b>	<b>100%</b>	<b>0%</b>

Notes: Results have been rounded to the nearest 100 acres and whole percent. Differences were calculated prior to rounding. Totals may appear not to equal the sum of the parts because of rounding.

Differences in land use between the 2030 Build and 2030 No-Build scenarios are small relative to the overall level of growth in development expected between the Baseline and No-Build. Total additional developed land associated with the Build is approximately 3,200 acres, less than two percent of all land in the study area. Approximately 1,100 acres of this difference, however, is directly attributable to the footprint of the roadway. Therefore, the indirect land use impacts attributable to growth-induced by the project are approximately 2,100 acres. Agricultural and forested lands decrease by about 2,000 and 1,200 acres, respectively, as a result of the additional developed land. These additional changes represent a one percent decrease, respectively, as compared to the 2030 No-Build condition.

While the aggregate numbers describing the change in developed land indicate that transportation (i.e., the proposed project itself) accounts for about one-third of the difference in land use from the No-Build Alternative, there are also important differences in the developed land use categories. There is an increase of about 1,100 acres in low density residential land use and an increase of about 700 acres in medium density residential. In total, these differences are estimated to produce the net increase of about 4,900 households in the study area with the Build Scenario. In addition, commercial and industrial land use categories increase by 300 and 100 acres, respectively.

As shown in Table 21, increases in impervious surface as a result of the 2030 Build Scenario are relatively small for the overall study area and for most watersheds. Increases in impervious surface percentages between the No-Build and Build are found in six of the 18 watersheds in the study area (Rays Fork, Richardson Creek - Middle, Salem Creek, Richardson Creek - Lower, Stewarts Creek, and Crooked Creek). Five of these watersheds see an increase in impervious surface of only one or two percent. Salem Creek sees an increase of three percent. The Build Scenario has no measurable difference in effect on the amount of impervious surface in the remaining 12 watersheds, including the Goose Creek and Sixmile Creek watersheds, which are known to support the endangered Carolina heelsplitter.

Looking at cumulative changes, the overall study area would see a four percent increase in impervious surface under the No-Build but a five percent under the Build. Each watershed is expected to experience an increase in impervious surface in the No-Build scenario and some will see slightly higher impervious surface levels under the Build scenario, with the highest increase being a seven percent increase in Bearskin Creek. Watersheds with the highest impervious surface levels will likely see modest increases; although Irvins Creek and McAlpine Creek have baseline conditions of 35 percent and 36 percent impervious surface, these levels only increase by three percent and one percent, respectively, with any of the future conditions (No-Build or Build). With the Build scenario, no watershed would see a greater than three percent increase in impervious surface as compared to the No-Build scenario.

For individual watersheds, comparisons between the 2030 No-Build and Build find no difference for 12 of the 18 watersheds, including Goose Creek and Sixmile Creek. For the remaining six watersheds, a one to two percent difference between the 2030 Build and the 2030 No-Build scenarios was found for five watersheds and a three percent increase was found for Salem Creek. It is possible that in the watersheds where there are differences from the No-Build, the incremental Build effect could also have a cumulative effect when considered in combination with the incremental effects of other reasonably foreseeable future projects. These potential effects are discussed further in Section 5.4

## 5.4 What Were the Indirect Impervious Surface and Cumulative Water Quality Impacts?

### Indirect Impervious Surface Impacts

Impervious surface was calculated as described above. The changes in impervious surface from Baseline to No-Build and No-Build to Build in the updated analysis are show in Table 21. In all cases, the total impervious area was calculated from the raw land use results and then rounded to the nearest percent.

**Table 21: Percent Impervious Surface by Watershed and Alternative**

Watershed Name	2010 Baseline Impervious Cover	2030 No-Build Impervious Cover	Change from Baseline to 2030 No-Build <sup>1</sup>	2030 Build Impervious Cover	Change from 2030 No-Build to 2030 Build <sup>1</sup>
<b>Study Area</b>	18%	22%	4%	23%	1%
<b>Beaverdam Creek</b>	6%	7%	2%	7%	No Change
<b>Richardson Creek (Upper)</b>	14%	18%	4%	18%	No Change
<b>Rays Fork</b>	12%	16%	4%	17%	1%
<b>Bearskin Creek</b>	24%	31%	7%	31%	No Change
<b>Richardson Creek (Middle)</b>	23%	27%	5%	30%	2%
<b>Gourdvine Creek</b>	6%	8%	2%	8%	No Change
<b>Salem Creek</b>	9%	13%	4%	16%	3%
<b>Sixmile Creek</b>	26%	31%	5%	31%	No Change
<b>Twelvemile Creek</b>	22%	25%	3%	25%	No Change
<b>Richardson Creek (Lower)</b>	10%	15%	5%	17%	2%
<b>Stewarts Creek</b>	15%	21%	5%	23%	2%
<b>Fourmile Creek</b>	32%	35%	3%	35%	No Change
<b>Crooked Creek</b>	21%	26%	5%	28%	2%
<b>Goose Creek</b>	13%	18%	5%	18%	No Change
<b>Irvins Creek</b>	35%	38%	3%	38%	No Change
<b>McAlpine Creek</b>	36%	38%	1%	38%	No Change
<b>Bakers Branch</b>	5%	8%	3%	8%	No Change
<b>Wide Mouth Branch</b>	10%	12%	2%	12%	No Change

<sup>1</sup> Changes were calculated prior to rounding and therefore do not match exactly the difference shown in the table results.

Overall, the study area impervious surface increases one percent from the No-Build to the Build, whereas the previous scenarios showed a change that was indistinguishable at the overall study area level. By watershed, results are generally similar to the previous results with the following exceptions:

- Richardson Creek (Lower) shows a two percent change, whereas previously it showed a one percent change.
- Salem Creek shows a three percent change, where previously it showed a one percent change.

Most of these changes are relatively modest compared to the larger overall change anticipated between the Baseline and No-Build scenarios. Six of the 18 watersheds have an increase in percent impervious from the No-Build to the Build Scenario. Of these, Rays Fork shows a one percent increase, Richardson Creek – Middle, Richardson Creek – Lower, Stewarts Creek and Crooked Creek all have two percent increases and Salem Creek has a three percent increase.

**Cumulative Water Quality Impacts**

Of the watersheds in the area, nine include streams that are impaired in some capacity according to water quality ratings documented by the NC Department of Environment and Natural Resources (NCDENR), Division of Water Quality (NCDWQ). These watersheds and their impaired waters are documented in Table 22. Some watersheds, such as McAlpine Creek, have high levels of impervious surface and have impaired waters. Others, such as Irvins Creek and Fourmile Creek have high levels of impervious surface but no impaired waters. Beaverdam Creek has low levels of impervious surface but has impaired waters. Potential effects on each watershed with anticipated percent impervious changes under a Build Scenario are discussed below.

**Table 22: 2012 Clean Water Act §303(d) Impaired Streams by Watershed**

Watershed Name	Impaired Stream or Water Body	Impaired Reasons (Year)
<b>Beaverdam Creek</b>	Beaverdam Creek (Source to Lanes Creek)	Category 5 Copper (2008)
		Category 5 Low Dissolved Oxygen (2008)
<b>Richardson Creek (Upper)</b>	Lake Monroe	Category 5 Chlorophyll a (2008)
	Lake Lee	Category 5 Chlorophyll a (2008)
		Category 5 High pH (2008)
<b>Richardson Creek (Middle)</b>	Richardson Creek (Lake Lee to Mill Creek)	Category 5 Fair Bioclassification (1998)
<b>Sixmile Creek</b>	Sixmile Creek (Source to NC/SC Line)	Category 5 Fair Bioclassification (2006)
<b>Richardson Creek (Lower)</b>	Richardson Creek (Mill Creek to Watson Creek)	Category 5 Copper (2008)
<b>Stewarts Creek</b>	Lake Twitty	Category 5 Low Dissolved Oxygen (2012)
		Category 5 Copper (2008)
		Category 5 Chlorophyll a (2008)
	Stewarts Creek (Source to Stumpleck Branch)	Category 5 Fair Bioclassification (2008)
<b>Crooked Creek</b>	Crooked Creek (Source to Rocky River)	Category 5 Turbidity (2010)
		Category 5 Fair Bioclassification (2012)
	North Fork Crooked Creek (Source to Crooked Creek)	Category 5 Turbidity (2004)
		Category 4s Poor Bioclassification
	South Fork Crooked Creek (Source to SR 1515)	Category 5 Poor Bioclassification (1998)
South Fork Crooked Creek (SR 1515 to Crooked Creek)	Category 5 Fair Bioclassification (1998)	
<b>Goose Creek</b>	Duck Creek (Source to Goose Creek)	Category 4b Fair Bioclassification (2008)
	Goose Creek (Source to SR 1524)	Category 4b Turbidity
	Goose Creek (SR 1524 to Rocky River)	Category 4b Fair Bioclassification (1998)
		Category 4t Fecal Coliform Violation
<b>McAlpine Creek</b>	McAlpine Creek (Source to NC 51)	Category 5 Fair Bioclassification (1998)
		Category 5 Fecal Coliform Violation (1998)

Source: 2012 NCDENR 2012 North Carolina 303(d) Integrated Report

The **Rays Fork Creek** watershed includes four waterbodies with water quality ratings documented by NCDWQ. None of these streams is listed as impaired at this time. The impervious surface level for this watershed is expected to increase from 12 percent to 16 percent from the Baseline to the No-Build condition. Under the Build Scenario, the level of impervious surface would increase to 17 percent. Given the small difference in induced impacts (one percent) the induced water quality impacts would likely be very small in this watershed. Cumulative impacts would also likely be minimal. The Rays Fork watershed is not listed in the 2003 or 2008 Yadkin-Pee Dee River Basinwide Water Quality Plans and therefore does not appear to be a watershed facing major water quality issues. Currently, eight of 18 watersheds have impervious surface areas of 17 percent or higher. Of these, four (McAlpine Creek, Sixmile Creek, Crooked Creek and Richardson Creek – Middle) have streams with impaired waters while four (Twelvemile Creek, Bearskin Creek, Fourmile Creek and Irvins Creek) do not have impaired waters.

The **Richardson Creek - Middle** watershed includes one waterbody segment listed as impaired at this time by NCDWQ. Richardson Creek is listed as a Category 5 impaired stream due to a fair bioclassification in 1998. The impervious surface level for this watershed is expected to increase from 23 percent to 27 percent from the Baseline to the No-Build condition. Under the Build Scenario the level of impervious surface would increase to 30 percent, although the calculated difference is only two percent, due to rounding. Given the small difference in induced impacts (two percent) the induced water quality impacts would likely be small in this watershed. Cumulative impacts would also likely be small. Currently, three of 18 watersheds have impervious surface areas of 30 percent or higher. Of these, only one (McAlpine Creek) has streams with impaired waters while the other two (Fourmile Creek and Irvins Creek) do not have impaired waters.

The **Richardson Creek - Lower** watershed includes one waterbody segment listed as impaired at this time by NCDWQ. The impervious surface level for this watershed is expected to increase from 10 percent to 15 percent from the Baseline to the No-Build condition. Under the Build Scenario the level of impervious surface would increase to 17 percent. Given the small difference in induced impacts (two percent) the induced water quality impacts would likely be small in this watershed. Cumulative impacts would also likely be small. Currently, eight of 18 watersheds have impervious surface areas of 16 percent or higher. Of these, four (McAlpine Creek, Sixmile Creek, Crooked Creek and Richardson Creek – Middle) have streams with impaired waters while four (Twelvemile Creek, Bearskin Creek, Fourmile Creek and Irvins Creek) do not have impaired waters.

The **Richardson Creek watershed (in whole)** is discussed in the 2003 and 2008 Yadkin-Pee Dee River Basinwide Water Quality Plans for Aquatic Life and Secondary Recreation Impairment. The 2003 report noted that the stream had low levels of dissolved oxygen and high levels of nutrients (nitrate/nitrite nitrogen and total phosphorous). The City of Monroe Waste Water Treatment Plant (WWTP) is located along Richardson Creek and is listed as a cause of stream impacts. The 2003 report notes that the benthic community was improving, suggesting water quality improvements. The 2008 report noted turbidity and nutrient issues mostly associated with agricultural and pasture activity in the watershed. The report also noted the numerous confined animal feeding operations (CAFOs) within the watershed. Given these reports, many of the underlying reasons for the water quality issues in Richardson Creek are not directly related to new development and therefore the projected incremental and cumulative land use changes are unlikely to exacerbate the water quality issues in these watersheds.

The **Salem Creek** watershed includes five waterbodies assessed by the NCDWQ, none of which is listed as impaired in the 2012 assessment database. The impervious surface level for this watershed is expected

to increase from nine percent to 13 percent from the Baseline to the No-Build condition. Under the Build Scenario, the level of impervious surface would increase to 16 percent. While the three percent incremental difference from the No-Build to Build scenarios is the largest of all watersheds modeled, the induced and cumulative water quality impacts would likely be very small in this watershed. Currently, eight of 18 watersheds have impervious surface areas of 16 percent or higher. Of these, four (McAlpine Creek, Sixmile Creek, Crooked Creek and Richardson Creek – Middle) have streams with impaired waters while four (Twelvemile Creek, Bearskin Creek, Fourmile Creek and Irvins Creek) do not have impaired waters. The 2008 Yadkin-Pee Dee River Basinwide Water Quality Plan notes that this stream had a Good-Fair Bioclassification in 2006 and that the stream is subject to low flow conditions. No other major issues were found.

The **Stewarts Creek watershed** includes nine waterbodies assessed by the NCDWQ. Two of these segments are listed as impaired. Stewarts Creek upstream of Lake Twitty and Lake Twitty are listed as Category 5 Impaired for various reasons noted in Table 22. The impervious surface level for this watershed is expected to increase from 15 percent to 21 percent from the Baseline to the No-Build. Under the Build Scenario the level of impervious surface would increase to 23 percent. Given the small difference in induced impacts (two percent) the induced water quality impacts would likely be small in this watershed. Currently, six of 18 watersheds have impervious surface areas of 21 percent or higher. Of these, three (McAlpine Creek, Sixmile Creek, and Richardson Creek – Middle) have streams with impaired waters while three (Bearskin Creek, Fourmile Creek, and Irvins Creek) do not have impaired waters. Stewarts Creek was noted in the 2008 Yadkin-Pee Dee River Basinwide Water Quality Plan for habitat degradation due to agricultural runoff and impervious surface runoff. The report noted that a 2006 study rated the stream fair due to degraded benthic communities. As this creek is the main water source for the City of Monroe, the City is taking steps to improve water quality by rebuilding vegetated buffers around Lake Twitty.

The **Crooked Creek watershed** includes four waterbody segments assessed by the NCDWQ and all four are listed as impaired at this time for either turbidity or bioclassification issues. The impervious surface level for this watershed is expected to increase from 21 percent to 26 percent from the Baseline to the No-Build condition. Under the Build Scenario, the level of impervious surface would increase to 28 percent. Given the small difference in induced impacts (two percent) the induced water quality impacts would likely be small in this watershed. Currently, four of 18 watersheds have impervious surface areas of 28 percent or higher. Of these, two (McAlpine Creek and Sixmile Creek) have streams with impaired waters while two (Fourmile Creek and Irvins Creek) do not have impaired waters. Crooked Creek watershed is identified in the 2008 Yadkin-Pee Dee River Basinwide Water Quality Plan as a watershed with habitat degradation, turbidity, fecal coliform and nutrient issues due to stormwater runoff and construction. The analysis of benthic communities, however, showed good to good-fair conditions for Crooked Creek in 2006, which was an improvement from previous studies.

In all cases where the Build Scenario shows greater impervious surface impacts than the No-Build Scenario (Rays Fork, Richardson Creek – Middle, Salem Creek, Richardson Creek – Lower, Stewarts Creek, Crooked Creek) those increases are less than the increases predicted between the Baseline and the No-Build. Furthermore, based on a query of the Natural Heritage Program Map View conducted on April 15, 2013, there are no federally protected listed species in these streams or watersheds and thus these small increases in impervious surface would not be affecting federally protected listed species. Overall, as these results are very similar to the results of the original Quantitative ICE, additional water quality

modeling is not necessary as these differences are not large enough to see substantial differences compared to the prior water quality results and the results would likely be within the standard error of such an analysis.

## 5.5 What Were the Indirect and Cumulative Impacts to Endangered Species?

The cumulative definition under the ESA differs from that under NEPA in that the effects of future federal actions are not included in an ESA cumulative analysis but are included in a NEPA analysis. The cumulative analysis outlined below was performed using the NEPA definition. The Biological Assessment (BA)(Catena, 2013) of cumulative impacts similarly used the NEPA definition of cumulative effects. Therefore, the cumulative effects to endangered species may be somewhat overestimated since this Quantitative ICE analysis included the effects of future federal actions as well as non-federal actions.

### Carolina Heelsplitter

The Carolina heelsplitter is found only in the Goose Creek and Sixmile Creek watersheds. As shown in previous sections of indirect effects, no measureable differences in land use and impervious surfaces were found between the 2030 No-Build and 2030 Build within the Goose Creek or Sixmile Creek watersheds. Therefore, no indirect effects are anticipated on the species associated with the Monroe Connector/Bypass project. As the BA concludes, direct effects are extremely unlikely, though cannot be unquestionably discounted. There are no anticipated indirect effects. Therefore, cumulative effects to the Carolina heelsplitter are extremely unlikely, though cannot be unquestionably discounted.

### Other Endangered Species

Michaux's sumac, Schweinitz's sunflower, and the smooth coneflower are federally listed as endangered plant species. The sumac and sunflower are listed for both Mecklenburg and Union counties, but the coneflower is listed only for Mecklenburg County.<sup>50</sup> There are known populations of Schweinitz's Sunflower in the FLUSA, and populations of the species have been found in the vicinity of the proposed alignment for the Monroe Connector/Bypass. An evaluation of potential indirect and cumulative effects to the species is summarized below.

Michaux's sumac grows in sandy or rocky open woods on sandy or sandy loam soils with low cation-exchange capacities and appears to depend upon some form of disturbance to maintain the open quality of its habitat.<sup>51,52</sup> Most extant populations can be found on open disturbed areas, such as railroad, road, and utility rights-of-way that are periodically maintained and/or managed for the species. The only known occurrence of Michaux's sumac in the FLUSA was last observed in 1794 and no populations were found in surveys of suitable habitat in the FLUSA. The survey methodology is discussed in the Biological Assessment.<sup>53</sup> As no populations of the species have been found in the FLUSA, it is not anticipated that

---

<sup>50</sup> NC Natural Heritage Program. "Data Services." Updated January 9, 2009.

<sup>51</sup> USFWS. *Michaux's Sumac Recovery Plan*. 1993. Atlanta, GA: p 30.

<sup>52</sup> Suiter, D. Endangered Species Biologist, USFWS. Raleigh, NC. Personal Communication regarding Draft 5-year status review of Michaux's sumac. Telephone: Feb. 2 and 18, 2010.

<sup>53</sup> The Catena Group for NCTA, *Biological Assessment of Carolina Heelsplitter (Lasmigona decorata) and Designated Critical Habitat, Schweinitz's Sunflower (Helianthus schweinitzii), Michaux's Sumac (Rhus michauxii), and Smooth Coneflower (Echinacea laevigata)*, Monroe Connector/Bypass, October, 2013.

the Monroe Connector/Bypass project will have any indirect or cumulative effects on the species. The BA provides more detail on direct and potential indirect and cumulative impacts.

There are no know populations of smooth coneflower in the FLUSA, and surveys of the FLUSA in areas of high quality habitat for the species found no populations. Based on the ICE analysis, indirect effects are not anticipated in the Mecklenburg County portion of the FLUSA. As the BA concludes, there will be no direct effects to the species and the ICE analysis shows no indirect effects, there is no expectation that the project will cause cumulative effects to the coneflower. Since there will be no direct or indirect effects within Mecklenburg County and the lack of EO records within or near the FLUSA, the project is anticipated to have No Effect on this species. The BA provides more detail on direct and potential indirect and cumulative impacts.

Historically, it is believed that Schweinitz’s sunflower occupied open prairie and Post Oak-Blackjack Oak Savannas that were maintained by relatively frequent fire.<sup>54</sup> Physical investigation of all suitable habitat within forest gaps was beyond the scope of this ICE analysis. In addition, the sunflower is an opportunistic species that can colonize even disturbed areas. Therefore, indirect effects to Schweinitz’s sunflower are addressed through examining the conversion of land exhibiting habitat characteristics that would support the species. The NCGAP land cover categories included in the analysis were:

- Agricultural Pasture/Hay and Natural Herbaceous
- Barren (subcategory quarries, strip mines, and gravel pits)
- and Barren (subcategory bare rock and sand).

Although this species could eventually inhabit some of the lands converted to developed land use<sup>55</sup>, such land use categories were not included in the analysis to present a more conservative estimate of the amount of suitable habitat loss. Table 23 presents the results of this analysis.

**Table 23: Total Conversion of Pasture/ Hay Natural Herbaceous and Barren Land Cover to Developed Land**

	Baseline (acres)	2030 No-Build (acres)	2030 Build (acres)	Change in 2030 with No-Build (acres)	Change in 2030 with Build (acres)
<b>Acres</b>	33,000	23,000	21,700	-10,000	-11,300
<b>% of Baseline</b>	-	-	-	-30%	-34%

Notes: Results have been rounded to the nearest 100 and whole percent. Differences were calculated prior to rounding. Totals may appear not equal the sum of the parts because of rounding.

With the 2030 No-Build, there is an estimated 30 percent decrease in land cover types presumed to provide potential suitable habitat for the Schweinitz's sunflower. The incremental effect with either the 2030 Build scenarios is approximately a four percent decrease in potential suitable habitat (34 percent versus 30 percent).

Continued development pressure is expected within the project FLUSA within the horizon year of this analysis. However, it is not anticipated that future development will cause substantial cumulative effects.

<sup>54</sup> USFWS. *Schweinitz’s Sunflower Recovery Plan*. 1994. Atlanta, GA: p 28.

<sup>55</sup> For example, utility rights of way, which are periodically maintained could provide habitat for the Schweinitz’s sunflower, whereas frequently maintained lawns and landscape areas would not provide suitable habitat.

It is anticipated that areas of forest fringe and maintained or disturbed environments will continue to supply potential habitat for Schweinitz's sunflower species within the FLUSA in the future. Therefore, the project is not anticipated to have substantial indirect or cumulative effects on the species. The BA provides more detail on direct and potential indirect and cumulative impacts.

Georgia aster (*Symphotrichum georgianum*) is listed as a candidate species by USFWS for inclusion under the ESA for protection as an endangered species. As it is not officially listed, its habitat was not directly analyzed. As its habit typical overlaps substantially with that of the Schweinitz's sunflower, the analysis of potential indirect and cumulative habitat losses discussed above would be generally valid for the Georgia aster as well.

## 5.6 Land Use and Farmland Conversion

Table 24 (No-Build) and Table 25 (Build) present the estimated total effects to land use broken out by watershed with each of the alternatives in conjunction with reasonably foreseeable future actions compared to the Baseline condition. Table 26 summarizes the incremental effects, i.e., the differences as compared to the changes anticipated with the No-Build scenario for the Build.

Indirect and direct land use effects combined were presented previously, and these tables also break out the land use categories in detail. For analysis of cumulative effects, the following tables present aggregations of categories for the agricultural and forested land uses:

- Agricultural land includes: *Agricultural Fields* and *Agricultural Pasture/Hay and Natural Herbaceous*
- Forested includes: *Coniferous Cultivated Plantation, Successional Deciduous Forest, Piedmont Xeric Pine Forests, Piedmont Dry-Mesic Pine Forests, Piedmont Xeric Woodlands, Piedmont Dry-Mesic Oak and Hardwood Forests, Piedmont Deciduous Mesic Forest, Xeric Pine-Hardwood Woodlands and Forests, Dry Mesic Oak Pine Forests, Piedmont Mixed Bottomland Forests, and Piedmont Oak Bottomland and Swamp Forests*
- Other includes: *Barren (quarries, strip mines, and gravel pits), Barren (bare rock and sand), Piedmont Submerged Aquatic Vegetation, Piedmont Emergent Vegetation, Riverbank Shrublands, Floodplain Wet Shrublands, and Open Water.*

**Table 24: Total Changes in Land Use (in acres) by Watershed with the Updated 2030 No-Build Scenario Compared to the Baseline**

Area/Watershed	Low Density Residential	Medium Density Residential	High Density Residential	Commercial	Industrial/Office/Institutional	Transportation	Total Agricultural	Total Forested	Total Other
<b>Study Area</b>	24,000	2,000	400	1,700	1,600	100	-15,400	-14,200	-100
<b>Beaverdam Creek</b>	900	0	0	0	0	0	-600	-300	0
<b>Richardson Creek (Upper)</b>	1,200	0	0	0	0	0	-600	-600	0
<b>Rays Fork</b>	1,700	0	0	0	0	0	-1,000	-800	0
<b>Bearskin Creek</b>	1,600	0	0	0	500	0	-1,100	-1,100	0
<b>Richardson Creek</b>	1,000	0	0	0	100	0	-500	-700	0
<b>Gourdvine Creek</b>	100	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
<b>Salem Creek</b>	2,100	100	0	100	0	0	-1,600	-600	0
<b>Sixmile Creek</b>	0	100	100	0	0	0	-100	-200	0
<b>Twelvemile Creek</b>	900	100	0	0	300	0	-500	-800	0
<b>Richardson Creek (Lower)</b>	3,400	0	0	0	0	0	-2,300	-1,100	0
<b>Stewarts Creek</b>	4,300	0	0	300	200	0	-2,900	-1,800	-100
<b>Fourmile Creek</b>	0	200	0	100	0	0	-100	-400	0
<b>Crooked Creek</b>	2,900	200	100	400	200	0	-2,100	-1,700	0
<b>Goose Creek</b>	2,700	600	0	600	0	0	-1,400	-2,600	0
<b>Irvin's Creek</b>	100	300	0	100	200	0	-100	-600	0
<b>McAlpine Creek</b>	100	300	100	100	0	0	0	-500	0
<b>Bakers Branch</b>	300	0	0	0	0	0	-100	-200	0
<b>Wide Mouth Branch</b>	500	0	0	0	0	0	-400	-200	0

Notes: Results have been rounded to the nearest 100 acres. Differences were calculated prior to rounding. Totals may appear not to equal the sum of the parts because of rounding.

**Table 25: Total Changes in Land Use (in acres) by Watershed with the Updated 2030 Build Scenario Compared to the Baseline**

Area/Watershed	Low Density Residential	Medium Density Residential	High Density Residential	Commercial	Industrial/Office/Institutional	Transportation	Total Agricultural	Total Forested	Total Other
<b>Study Area</b>	25,000	2,700	400	2,000	1,700	1,100	-17,500	-15,400	-200
<b>Beaverdam Creek</b>	900	0	0	0	0	0	-600	-300	0
<b>Richardson Creek (Upper)</b>	1,200	0	0	0	0	0	-600	-600	0
<b>Rays Fork</b>	1,700	0	0	0	0	100	-1,000	-800	0
<b>Bearskin Creek</b>	1,600	0	0	0	500	0	-1,100	-1,100	0
<b>Richardson Creek (Middle)</b>	1,200	0	0	0	100	100	-600	-800	0
<b>Gourdvine Creek</b>	100	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
<b>Salem Creek</b>	3,200	200	0	100	0	100	-2,600	-1,000	0
<b>Sixmile Creek</b>	0	100	100	0	0	0	-100	-200	0
<b>Twelvemile Creek</b>	900	100	0	0	300	0	-500	-800	0
<b>Richardson Creek (Lower)</b>	3,900	200	0	0	100	100	-2,900	-1,400	0
<b>Stewarts Creek</b>	3,900	100	0	400	200	300	-3,100	-1,900	-100
<b>Fourmile Creek</b>	0	200	0	100	0	0	-100	-400	0
<b>Crooked Creek</b>	2,600	300	100	500	200	400	-2,200	-1,800	0
<b>Goose Creek</b>	2,700	600	0	600	0	0	-1,400	-2,600	0
<b>Irvin's Creek</b>	100	300	0	100	200	0	-100	-600	0
<b>McAlpine Creek</b>	100	300	100	100	0	0	0	-500	0
<b>Bakers Branch</b>	300	0	0	0	0	0	-100	-200	0
<b>Wide Mouth Branch</b>	500	0	0	0	0	0	-400	-200	0

Notes: Results have been rounded to the nearest 100 acres. Differences were calculated prior to rounding. Totals may appear not to equal the sum of the parts because of rounding.

**Table 26: Incremental Effects of Updated 2030 Build Land Use Changes (in acres) by Watershed**

Area/Watershed	Difference From Updated No-Build – Total Developed	Difference From Updated No-Build – Total Agricultural	Difference From Updated No-Build – Total Forested
<b>Study Area</b>	3,200	-2,100	-1,200
<b>Beaverdam Creek</b>	0	0	0
<b>Richardson Creek (Upper)</b>	0	0	0
<b>Rays Fork</b>	100	0	0
<b>Bearskin Creek</b>	0	0	0
<b>Richardson Creek (Middle)</b>	300	-100	-200
<b>Gourdvine Creek</b>	0	0	0
<b>Salem Creek</b>	1,400	-1,000	-400
<b>Sixmile Creek</b>	0	0	0
<b>Twelvemile Creek</b>	0	0	0
<b>Richardson Creek (Lower)</b>	1,000	-600	-300
<b>Stewarts Creek</b>	300	-200	-100
<b>Fourmile Creek</b>	0	0	0
<b>Crooked Creek</b>	300	-100	-100
<b>Goose Creek</b>	0	0	0
<b>Irvins Creek</b>	0	0	0
<b>McAlpine Creek</b>	0	0	0
<b>Bakers Branch</b>	0	0	0
<b>Wide Mouth Branch</b>	0	0	0

Notes: Results have been rounded to the nearest 100 acres. Differences were calculated prior to rounding. Totals may appear not to equal the sum of the parts because of rounding.

**Updated 2030 No-Build**

The 2030 No-Build scenario is predicted to increase developed land by 29,900 acres throughout the study area as compared to the Baseline (existing) condition. This represents 15 percent of the total study area. Most of the estimated development (84 percent) is due to the increase in Low Density Residential growth. For this conversion to development, the following reductions in undeveloped lands are predicted: 15,400 acres of agricultural land, 14,200 acres of forested land and 100 acres of other land uses.

From 1984 to 2003, a loss of over 48,000 acres in tree cover was recorded in Union County, although a large portion of those acres may have been cleared for agriculture, logging, or non-urban development (NCTA, 2009). The further reduction in forested acreage predicted with the 2030 No-Build in this Technical Report (14,200 acres) represents an additional loss; however, the reduction is at a substantially

lower rate. Some of that is attributable to the fact that the land use projection methodology used in this ICE analysis is converting more agricultural land than forested land to developed categories even though both categories are roughly equal in acreage in the Baseline 2010 Land Use. Part of the reason for the higher likelihood of agricultural conversion rather than forested conversion is in the land use projection methodology stream buffers were excluded from development and stream buffer areas are more likely to contain forested land than agricultural land.

Farmland comprises 52 percent of the total converted undeveloped lands. The predicted acreage of farmland conversion (15,400 acres) represents 29 percent of the total amount of farmland in the study area's Baseline condition (52,900 acres).

### **Updated 2030 Build**

The 2030 Build scenario is predicted to increase developed land by 3,200 more acres throughout the study area as compared to the No-Build condition. This incremental effect is equivalent to less than two percent of the study area. Most of the estimated development increase with the Build scenario (79 percent) is due to the increase in Low Density Residential growth, but this number is smaller than with the 2030 No-Build scenario because a larger percentage of the development is predicted to be from Medium Density Residential, Commercial, and Industrial/Office/Institutional growth in the Build scenarios.

Farmland represents nearly the same amount of the converted undeveloped land as with the No-Build condition (53 percent versus 52 percent). As compared to the 2030 No-Build, the 2030 Build Scenario is predicted to have 2,100 additional acres of converted farmland which equals about an additional four percent loss in farmland over the No-Build condition.

## **5.7 What Were the Cumulative Impacts to Wildlife Habitat?**

### **Total Habitable Land Changes**

This section presents cumulative effects specific to wildlife habitat. Specifically, Table 27 presents the changes predicted for each alternative in the total amount of undeveloped vegetated land cover. The effect to potential aquatic habitat is inferred from the effect to water quality, detailed above. With regard to percent impervious cover as an indicator for effects to water quality and thus aquatic habitat, findings show only a one percent difference in percent impervious cover between the 2030 Build and 2030 No-Build scenarios for the study area as a whole. Findings also show a one percent to two percent incremental effect with the Build Scenario within any individual watershed, except for Salem Creek, which will have a three percent incremental effect with the Build.

For presentation of cumulative effects in Table 27, aggregates of the NCGAP land cover categories were used. The list of categories used to compile an "Undeveloped Vegetated Land" layer included all the categories below "Total Development," except the "Agricultural Fields" (i.e., croplands), "Barren (quarries, strip mines, and gravel pits)" and "Open Water" categories, which were presumed not to provide substantial amounts of suitable wildlife habitat.

**Table 27: Total Changes in Undeveloped Vegetated Land and Land Cover Likely to Encompass Wetlands Compared to the Baseline**

Watershed Name	Total Vegetated (acres)	
	Updated 2030 No-Build	Updated 2030 Build
<b>Study Area</b>	-24,200	-26,600
<b>Beaverdam Creek</b>	-700	-700
<b>Richardson Creek (Upper)</b>	-900	-900
<b>Rays Fork</b>	-1,400	-1,500
<b>Bearskin Creek</b>	-1,600	-1,600
<b>Richardson Creek (Middle)</b>	-1,000	-1,300
<b>Gourdvine Creek</b>	-100	-100
<b>Salem Creek</b>	-1,600	-2,500
<b>Sixmile Creek</b>	-300	-300
<b>Twelvemile Creek</b>	-1,200	-1,200
<b>Richardson Creek (Lower)</b>	-2,700	-3,500
<b>Stewarts Creek</b>	-4,000	-4,200
<b>Fourmile Creek</b>	-500	-500
<b>Crooked Creek</b>	-3,100	-3,300
<b>Goose Creek</b>	-3,300	-3,300
<b>Irvins Creek</b>	-700	-700
<b>McAlpine Creek</b>	-500	-500
<b>Bakers Branch</b>	-200	-200
<b>Wide Mouth Branch</b>	-400	-400

Notes: Results have been rounded to the nearest 100 acres. Differences were calculated prior to rounding. Totals may appear not to equal the sum of the parts because of rounding.

*Updated 2030 No-Build*

The 2030 No-Build scenario was predicted to decrease vegetated land cover by 24,200 acres from the Baseline condition. This represents 28 percent of the total Baseline condition vegetated land cover (85,500 acres). As shown above regarding land use changes, forest lands are predicted to be reduced by 14,200 acres with the 2030 No-Build scenario. It is likely that some of the development likely to occur by 2030 with the No-Build will fragment forest patches. Cumulative effects from this fragmentation may include effects to wildlife populations.

*Updated 2030 Build*

The incremental effect with the 2030 Build is 2,400 acres of additional converted vegetated land as compared to the loss predicted with the 2030 No-Build condition. This represents an additional 3 percent loss in vegetated land. These reductions are mostly concentrated in Salem Creek and Richardson Creek –

Lower, with some losses also scattered among Rays Fork, Richardson Creek – Middle, Stewarts Creek and Crooked Creek. These incremental losses represent 9 to 12 percent of the Baseline vegetated land uses for Salem Creek, Richardson Creek – Lower and Richardson Creek – Middle watersheds. The concentrated losses are a result of the Low Density Residential expected around the eastern end of the corridor. A review of the NCDENR Natural Heritage Program Map Viewer database on April 15, 2013 indicates there is only one occurrence of rare plants or animals in these three watersheds. Jesse Helms Memorial Park is designated a Significant Natural Heritage Area as it supports a population of Piedmont aster (*Eurybia mirabilis*), a Federal Species of Concern. Given that this is a public park, it is highly unlikely that this area would see development that would degrade the population. All other watersheds see incremental losses of less than 2 percent additional relative to their Baseline levels. Thus, while there may be some impacts to wildlife populations locally, these impacts are unlikely to be considerable on a regional scale nor are they likely to substantially affect habitats of protected species.

### Forest Fragmentation Impacts

One of the potential effects of development is to break up previously connected habitats (fragmentation). This can impact some species that require large patches of habitat (deer, and larger predators); and the increase in edge between different types of habitat, such as forested and residential areas, can cause an increase in encounters (such as vehicle crashes) that hurt wildlife populations. To understand the effects on the wildlife habitats in the study area, a Patch Analysis was completed using ArcGIS Spatial Analyst and the FRAGSTATS program. Spatial Analyst tools were used to classify land cover categories into two classes, those land cover categories that could generally support a range of natural wildlife habitats and those that could not (i.e. developed lands). After the land covers were reclassified, the data was entered into the FRAGSTATS program for analysis.

A habitat is a continuous parcel of land that provides some wildlife habitat and is not separated by roads, structures, or other type of urban development. Patches were grouped as either a developed area or other area that would not likely be suitable as wildlife habitat (Class 1) or areas that would likely be suitable as wildlife habitat (Class 2). Land cover categories that would not likely be suitable as wildlife habitat include Transportation, Commercial, all Residential categories, Open Water, both Barren Land categories, and both Agricultural categories. Land cover categories in Class 2 that would like be suitable as wildlife habitat include Successional Deciduous Forest, Piedmont Xeric Pine Forests, Piedmont Dry-Mesic Pine Forests, Piedmont Xeric Woodlands, Piedmont Dry-Mesic Oak and Hardwood Forests, Piedmont Deciduous Mesic Forest, Xeric Pine-Hardwood Woodlands and Forests, Dry Mesic Oak Pine Forests, Piedmont Mixed Bottomland Forests, Piedmont Oak Bottomland and Swamp Forests, Piedmont Submerged Aquatic Vegetation, Piedmont Emergent Vegetation, Riverbank Shrublands, and Floodplain Wet Shrublands. A patch analysis focuses on how connected or disconnected wildlife habitats may be. The metrics used focus on the size, shape, and connections between patches of suitable habitat. Therefore, the number of patches, their density and their mean (or average) size are important factors. Table 28 summarizes the results of the analysis for the Class 2 land cover categories and the metrics are explained and the results discussed below.

An important caveat for interpreting the patch analysis results is the fact that the level of fragmentation in both future land use scenarios is likely overstated due to the methodologies used in their construction. Specifically, by allocating growth within TAZs to a proportion of all developable parcels rather than selecting entire parcels to be built-out and others to remain vacant, the projected land use pattern for this ICE analysis is more fragmented than that which would actually be expected to occur. The advantage of

this approach is that it is transparent and neutral in “spreading” effects across undeveloped land within TAZs. However, by spreading growth to all developable parcels rather than specific communities, the methodology maximizes fragmentation effects. These assumptions do not affect the comparison between the No-Build and Build scenarios but rather the distribution of development in all the future land use scenarios. The assumptions thus specifically affect the comparisons of fragmentation between the existing and future land use scenarios.

**Table 28: Habitat Fragmentation Analysis Results**

Parameter	Existing	No-Build	Build	Difference Between Existing and No Build	Difference Between Existing and Build	Difference Between Build and No Build
# of Patches	6,642	7,856	7,785	18%	17%	-1%
Patch Density (# per 100 acres)	3.29	3.89	3.86	18%	17%	-1%
Mean Patch Area (acres)	7.86	4.82	4.72	-39%	-40%	-2%
Perimeter to Area Mean	937.19	995.25	998.12	6%	7%	<1%
Mean Nearest-Neighbor (meters)	88.59	89.77	90.79	1%	2%	1%
Clumpiness	0.71	0.66	0.66	-8%	-7%	<1%
Effective Mesh Size (acres)	109.66	39.76	37.02	-64%	-66%	-7%

The number of patches, the patch density and the mean patch area indicate how fragmented habitat may be by indicating the raw number of habitat patches, the density of those patches and the mean (average) area of each patch across the study area. The number of patches and patch density increase between the Existing and No-Build scenarios by 18 percent and between the Existing and Build scenarios by 17 percent. By these measures, the indirect effects are very small but the cumulative effects are sizeable. Similarly, the mean patch size is much smaller in both future scenarios (approximately 40 percent) while the indirect impacts are small, the cumulative effect is more substantial. The number of patches and patch density is increasing due to the encroachment of development into previously continuous patches that then reduces patch sizes and splits once continuous patches into multiple separate patches. The size of patches is decreasing for the same reasons. The mean patch area metric is a very rough approximation of habitat fragmentation, however, and can be easily skewed by adding a number of very small patches to the landscape, as might occur when new development isolates a number of small patches from a few larger patch areas.

Despite the sizable changes in density and mean area, the mean nearest-neighbor parameter shows little change, increased by only 1 to 2 percent between any scenario. The mean nearest neighbor parameter is the mean of the shortest straight-line distance between each patch and its nearest neighbor. This gives an indication of the typical distance between each patch across the study area and thus the distance wildlife

might have to traverse to get from one habitat patch to another. Thus while patches may be decreasing in size, they are not necessarily getting much farther apart.

The perimeter to area mean ratio shows much less change than the density and size metrics. The perimeter to area ratio gives an indication of how complex the shapes of habitat patches are by dividing the perimeter by the area of each patch. The higher the ratio, the more complex the shape and the more edge areas would exist relative to interior area space within each patch. The perimeter to area ratio shows a 6 to 7 percent increase from the Existing to the No-Build and Build, respectively, suggesting that the shape of patches is not changing dramatically.

The clumpiness parameter measures the distribution of patches. The parameter ranges from negative one to one, where zero indicates a random distribution of patches. Less than zero indicates a greater level of dispersion and one indicates a greater level of clumping. The clumpiness parameter for the Existing Scenario is 0.71, indicating that the distribution is rather clumpy. This is to be expected as the largest continuous patches and most of the patches are in the eastern portions of the study area. Under both future scenarios the clumpiness parameter decreases to 0.66 which is a modest decrease and indicates no indirect effect and modest cumulative effect to the clumpiness of habitats through the study area.

Finally, the effective mesh size gives an indication of overall patch structure. Effective mesh size gives an indication of the likelihood that any two randomly chosen points in the study area may or may not be connected with a continuous habitat patch. That likelihood is expressed as an effective mesh size in acres. This metric shows the greatest change, both cumulatively and indirectly, as the effective mesh size decreases by about 65 percent for both future scenarios. Between the No-Build and Build Scenario, the effective mesh size decreases by seven percent. Effective mesh size is most appropriate for species, such as deer or other larger mammals, that need larger ranges of undisturbed habitat or that face dangers from crossing between fragmented habitats.

Overall, these fragmentation metrics suggest that most habitat fragmentation will occur with or without the proposed project. Furthermore, while some metrics, such as effective mesh size and mean patch area, suggest some substantial increases in fragmentation, other, such as the clumpiness and mean nearest neighbor suggest fragmentation will be more modest. The variability in results suggests that some metrics may be skewed by very small patches drawing the results in one direction. For example, the mean patch size measure would be easily skewed by the addition of many new and very small patches even many larger patches remained intact. Overall, the indirect impacts are generally small to negligible while the cumulative results vary from small to substantial. However, the cumulative impacts would appear to be likely to occur with or without the proposed project.

## **5.8 What Were the Indirect and Cumulative Impacts to Traffic?**

To address concerns that additional traffic generated by the estimated induced growth from the project could cause additional impacts, the Metrolina Regional Model (MRM) was used to forecast raw model volumes under three scenarios. These three scenarios were then compared to determine what, if any, traffic impacts might result from the indirect and cumulative impacts of the project. A No-Build and two Build scenarios were run through the MRM and the cumulative corridor level raw model outputs are shown in Table 29. These volumes are raw model volumes that have not been fully calibrated or adjusted per standard traffic engineering principles. These volumes therefore do not represent a fully calibrated forecast of No-Build and Build traffic conditions, but because they were developed the same way from the same MRM version, the difference between them can help reveal the induced traffic impacts of the

project. For the No-Build Scenario, the MRM 11 v1.1 was edited to remove the Monroe Bypass/Connector from the model network and the model was run using the 2009 Projections for the socioeconomic input. As documented in Section 4, the 2009 Projections were used to develop the No-Build scenario and therefore were used in this analysis to represent the No-Build Scenario.

For the Build Scenario, two scenarios were run to compare the differences with and without the estimated growth impacts of the proposed project. In the first scenario, the MRM 11 v1.1 was used with the Monroe Bypass/Connector in the model network and the model was run using the 2009 Projections for the socioeconomic input. For the second Build Scenario the MRM 11 v1.1 was used with the Monroe Bypass/Connector in the model network and the model was run using an adjusted version of the 2009 Projections for the socioeconomic input. The land use differences identified in the Build Scenario ICE analysis were reviewed at the TAZ level and, based on the localized density assumptions, estimates of the additional household and employment attributable to the additional development anticipated under a Build Scenario were developed at the TAZ level. These estimates of additional households and employment were then added to the 2009 Projections to create a 2009 ICE Projections version. These adjustments added, on net, approximately 4,900 households and 3,800 employees to TAZs within the FLUSA. The raw model volumes from the MRM are shown in Appendix M. Table 29 shows a comparison of the regional vehicle miles traveled (VMT) and vehicle hours traveled (VHT) under the same three scenarios.

The segment level volumes in Appendix M show that when comparing the two Build scenarios run in the model, the project's induced growth does add to the volume level on the Monroe Connector/Bypass, US 74 and intersecting roadways. The highest percent change is along the Y-Line corridors, where there would be some road segments would see sizeable percentage increase relative to a Build Scenario without the project-induced growth. Yet, the volume increase for any given road segment is less than 3,500 AADT. On average, each roadway segment only sees an additional 1,400 vehicles per day. Along the US 74 and Monroe Connector/Bypass corridors, the percent increase is much lower, less than five percent in most cases. The eastern end of US 74 sees the greatest percentage increases, but again, most of these segments see relatively modest AADT increases of less than 5,000 vehicles per day. Also of note, is the comparison between the Build (2009 Projections) and the Build (Adjusted Projections) volume along the US 74 corridor. Under both scenarios, volume on the US 74 corridor drops by between 8 and 36 percent, depending on the segment, meaning that under the Build Scenario, with or without project-induced growth, US 74 would see substantially less traffic than under a No-Build Scenario.

With respect to total vehicle miles traveled within Union County, the Build Scenario with project-induced growth shows total VMT three percent higher than the Build Scenario without project-induced growth and eight percent higher than the No-Build Scenario. At the regional level, however, the difference is only one percent relative to the No-Build. For vehicle hours traveled, within Union County, the Build Scenario with project-induced growth is three percent higher than the No-Build and four percent higher than the Build without project-induced growth.

**Table 29: County and Regional Vehicle Miles Traveled (VMT) and Vehicle Hours Traveled (VHT)**

County		Union	Mecklenburg	All Others	Regional Total
No-Build	VMT	9,253,669	44,616,030	51,580,950	105,450,650
	VHT	307,176	1,659,686	1,533,217	
Build (2009 Projections)	VMT	9,612,887	44,747,461	51,525,166	105,885,514
	VHT	302,260	1,664,994	1,529,494	
Build (Adj. Projections)	VMT	9,948,279	44,745,210	51,543,589	106,237,079
	VHT	315,582	1,665,283	1,529,690	
No-Build vs Build (2009 Projections)	% Change VMT	4%	0%	0%	0%
	% Change VHT	-2%	0%	0%	
No-Build vs Build (Adj. Projections)	% Change VMT	8%	0%	0%	1%
	% Change VHT	3%	0%	0%	
Build (2009 Projections) vs Build (Adj. Projections)	% Change VMT	3%	0%	0%	0%
	% Change VHT	4%	0%	0%	

Overall, these forecasted traffic levels indicate that the induced growth impacts of the proposed project will add to the total volume of traffic in Union County and to the total vehicle miles traveled and vehicle hours traveled. Roads that connect to the Monroe Connector/Bypass will likely see some increases in traffic. Overall, however, the increases in traffic are modest and would not likely create substantial congestion issues within the design year of the project, particularly given that the impacts will be spread across the many miles of transportation facilities throughout Union County. Thus, the traffic impacts of induced growth do not appear to be substantial enough to result in indirect or cumulative effects to roadway congestion or overall traffic levels.

### 5.9 Is the Monroe Connector/Bypass Consistent with Local Plans?

Many of the long-range planning documents for the FLUSA did not include the Monroe Connector/Bypass, or were uncertain as to when it might be constructed. The current draft of the 2035 LRTP estimates that the project will be constructed by 2015. During interviews with local planners, most indicated that their existing long-term land use plans did not include the project. This includes the communities of Unionville and Fairview, Charlotte-Mecklenburg Planning, the City of Monroe, as well as the Towns of Marshville, Mint Hill, Stallings and Wingate. It should be noted that the Wingate/Marshville Economic Development Plan does include the Monroe Connector/Bypass.

The Town of Matthews includes the Monroe Connector/Bypass in its long term land use plans, but they include a general project location without finalized designs. The Town of Indian Trail's Comprehensive Plan anticipates the project will be constructed (although it assumes an alignment different than DSA D) with the US 601 Interchange. The updated Union County Comprehensive Plan does anticipate the proposed project.

Several jurisdictions are in the process of updating their long-range land use plans, and they anticipate that the Monroe Connector/Bypass will be included in these updated documents. These jurisdictions include the Town of Wingate and the City of Monroe. Furthermore, the current US 74 corridor is under study for land use and infrastructure changes that might be completed if the Monroe Bypass/Connector is

constructed through the US 74 Revitalization Study. Most of the land use recommendations included in the draft plan for the corridor are consistent with existing land use plans for the relevant jurisdictions.

## **5.10 Conclusions**

As with any attempt to project future growth or development, there are limitations to the accuracy and certainty of the results of these analyses. Most of these analyses rely on the land use projections developed using recommended methods as described in the NCDOT ICE Guidance<sup>56</sup>. Specifically, the land use projections rely on the socioeconomic projections developed by CDOT, and therefore the results are only as accurate as those projections. Projection of socioeconomic conditions, and any projection of the future, is an uncertain process fraught with the potential for error. Despite the best efforts of researchers and forecasters, the error rates for long-range projections are still quite high and thus any projection or estimate of induced and cumulative effects must be considered the best estimate within a wide range of error. The accuracy of growth projections under any future scenario could be affected by many variables. These include individual owner or developer actions, the timing of or changes in utility provision, changes in local or state regulations on land use and, most importantly, changes in national or regional economic conditions. While the potential for error is high, the techniques used by the MPO are the best available and provide the best available data for trying to project population and employment conditions in the future.

As discussed above, the MRM socioeconomic projections appear to be robust in light of their basis in empirical research and the accuracy of the 2009 Projections in comparison to 2010 Census data, and while the potential for error is still large, these projections are the best resource available to estimate future growth in the study area. The methods used to distribute land use effects are based on reasonable assumptions to produce a valid comparative analysis, but these methods also result in high, conservative estimates of effects.

### **Land Use**

- All changes in land use within the entire study area from the Baseline to the Build are within two percent (i.e., between negative one percent and one percent) of the change that is predicted for the 2030 No-Build.
- Additional development (including direct and indirect effects) estimated to occur under the 2030 Build Scenario totals approximately 3,400 acres more, about 2 percent more than the total development expected under the 2030 No-Build.
- The indirect land use effects are modest, totaling about 2,300 acres of additional development, an increase of less than 2 percent over the No-Build and an increase in development of about 1 percent of the total land area within the study area.
- Incremental effects to agricultural and forested lands are a reduction of 2,000 and 1,200 acres respectively as a result of the additional developed land. For both these land uses, the decrease equals a less than one percent change as a percent of total land.
- It is likely that some portion of the household increase would shift within the study area and the remainder would shift from elsewhere in the greater metropolitan area. However, in an effort to

---

<sup>56</sup> NCDOT & NCDENR, 2001a

estimate the environmental impacts without underestimating them, no portion of this induced household growth has been subtracted from elsewhere in the study area.

### Impervious Surface

- Findings show the incremental effect of the 2030 Build Scenario will be a one percent increase in impervious surface throughout the study area as compared to the change predicted for the 2030 No-Build Scenario which results in approximately 2,000 additional acres of impervious surface throughout the study area.
- With the 2030 Build Scenario, increases in percent impervious surface as compared to the change predicted for the 2030 No-Build are found in 7 of the 18 watersheds. These increases are between one and three percent.
- There is no difference in impervious surface resulting from direct or indirect effects in the Goose Creek or Sixmile Creek watersheds between the 2030 No-Build and 2030 Build scenarios.

### Water Quality

- With regard to percent impervious cover as an indicator for water quality effects and effects to aquatic species, findings show only a one percent difference in percent impervious cover between the 2030 Build and 2030 No-Build for the study area as a whole.
- With regard to individual watersheds, findings show no incremental difference from No-Build to Build scenarios for 12 of the 18 watersheds, including Goose Creek and Sixmile Creek. For the remaining six watersheds, the Build scenario will have a one to three percent greater change in impervious surfaces as compared to the change predicted for the No-Build scenario.
- Overall, as these results are very similar to the results of the original Quantitative ICE, additional water quality modeling is not necessary as these differences are not large enough to see substantial differences compared to the prior water quality results.

### Endangered Species

- With regard to percent impervious cover as an indicator of potential effects that could affect habitat for the endangered mussel, findings show no direct or indirect effects within the Goose Creek or Sixmile Creek watersheds as a result of the 2030 Build. Therefore, no cumulative effect to the Carolina heelsplitter is anticipated based on results of this study.
- For the 2030 Build, findings indicate a four percent greater decrease of land exhibiting habitat characteristics that might support the Schweinitz's sunflower as compared to the change predicted for the 2030 No-Build based on results of this study.

### Land Use and Farmland Conversion

- The 2030 Build is predicted to have one percent additional conversion of land to development as compared to the conversion predicted with the No-Build scenario.
- The composition of the development is different between the Build and the No-Build scenarios. With the 2030 Build, there is more Low Density and Medium Density Residential, Commercial, and Industrial/Office/Institutional growth.
- The 2030 Build is predicted to convert 2,100 additional acres of agricultural land to low density residential or other developed uses. This represents four percent greater loss of farmland compared to the No-Build but just a one percent greater overall conversion relative to the total land area than that predicted with the No-Build scenario.

**Wildlife Habitat**

- The 2030 Build is predicted to convert approximately three percent more undeveloped vegetated land in the study area as compared to that predicted for the No-Build scenario. These conversions are mostly concentrated in Salem Creek and Richardson Creek – Lower, with some lesser amounts scattered among Richardson Creek – Middle, Stewarts Creek and Crooked Creek. The incremental losses represent a maximum of 9 to 12 percent additional loss relative to the Baseline conditions for the three most affected watersheds.
- The forest fragmentation analysis indicates that indirect impacts will be modest but that cumulative effects may be more substantial. Nevertheless, most of the cumulative effects are likely to occur with or without the proposed project.

**Traffic**

- The forecasted traffic levels indicate that the growth-induced impacts of the proposed project will add to the total volume of traffic in Union County and to the total vehicle miles traveled and vehicle hours traveled. Roads that connect to the Monroe Connector/Bypass will likely see some increases in traffic. Overall, however, the increases in traffic are modest and would not likely create substantial congestion issues within the design year of the project.

## 6.0 POTENTIAL STEPS TO MINIMIZE DEVELOPMENT IMPACTS

Cumulative effects occur as a result of decisions made not just by NCTA and FHWA, but also by other local, state and federal entities as well as private institutions. Separating, quantifying and minimizing and possibly avoiding the environmental effects from individual contributors continues to prove challenging.

First, one should note that the assumptions used in the methodology of this report and the reports summarized herein were generally designed to overestimate impacts to sensitive resources and water quality. For example, the water quality analysis assumed that relevant stream buffer regulations would be maintained through the design year of the project, but did not apply other land use or zoning controls that are currently in place or may be adopted in the future. The DEIS Qualitative ICE, summarized the regulations currently in place and their impacts on land use.<sup>57</sup> Many of these ordinances have been updated since the publication of the Qualitative ICE, as shown in the FEIS Quantitative ICE, Table 4<sup>58</sup>, and this report in Section 1. For example, the Site Specific Water Quality Management Plan for the Goose Creek Watershed, states that any new development would be required to have stormwater controls to remove 85 percent of the average annual amount of total suspended solids (TSS) and discharge the storage volume at a rate less than or equal to the pre-development discharge rate for the one-year, 24-hour storm. The methods used to reduce TSS and stormwater discharge also reduce nutrient (nitrogen and phosphorous) runoff. Other portions of this regulation place limits on ammonia concentrations, and permitted activities within riparian buffer areas. These regulations have proven to limit future potential impacts from development to water quality.

In an effort to promote the use of “nature friendly” growth management strategies, the North Carolina Wildlife Resources Commission (NCWRC) developed the Green Growth Toolbox.<sup>59</sup> The handbook for the toolbox document provides a background on green growth practices, offers tips on green planning, sample land use zoning ordinances, and provides examples of green growth projects. The goal of the NCWRC is to eliminate or significantly reduce incremental effects from individual contributors before they occur. When used, the tools from the “Green Growth Toolbox” equip local governments and private interests to achieve their respective development goals efficiently, economically and sustainably.

As detailed in Section 1, area planners were asked the following questions pertaining to the Green Growth Toolbox:

- *Have you attempted to implement any of the practices, ordinances or other policies recommended by the toolbox?*
- *Have you attempted to incorporate any other low-impact design type policies into zoning, subdivision or other land development ordinances?*
- *How would you rate the likelihood of incorporating any low-impact design principles in future regulations or plans?*

Among respondents, only Mint Hill expressed a familiarity with the toolbox, and they stated that their Low Impact Development (LID) policies were incorporated through the Mecklenburg County Post Construction Control Ordinance (PCCO). Charlotte-Mecklenburg Planning and Development stated that

---

<sup>57</sup> FEIS Appendix G: *Indirect and Cumulative Effects Assessment*. January 2009. p 23-39.

<sup>58</sup> FEIS Appendix H: *Indirect and Cumulative Effects Quantitative Analysis*. Michael Baker Engineering, Inc. April 2010. p 5.

<sup>59</sup> NCWRC, 2012. <http://www.ncwildlife.org/Conserving/Programs/GreenGrowthToolbox.aspx>

many of the Toolbox principles are incorporated in the Environment Chapter of the General Development Policies for the jurisdiction. Other respondents did not mention familiarity with the toolbox prior to the interview, but did state that they would consider aspects of the Toolbox approach. Respondents in the Union County area include several respondents who are familiar with LID concepts and practices but were not familiar with the Toolbox, suggesting additional outreach on this effort may be needed.

As stated above, the respondents did suggest support for aspects of the Green Growth Toolbox. Practices included in the Toolbox could reduce overall cumulative effects for development throughout North Carolina. For many local jurisdictions in the study area, the first step would be to begin implementing “Green Planning.” The “Green Planning” tool incorporates habitat and green space conservation into a local government's planning processes/documents or creating a new planning document designed specifically for this purpose. This provides an opportunity for the public to provide input specific to these issues, communicates the importance of these issues across internal organizational boundaries and to external planning process users, and provides a necessary step towards funding for habitat conservation and new green space. Since some localities indicated that they lacked much knowledge of LID principles, “Green Planning” is a first step toward basing land use and development decisions with both the economic and environmental landscapes in mind.

Other localities that have already started implementing some LID principles would benefit from furthering those efforts through more intensive tools like “Greening Ordinances” and “Greening Development Review.” “Greening Ordinances” means structuring zoning and development ordinances to conserve priority habitats beside developments. Zoning and development ordinances provide effective means for managing developmental objectives and outcomes. By using these types of land use controls, local governments within the study area can focus intensive, high density developments into areas that are less environmentally sensitive to such development. Using ordinances, local governments can do things like set minimum lot size requirements that are more compatible with sensitive habitats, establish maximum impervious cover requirements with water quality and quantity in mind, or set minimum riparian zone widths specific to stream characteristics and water quality concerns.

Examples of “Greening Ordinances” and “Greening Development Review and Site Design” in action could include a requirement for the protection of 100-foot native, forested buffers on each side of perennial streams and 50-foot native, forested buffers on each side of intermittent streams in sub-watersheds (14 digit hydrologic unit codes) without federally-listed aquatic species. Another requirement established via ordinance could exclude roads and driveways from upland areas within 750 feet of priority wetland habitats. Reviewing staff would insure compliance with these ordinance requirements and work with developers to modify development plans so that they would be more compatible with the environments in which they are located. When used by local governments and the development community, these approaches can significantly reduce cumulative effects to environmental resources like wildlife, habitat, and water. They also aid in NCDOT's transportation planning process because they can help establish avoidance areas or require specific mitigation when avoidance is not practical.

Local governments can also incorporate Low Impact Development (LID) techniques and green design criteria into project planning to further reduce incremental environmental effects, create community assets, and can lower lifecycle costs by reducing maintenance and operations expenditures. LID integrates stormwater practices into site design using a customized layout for each project. Some of the most commonly used integrated management practices (IMPs) include: permeable pavement, cisterns, grassed swales, bioretention, rain gardens, and level spreaders (North Carolina University, 2012). LID replaces

the high maintenance “Collect, capture, control and release” approach by using the natural landscape for managing stormwater. As summarized in a 2007 EPA report the use of bioretention, topographical depressions, grass channels, swales, and stormwater basins at the 270-unit Poplar Street Apartment complex located in Aberdeen, North Carolina improved stormwater treatment and lowered construction costs.<sup>60</sup> The design allowed almost all conventional underground storm drains to be eliminated from the design. The design features created longer flow paths, reduced runoff volume, and filtered pollutants from runoff. The use of LID techniques on this private development in North Carolina resulted in a \$175,000 savings (72 percent) over a traditional stormwater management approach while significantly reducing effects to water quality.

Low Impact Development (LID) practices have also been shown to reduce contaminant loads in streams. As summarized in a 2010 EPA report, which highlighted examples of LID results for 12 local governments, the City of Philadelphia passed a new stormwater standard that requires properties to retain the first inch of rainfall onsite.<sup>61</sup> The Philadelphia Water Department estimated that the ordinance as reduced Combined Sewer Overflow (CSO) inputs by a quarter of a billion gallons, saving the City approximately \$170 million in wastewater treatment costs. Portland, Oregon, used various strategies to retain stormwater onsite. The City was able to implement these procedures on 56,000 properties, keeping 1.2 billion gallons of water out of the combined sewer system from 1994 to 2010. On a smaller scale, installing a “green roof” at the City of Chicago’s City Hall reduced stormwater runoff by 50 percent. Another instructive example is that of Alachua County, Florida, which, similar to Union County, was seeing water quality impacts from fast growing development in the middle of the last decade. The County took a number of steps including requiring clustered development patterns, allowing narrower streets in subdivisions, and an aggressive land acquisition strategy to conserve open space. The Madera subdivision provides a good example of what can be done in a typical suburban development pattern. In building the subdivision, the developer retained many mature trees and used narrower streets, native landscaping, and depressed bioretention areas in each cul-de-sac to reduce runoff.

Cumulative effects to specific environmental resources occur as the result of the actions of many different public and private entities over time. Effectively minimizing or avoiding cumulative effects requires collaboration and coordination among the local governments within the study area along with the efforts of FHWA and NCDOT and other agencies. The “Green Growth Toolbox” and LID techniques offer valuable tools for local governments and NCDOT to use for reducing cumulative effects to resources within the study area.

---

<sup>60</sup> U.S Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). 2007. Reducing Stormwater Costs through Low Impact Development (LID) Strategies. EPA Nonpoint Source Control Branch. Washington, DC  
[http://water.epa.gov/polwaste/green/costs07\\_index.cfm](http://water.epa.gov/polwaste/green/costs07_index.cfm)

<sup>61</sup> U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). 2010. Green Infrastructure Case Studies. EPA Office of Wetlands, Oceans, and Watersheds. Washington, DC. [http://water.epa.gov/polwaste/green/upload/gi\\_case\\_studies\\_2010.pdf](http://water.epa.gov/polwaste/green/upload/gi_case_studies_2010.pdf)

## 7.0 REFERENCES

- Appold, Stephen J. Letter to Jamal Alavi, NCDOT, May 29, 2013.
- Arnold, C. L., Jr. and C. J. Gibbons. 1996. "Impervious Surface Coverage: The Emergence of a Key Environmental Indicator." *Journal of the American Planning Association* 62(2): 243-258.
- Boarnet, Marlon G. and Haughwout, Andrew F. *Do Highways Matter? Evidence and Policy Implications of Highways' Influence on Metropolitan Development*. The University of California Transportation Center, Berkley, CA. August 2000. <http://escholarship.org/uc/item/5rn9w6bz>.
- Bond, Kay, David F. Farren, and Thomas Gremillion. Southern Environmental Law Center Letter to Jennifer Harris, NCTA, June 25, 2010.
- Blanchard, Dryw, Planning Director, Town of Wingate. 2009. Personal Communication with Project Team, August 25, 2009.
- The Catena Group for NCTA, 2103. *Biological Assessment of Carolina Heelsplitter (Lasmigona decorata) and Designated Critical Habitat, Schweinitz's Sunflower (Helianthus schweinitzii), Michaux's Sumac (Rhus michauxii), and Smooth Coneflower (Echinacea laevigata), Monroe Connector/Bypass*, November 2013.
- The Catena Group for NCTA, May 2010 and Updated *T&E Plant Species Field Review*, October 9, 2012, prepared by Atkins.
- Cervero, Robert. "Road Expansion, Urban Growth and Induced Travel: A Path Analysis." *Journal of the American Planning Association*. Vol. 69, No. 2. Spring 2003.
- Charlotte-Mecklenburg Planning Department. 2007. *Adopted Area Plan Infrastructure Implementation Recommendations*. Adopted November 13, 2007. Website cited on November 13, 2009: <http://www.charmeck.org/Planning/Land%20Use%20Planning/PlanImplementationDocument.pdf>.
- City of Charlotte. 2009. *Zoning Ordinance (City of Charlotte)*. Codified through July 20, 2009. Website cited on November 13, 2009: <http://www.charmeck.org/Departments/Planning/Rezoning/City%20zoning%20Ordinance.htm>.
- City of Monroe. 1994. *City of Monroe, North Carolina, Code of Ordinances*. Published by American Legal Publishing Corporation, published in 2008. Website cited on November 13, 2009: [http://www.amlegal.com/nxt/gateway.dll/North%20Carolina/monroe/titlexvlandusage/chapter157landdevelopmentplan?f=templates\\$fn=default.htm\\$3.0\\$vid=amlegal:monroe\\_nc\\$anc=JD\\_Chapter157](http://www.amlegal.com/nxt/gateway.dll/North%20Carolina/monroe/titlexvlandusage/chapter157landdevelopmentplan?f=templates$fn=default.htm$3.0$vid=amlegal:monroe_nc$anc=JD_Chapter157).
- \_\_\_\_\_. 2008. City of Monroe, Downtown Master Plan. Prepared by Landdesign, Inc., Warren and Associates, Glattig Jackson, Kercher, and Anglin, adopted February 2008. Website cited on November 13, 2009: <ftp://ftp.monroenc.org/web/DowntownMasterPlan/MonroeDowntownMasterPlan.pdf>.
- Crone, Theodore M. "Capitalization of the Quality of Local Public Schools: What Do Home Buyers Value?" Working Paper No. 06-15, Federal Reserve Bank of Philadelphia. August 2006.

- Dougherty, Jack. "Shopping for Schools: How Public Education and Private Housing Shaped Suburban Connecticut." *Journal of Urban History* 28, no. 2 (March 2012): 205-224.
- Environmental Services, Inc. 2009. *DRAFT Biological Assessment of Michaux's Sumac (Rhus michauxii), Schweinitz's Sunflower (Helianthus schweinitzii), and Smooth Coneflower (Echinacea laevigata) for the Monroe Bypass-Connector Project (R-3329/R-2559) Mecklenburg and Union Counties, North Carolina*. Prepared for the North Carolina Turnpike Authority. December 10, 2009.
- Evans, B.M., D.W. Lehning, and K.J. Corradini, 2008. *AVGWLF, Version 7.1 Users Guide*. Penn State Institutes of the Environment.
- FHWA. *Interim Guidance on the Application of Travel and Land Use Forecasting in NEPA*. March 2010. p 12.
- FHWA CTPP Data Products. March 2010. "TAZ Delineation Business Rules."  
[http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/planning/census\\_issues/ctpp/data\\_products/tazddbules.cfm](http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/planning/census_issues/ctpp/data_products/tazddbules.cfm)
- Gremillion, Thomas. Southern Environmental Law Center Email to Jennifer Harris, NCTA, August 24, 2010.
- Hammer, Thomas R. "Demographic and Economic Forecasts for the Charlotte Region." Prepared for Charlotte Department of Transportation. December 8, 2003
- Higgins, Karen, Environmental Senior Specialist, North Carolina Department of Water Quality. Personal Communication with Project Team, August 28, 2009.
- HNTB. 2009. Indirect and Cumulative Effects Assessment - Monroe Connector/Bypass Mecklenburg and Union Counties. STIP Project Nos. R-3329 and R-2559. Prepared by HNTB, January 2009.
- Hollerman, Frank, and Kym Hunter. Southern Environmental Law Center Letter to Jennifer Harris, November 30, 2012.
- Leopold, L. B. 1968. *Hydrology for Urban Land Planning--A Guidebook on the Hydrologic Effects of Urban Land Use*. U.S. Geological Survey Circular 554. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office.
- Mecklenburg-Union Metropolitan Planning Organization (MUMPO). 2007. *2030 Long Range Transportation Plan and Air Quality Conformity Determination*. Amended May 2007. Website cited on November 13, 2009:  
[http://www.mumpo.org/PDFs/2030\\_LRTP/2030\\_LRTP\\_Amendment\\_Report\\_2\(May2007\).pdf](http://www.mumpo.org/PDFs/2030_LRTP/2030_LRTP_Amendment_Report_2(May2007).pdf).
- \_\_\_\_\_. 2009. *Draft 2035 Long Range Transportation Plan*. Website cited on November 13, 2009:  
[http://www.mumpo.org/2035\\_LRTP.htm](http://www.mumpo.org/2035_LRTP.htm).
- Michael Baker Engineering, 2010. *Monroe Connector/Bypass (R-3329/R-2559) Indirect and Cumulative Effects Quantitative Analysis*. Prepared by Michael Baker Engineering, April 2010.
- National Association of Realtors, "Profile of Home Buyers and Sellers," 2011.

National Research Council. "Expanding Metropolitan Highways: Implications for Air Quality and Energy Use -- Special Report 245." Washington, DC: The National Academies Press, 1995.

NC Natural Heritage Program. "Data Services." Updated January 9, 2009

NCRecovery.gov. 2009a. "North Carolina ARRA Distribution by County." Website cited on November 12, 2009: <http://www.ncrecovery.gov/RecoveryPlan/ARRA.aspx>.

\_\_\_\_\_. 2009b. "North Carolina Clean Water State Revolving Fund, Final ARRA Round Two Funded Project List." Website cited on November 12, 2009:  
<http://www.ncrecovery.gov/news/UploadedFiles/6aaa1285-befc-4ae7-b652-60b3ffcae302.pdf>.

\_\_\_\_\_. 2009c. North Carolina ARRA Transportation Distribution by County. Website cited on November 12, 2009: [www.ncrecovery.gov/library/xls/data\\_transportation.xls](http://www.ncrecovery.gov/library/xls/data_transportation.xls).

North Carolina Wildlife Resources Commission (NCWRC). 2002. Guidance Memorandum to Address and Mitigate Secondary and Cumulative Impacts to Aquatic and Terrestrial Wildlife Resources and Water Quality. August.

North Carolina Department of Environment and Natural Resources (NCDENR). 2009. Site Specific Water Quality Management Plan for the Goose Creek Watershed. (Reprint from North Carolina Administrative Code: 15A NCAC 2B .0600-.0609), NCDENR, February 2009. Website cited on November 11, 2009: <http://h2o.enr.state.nc.us/csu/documents/15A-NCAC-02B-0601-through-0609-GOOSECRKMGTPPLAN-effective1jan&1feb-2009.pdf>.

North Carolina Department of Environment and Natural Resources-Division of Water Quality (NCDENR-DWQ). 2005. "Permit No. NCS000395 to Discharge Stormwater under the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (within the County of Mecklenburg and the Towns of Cornelius, Davidson, Huntersville, Matthews, Mint Hill, and Pineville Jurisdictional Areas." Website cited on November 13, 2009:  
<http://h2o.enr.state.nc.us/su/documents/NCS000395MecklenburgRevisedPermit.pdf>.

North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT). 2009a. Town of Marshville Comprehensive Transportation Plan Study. Adopted June 4, 2009. Website cited on November 13, 2009:  
<http://www.ncdot.org/doh/preconstruct/tpb/PLANNING/MarshvilleCTP.html>.

\_\_\_\_\_. 2009b. N.C. ARRA Transit Projects. Website cited on November 12, 2009:  
<http://www.ncdot.gov/download/transit/nctransit/ARRAProjects.pdf>.

North Carolina Department of Transportation and Department of Environment and Natural Resources (NCDOT & NCDENR). 2001a. Guidance for Assessing Indirect and Cumulative Impacts of Transportation Projects in North Carolina, Volume II: Practitioner's Handbook. Under Project No. 81777722, Issued November 2001.

\_\_\_\_\_. 2001b. Guidance for Assessing Indirect and Cumulative Impacts of Transportation Projects in North Carolina, Volume I: Guidance Policy Report. Under Project No. 81777722, Issued November 2001.

- North Carolina Governor's Office. 2009. North Carolina Clean Water State Revolving Fund, Final ARRA Round One Funded Project List. Website cited on November 12, 2009:  
<http://www.governor.state.nc.us/NewsItems/UploadedFiles/9ab70781-2d69-4d8a-ac65-f52abd5613e2.pdf>.
- North Carolina Turnpike Authority (NCTA). 2009. Monroe Connector/Bypass: Administrative Action Draft Environmental Impact Statement. STIP Project Nos. R-2559 and R-3329. Prepared by PBS&J, March 2009.
- North Carolina Wildlife Resources Commission (NCWRC). 2002. Guidance Memorandum to Address and Mitigate Secondary and Cumulative Impacts to Aquatic and Terrestrial Wildlife Resources and Water Quality. August.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 2012. Green Growth Toolbox. Developed by NCWRC, Website cited on October 19, 2012  
<http://www.ncwildlife.org/Conserving/Programs/GreenGrowthToolbox/DownloadHandbook.aspx>.
- North Carolina State University. 2012. NC Low Impact Development Group website retrieved on October 17, 2012 from <http://www.bae.ncsu.edu/topic/lid/index.html>.
- Novotny, V. and G. Chesters. 1981. *Handbook of Urban Nonpoint Pollution: Sources and Management*. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold Company.
- Sinai, Todd. "Feedback between Real Estate and Urban Economics." *Journal of Regional Science*, 50: 423-448. February 2010.
- Smith, Stanley K., Swanson, David A., Tayman, Jeff. *State and Local Population Projections: Methodology and Analysis*. Kluwer Academic/Plenum Publishers, New York, 2001. p 358
- Soil Conservation Service (SCS). 1986. Urban hydrology for small watersheds, Tech. Rep. 55, Engineering Division, Soil Conservation Service (currently the National Resources Conservation Service [NRCS]), US Department of Agriculture, Washington, DC.
- Town of Indian Trail. 2006. Indian Trail Downtown Master Plan. Adopted, 2006 (no specific date listed). Website cited on November 13, 2009:  
[http://www.indiantrail.org/uploads/file/Planning%20Docs/Adopted%20Plans/DowntownMP\\_pl1and2.pdf](http://www.indiantrail.org/uploads/file/Planning%20Docs/Adopted%20Plans/DowntownMP_pl1and2.pdf).
- \_\_\_\_\_. 2007. Town of Indian Trail Post Construction Storm Water Ordinance. Adopted September 11, 2007. Website cited on November 13, 2009:  
<http://www.indiantrail.org/uploads/file/Engineering/PC%20Ordinance.pdf>.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 2008. Town of Indian Trail, North Carolina, Unified Development Ordinance. Prepared by Duncan and Associates, adopted December 30, 2008. Website cited on November 13, 2009:  
<http://www.indiantrail.org/uploads/IT%20UDO%2027%20JAN%202009.pdf>.
- Town of Marshville. 2004. Town of Marshville, Land Use Plan. Prepared by Centralina Council of Governments, August 16, 2004. Website cited on November 11, 2009:

<http://marshvillenc.govoffice2.com/vertical/Sites/{72E7832C-85F3-4203-A43B-930F202C41D1}/uploads/{DDABE475-A095-4813-B5AB-C1AC529B2AA8}.pdf>.

\_\_\_\_\_. 2007. Land Development Ordinance. Last Revised November 5, 2007. Website cited on November 11, 2009: <http://marshvillenc.govoffice2.com/vertical/Sites/{72E7832C-85F3-4203-A43B-930F202C41D1}/uploads/{F386D44E-1FD0-4821-B42D-E0DF1376752D}.pdf>.

Town of Marshville and Town of Wingate. 2008. Strategic Plan for Economic Development, Town of Marshville, Town of Wingate. Prepared by Greenfield, Inc., October, 2008. Website cited on November 12, 2009: <http://wingate.govoffice.com/vertical/Sites/{97E181A6-5F3F-4B46-B6D8-5965A146C00C}/uploads/{5DD72CCC-F6CB-4106-A99F-B16DC2F40BBB}.pdf>.

Town of Matthews. 1997. Downtown Matthews Master Plan and Design Guidelines. Prepared by LandDesign, Inc., 1995 as revised by the Matthews Planning Board and adopted by the Matthews Board of Commissioners, April, 1997. Website cited on November 12, 2009: <http://www.matthewsplanning.org/pdf/DOWNTOWNMATTMMASTERPLAN.pdf>.

\_\_\_\_\_. 2003. Town of Matthews Subdivision Ordinance. Adopted November 19, 1998, updated May 12, 2003. Website cited on November 12, 2009: <http://www.matthewsplanning.org/pdf/SubdivisionOrdinance.pdf>.

\_\_\_\_\_. Undated. Town of Matthews, Zoning and Post Construction Ordinances. Undated Town webpage cited on November 13, 2009: [http://www.matthewsplanning.org/index\\_files/Page559.htm](http://www.matthewsplanning.org/index_files/Page559.htm).

Town of Mint Hill. 2008. Comprehensive Transportation Plan. Prepared by Kimley Horn and Associates, Inc., May 2008. Website cited on November 12, 2009: <http://www.minthill.com/documents/CTP/FINAL%20DRAFT%20Appendix.pdf>.

Town of Wingate. 2008. Town of Wingate Land Use Ordinance. Adopted December 18, 2001, last modified June 17, 2008. Website cited on November 13, 2009: <http://wingate.govoffice.com/vertical/Sites/%7B97E181A6-5F3F-4B46-B6D8-5965A146C00C%7D/uploads/%7B38733225-0804-40E2-BE82-42EA5C66B2DA%7D.pdf>.

Transportation Planning Capacity Building Program. *The Transportation Planning Process: Key Issues, A Briefing Book for Transportation Decisionmakers, Officials, and Staff*. Publication Number: FHWA-HEP-07-039. September 2007.

Transportation Research Board. "NCHRP Synthesis 406: Advanced Practices in Travel Forecasting, A Synthesis of Highway Practice." Washington, DC 2010.

Transportation Research Board. *NCHRP Report 423A: Land Use Impacts of Transportation, A Guidebook*. Washington DC: National Academy Press, 1999.

Union County. 2008a. Union County Comprehensive Plan Update: Transportation Analysis and Strategies. Prepared by Martin, Alexiou, and Bryson, September 2008. No longer available online.

- \_\_\_\_\_. 2008b. Union County, North Carolina Land Use Ordinance. Last revised August 31, 2008. Website cited on November 13, 2009:  
<http://www.co.union.nc.us/LinkClick.aspx?fileticket=BvKKy1%2bTJZg%3d&tabid=227&mid=937>.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 2009. Union County North Carolina Comprehensive Plan. Planning Board Review Draft, July 2009. Website cited on November 13, 2009:  
<http://www.co.union.nc.us/Portals/0/Planning/Presentations/UCPlan-PlanningBoardReview-072109.pdf>.
- U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE). 2009. List of permits for May, June, July, and August, 2009. USACE Wilmington Field Office Website. Available on the internet:  
<http://www.saw.usace.army.mil/wetlands/notices.html>.
- U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). 2012. "Land Use Impacts on Water." *Green Communities*. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. Website cited May 16, 2013:  
<http://www.epa.gov/greenkit/toolwq.htm>.
- U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). 2007. *Reducing Stormwater Costs through Low Impact Development (LID) Strategies*. EPA Nonpoint Source Control Branch. Washington, DC  
[http://water.epa.gov/polwaste/green/costs07\\_index.cfm](http://water.epa.gov/polwaste/green/costs07_index.cfm)
- U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). 2010. *Green Infrastructure Case Studies*. EPA Office of Wetlands, Oceans, and Watersheds. Washington, DC.  
[http://water.epa.gov/polwaste/green/upload/gi\\_case\\_studies\\_2010.pdf](http://water.epa.gov/polwaste/green/upload/gi_case_studies_2010.pdf)
- Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). "Urban Nonpoint Source Fact Sheet." February 2003.  
[http://water.epa.gov/polwaste/nps/urban\\_facts.cfm](http://water.epa.gov/polwaste/nps/urban_facts.cfm).
- U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) & National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 1998. Endangered Species Act Consultation Handbook Procedures for Conducting Section 7 Consultations and Conferences. Final Edition, March 1998.
- U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS). 2006. *Field Notes*, the Quarterly Newsletter of the U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service's North Carolina Ecological Services Field Offices, Volume 1, Number 1, 2006. Website cited January 27, 2010: [http://www.fws.gov/asheville/pdfs/Field\\_Notes\\_Summer\\_2006.pdf](http://www.fws.gov/asheville/pdfs/Field_Notes_Summer_2006.pdf).
- U.S. Geological Survey Water Resources Division and U.S. Department of Agricultural Natural Resources Conservation Service (USGS & USDA). 1999. National Hydrography Dataset, Watershed Boundaries Dataset. Available through the internet: <http://nhd.usgs.gov/>.
- Village of Marvin, Town of Waxhaw, Town of Weddington, Village of Wesley Chapel, and Centralina Council of Governments. 2009. Western Union County Local Area Regional Transportation Plan (Final Draft). Prepared by Martin, Alexiou, and Bryson, June, 2009. Website cited on November 12 2009: [http://www.mabtrans.com/ftp/LARTP\\_Final\\_Draft.pdf](http://www.mabtrans.com/ftp/LARTP_Final_Draft.pdf).
- Village of Wesley. 2003. Village of Wesley Chapel Land Use Plan. Prepared by Centralina Council of Governments, December 8, 2003. Website cited on November 12, 2009: <http://ci.wesley->

chapel.nc.us/vertical/Sites/{1AD59A02-0FFA-4E56-AC61-69E74B4BE4D0}/uploads/{5DD5A927-9520-4A90-B643-19F71FD490F8}.pdf.

Villages of Indian Trail. 2005. The Villages of Indian Trail – A Plan for Managed Growth and Livability.

Website cited on November 12, 2009:

<http://www.indiantrail.org/uploads/FINAL%20IT%20COMP%20PLAN.pdf>.

## Maps

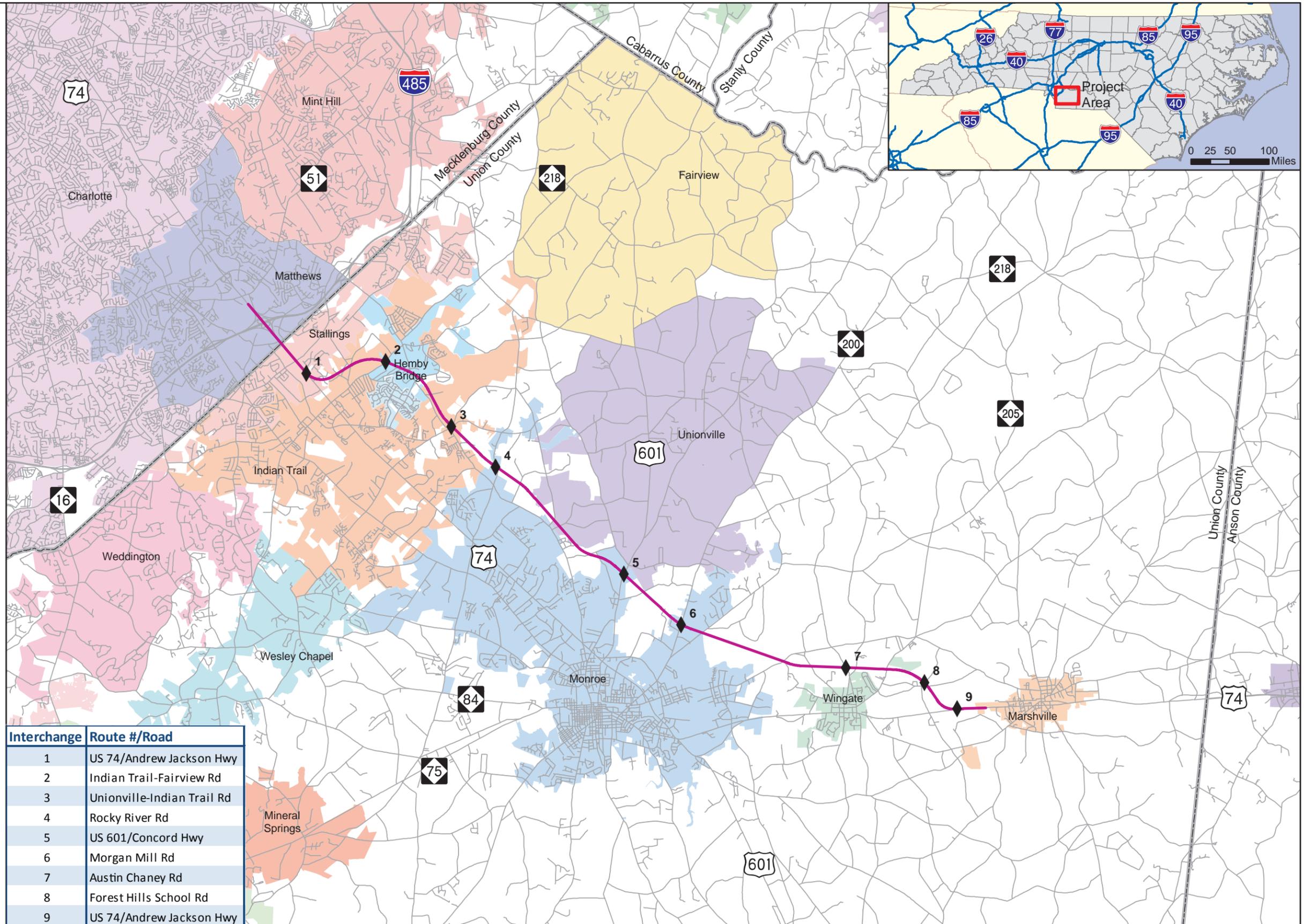
Monroe Connector/Bypass  
Quantitative ICE Update

Map 1:  
Project Location

- ◆ Interchanges
- RPA Centerline
- Existing Roads



Interchange	Route #/Road
1	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy
2	Indian Trail-Fairview Rd
3	Unionville-Indian Trail Rd
4	Rocky River Rd
5	US 601/Concord Hwy
6	Morgan Mill Rd
7	Austin Chaney Rd
8	Forest Hills School Rd
9	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy

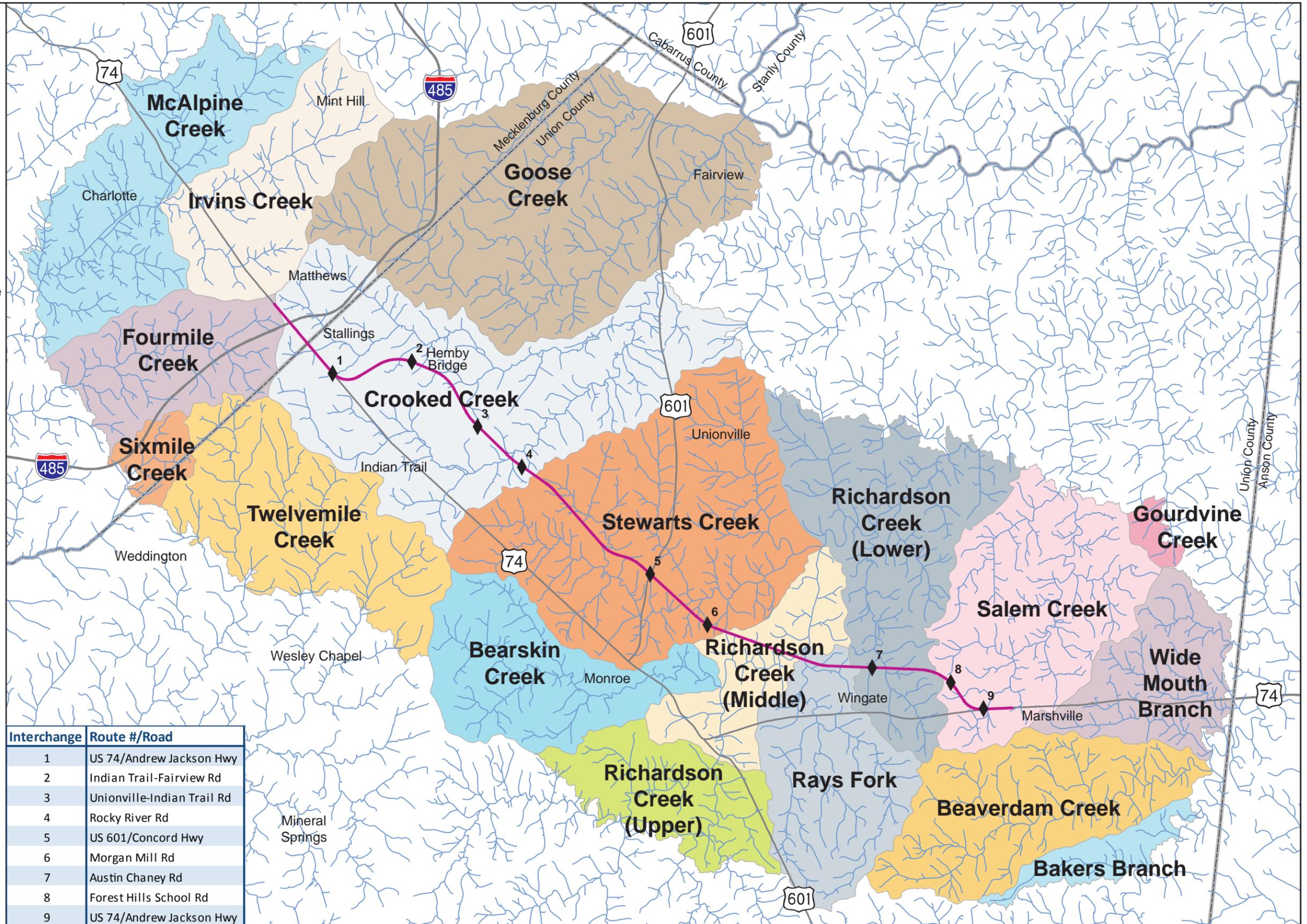


## Map 2: Study Area Watersheds

- ◆ Interchanges
- Recommended Preferred Alternative Centerline
- ~ River or Stream



Interchange	Route #/Road
1	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy
2	Indian Trail-Fairview Rd
3	Unionville-Indian Trail Rd
4	Rocky River Rd
5	US 601/Concord Hwy
6	Morgan Mill Rd
7	Austin Chaney Rd
8	Forest Hills School Rd
9	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy

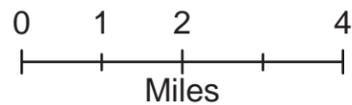


Monroe Connector/Bypass  
Quantitative ICE Update

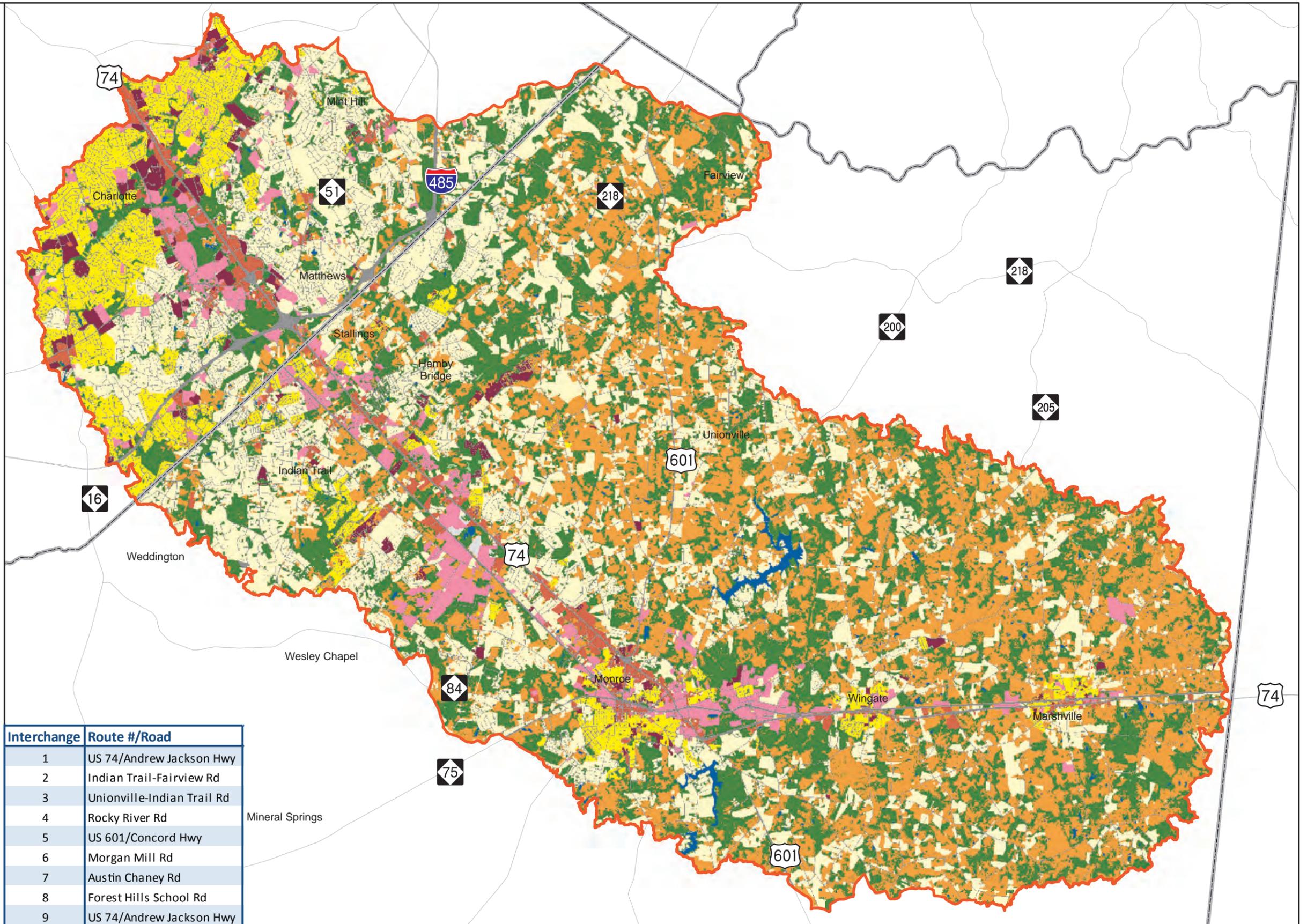
Map 3:  
Updated 2010  
Baseline Land  
Use Scenario

Existing Land Use

- Agricultural Fields
- Barren
- Commercial
- Forested
- Other Natural
- High Density Residential
- Industrial/Office/Institutional
- Low Density Residential
- Medium Density Residential
- Open Water
- Transportation
- FLUSA Boundary

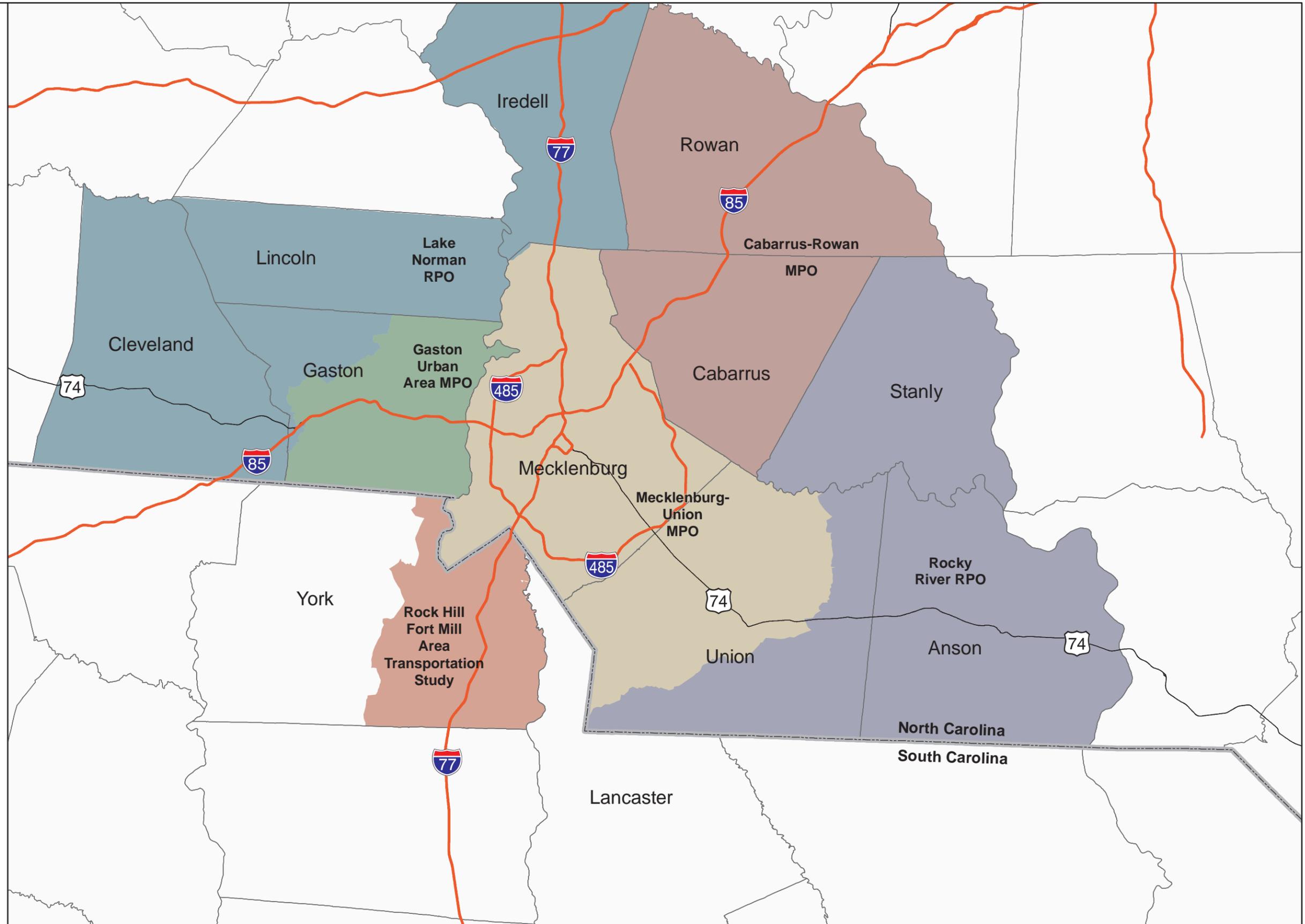
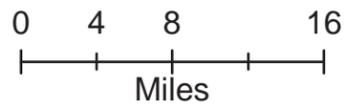


Interchange	Route #/Road
1	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy
2	Indian Trail-Fairview Rd
3	Unionville-Indian Trail Rd
4	Rocky River Rd
5	US 601/Concord Hwy
6	Morgan Mill Rd
7	Austin Chaney Rd
8	Forest Hills School Rd
9	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy



### Map 4 Charlotte Region MPOs and RPOs

- Interstates
- Major Roads
- Counties

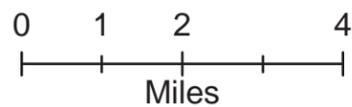


### Map 5: Metrolina Model TAZs by Planning Organization

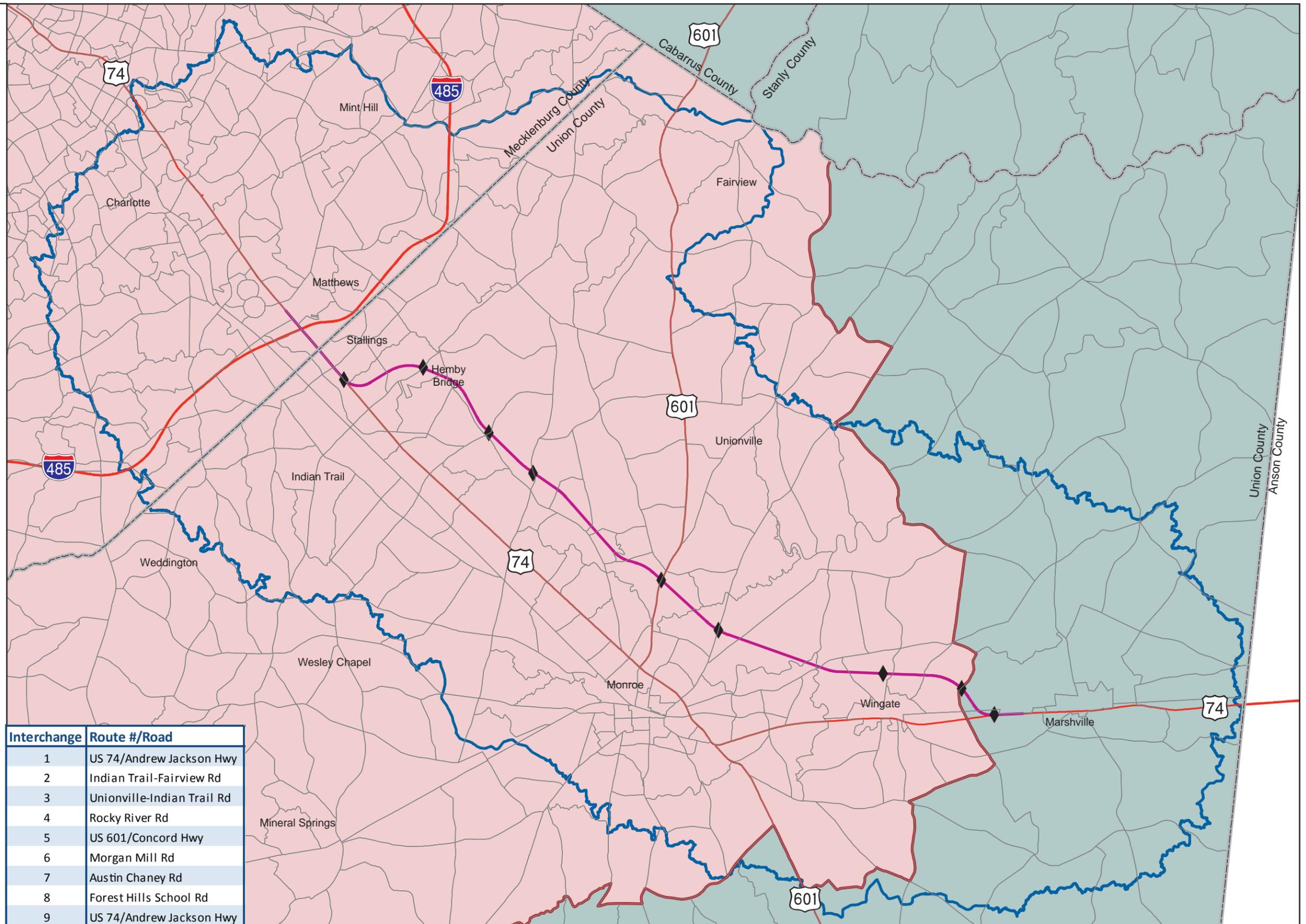
- ◆ Interchanges
- Recommended Preferred Alternative Centerline
- ▭ MUMPO Analysis Area
- ▭ FLUSA

**Metrolina Model TAZs**

- ▭ MUMPO
- ▭ Other MPO or RPO



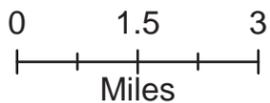
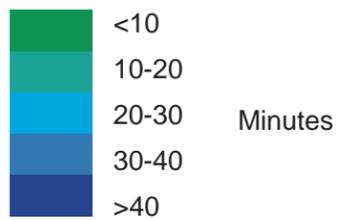
Interchange	Route #/Road
1	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy
2	Indian Trail-Fairview Rd
3	Unionville-Indian Trail Rd
4	Rocky River Rd
5	US 601/Concord Hwy
6	Morgan Mill Rd
7	Austin Chaney Rd
8	Forest Hills School Rd
9	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy



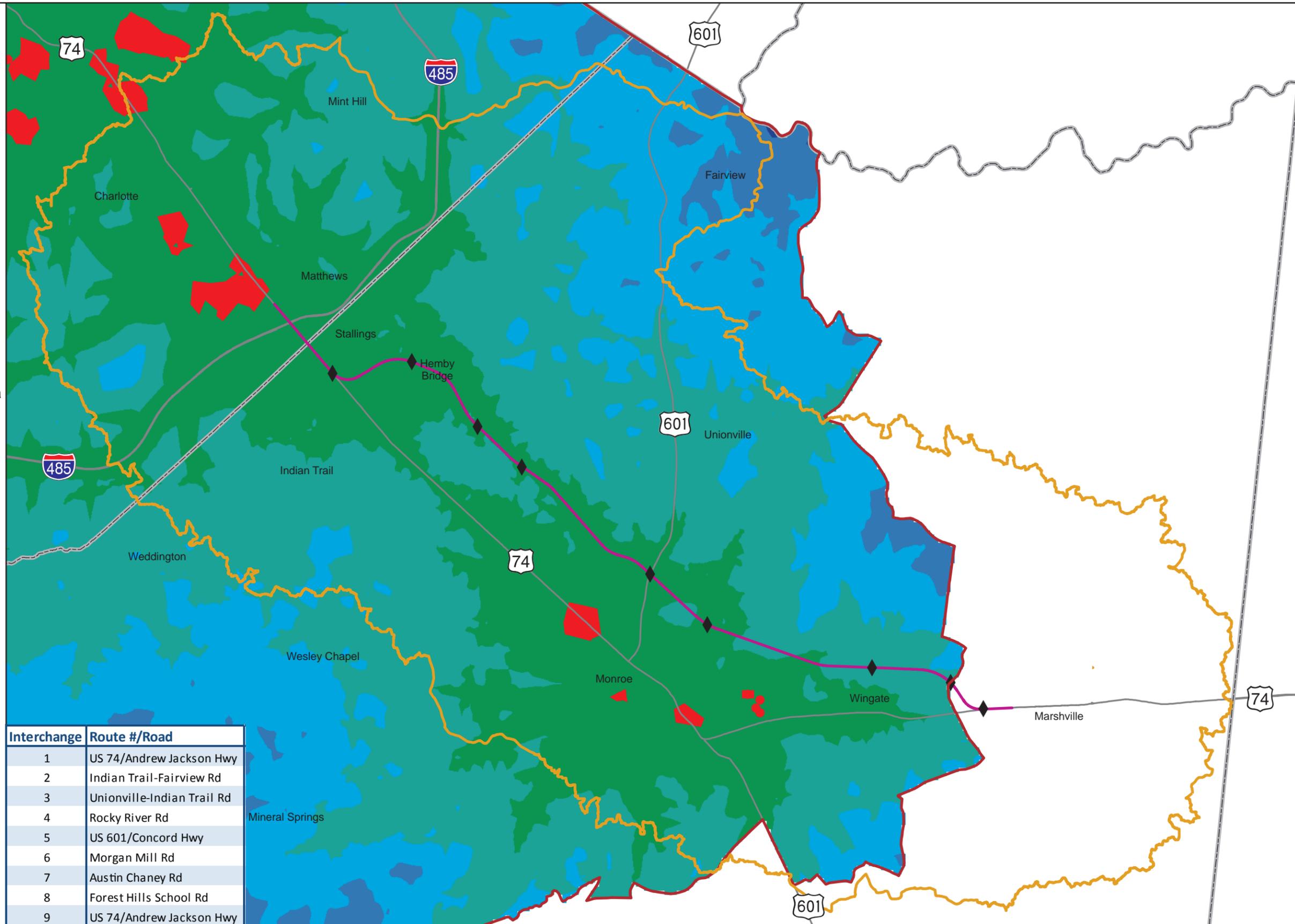
### Map 6: Travel Time to Employment Center Analysis - Employment Center Location and Travel Time Results

-  RPA Centerline
-  Interchanges
-  FLUSA
-  MUMPO Analysis Area
-  Employment Centers

#### Travel Time to Employment Center



Interchange	Route #/Road
1	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy
2	Indian Trail-Fairview Rd
3	Unionville-Indian Trail Rd
4	Rocky River Rd
5	US 601/Concord Hwy
6	Morgan Mill Rd
7	Austin Chaney Rd
8	Forest Hills School Rd
9	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy

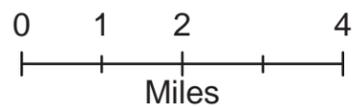
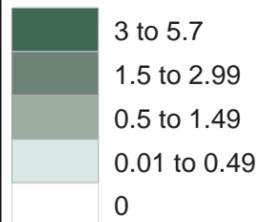


Monroe Connector/Bypass  
Quantitative ICE Update

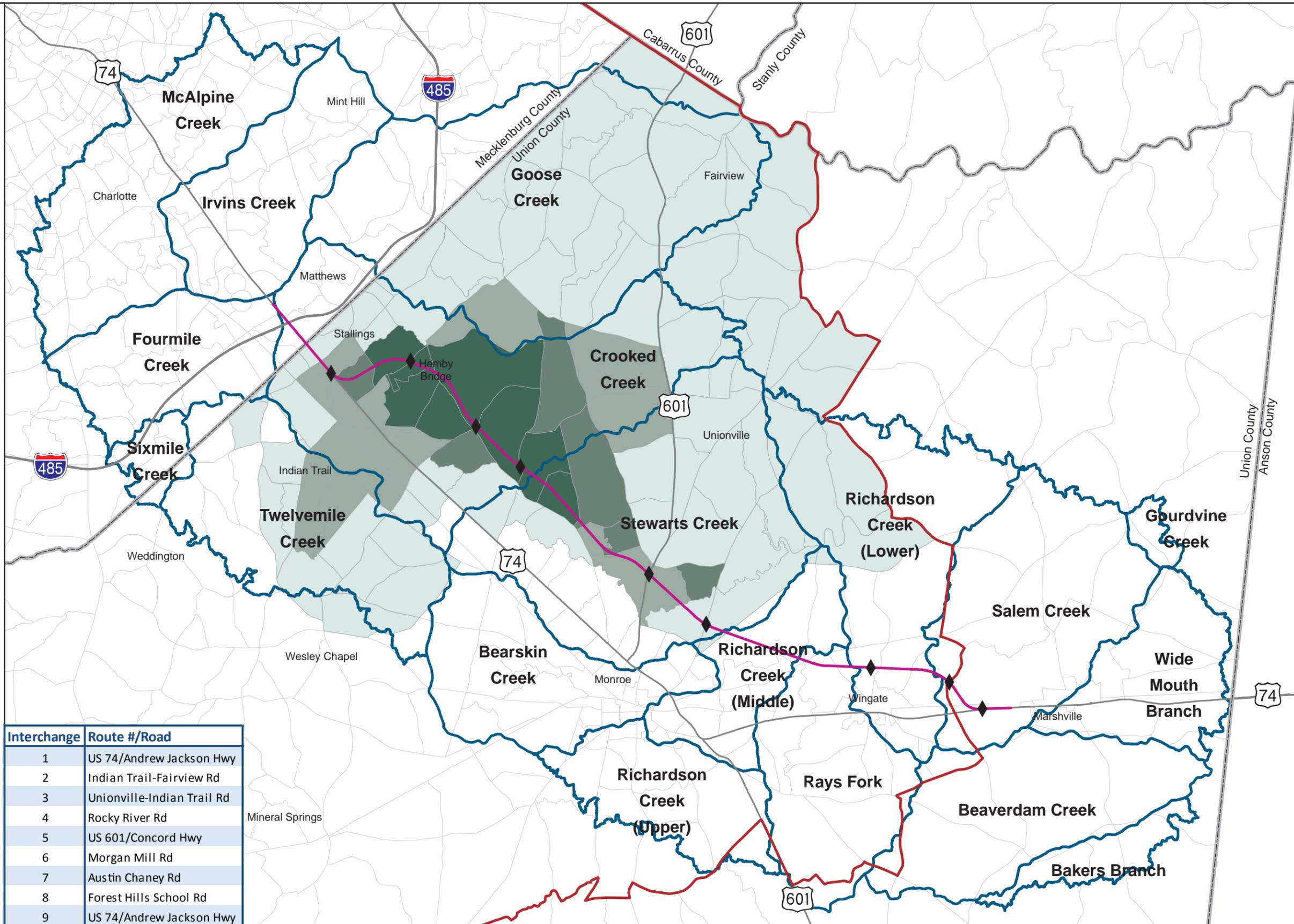
Map 7:  
Difference in Travel  
Time to Employment  
Centers Factor from  
Bottom Up Allocation

- ◆ Interchanges
- RPA Centerline
- ▭ MUMPO Analysis Area
- ⬮ Watersheds

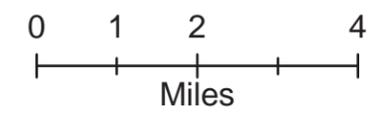
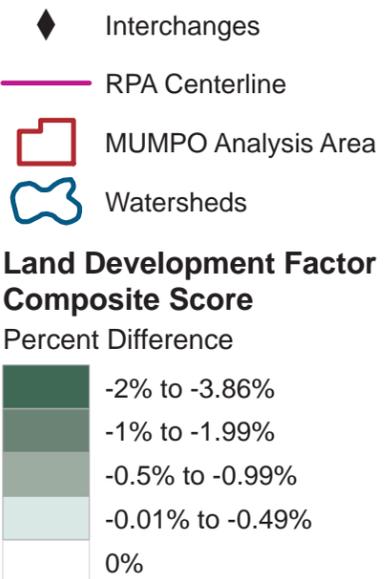
**Travel Time to  
Employment Centers**  
Time Difference  
(Minutes)



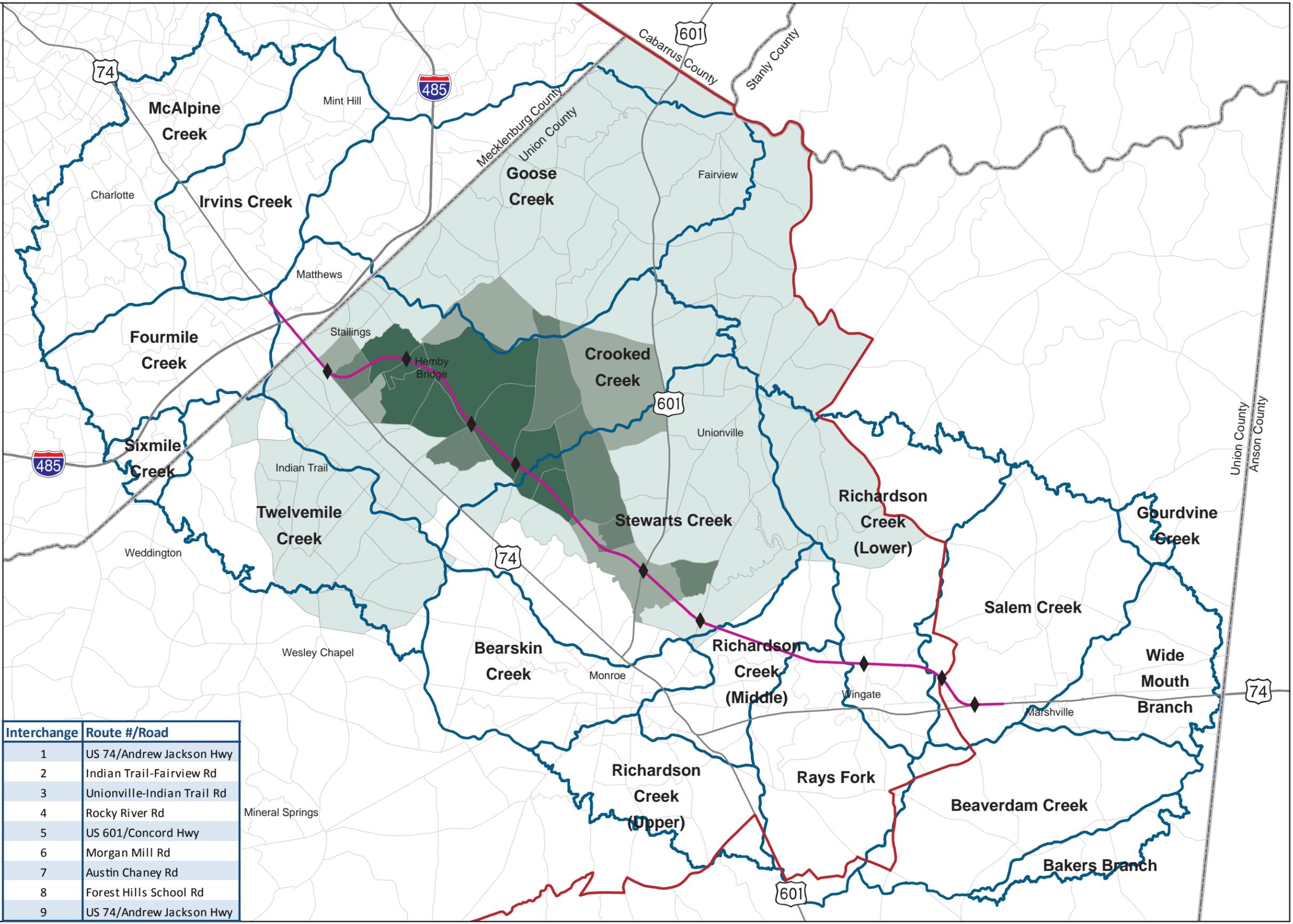
Interchange	Route #/Road
1	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy
2	Indian Trail-Fairview Rd
3	Unionville-Indian Trail Rd
4	Rocky River Rd
5	US 601/Concord Hwy
6	Morgan Mill Rd
7	Austin Chaney Rd
8	Forest Hills School Rd
9	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy



**Map 8:**  
Difference in Land  
Development Factor  
Composite Score  
from Bottom Up  
Allocation



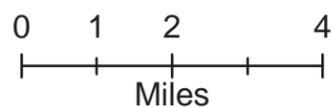
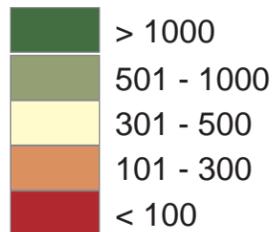
Interchange	Route #/Road
1	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy
2	Indian Trail-Fairview Rd
3	Unionville-Indian Trail Rd
4	Rocky River Rd
5	US 601/Concord Hwy
6	Morgan Mill Rd
7	Austin Chaney Rd
8	Forest Hills School Rd
9	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy



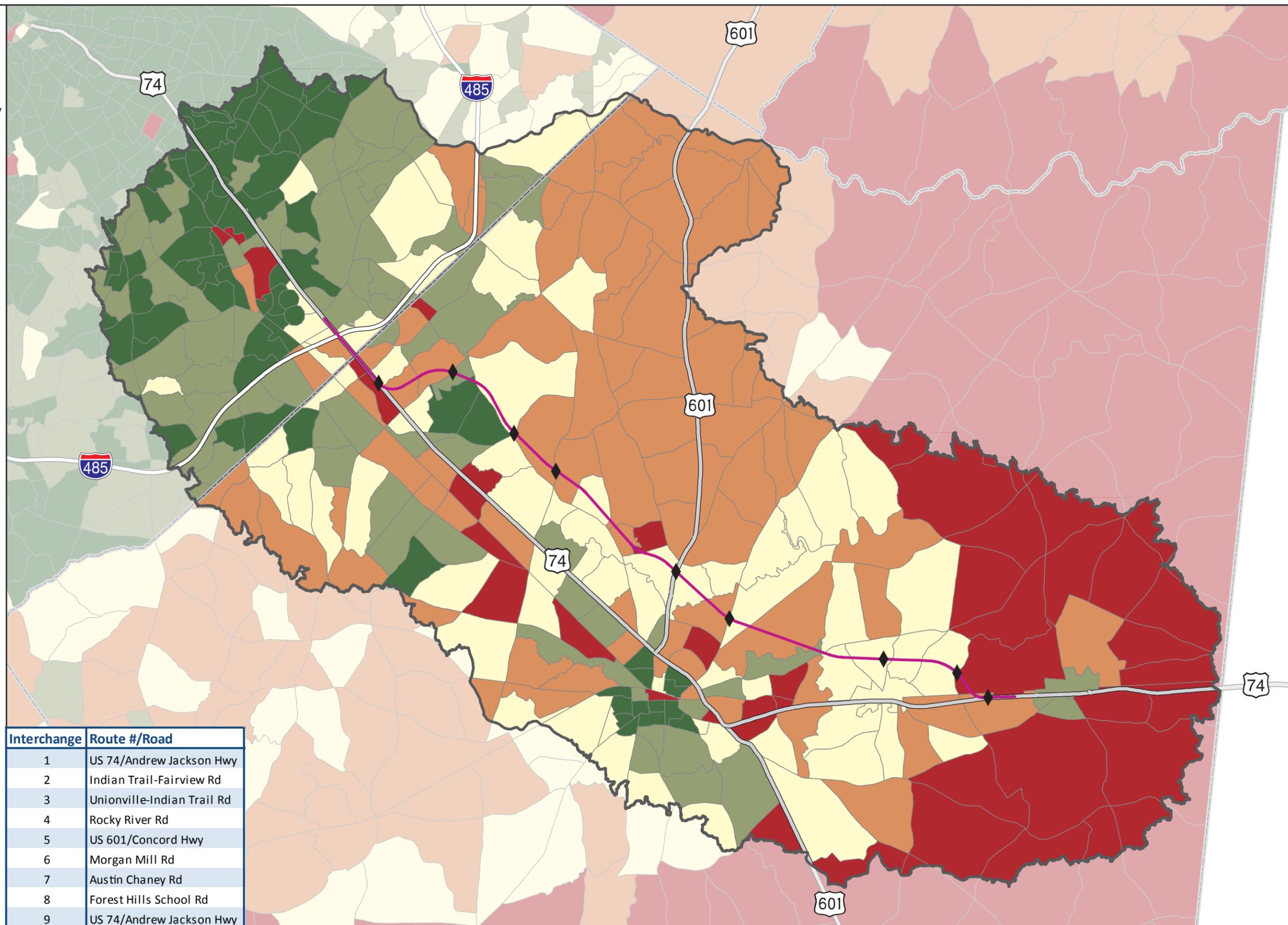
Map 9:  
Household Density  
2030 Horizon  
Year  
2009 Projections

-  Study Area
-  Interchanges
-  RPA Centerline

Household Density  
per Sq. Mile



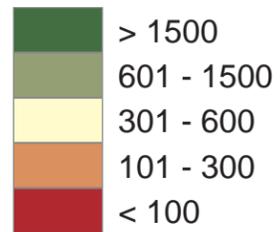
Interchange	Route #/Road
1	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy
2	Indian Trail-Fairview Rd
3	Unionville-Indian Trail Rd
4	Rocky River Rd
5	US 601/Concord Hwy
6	Morgan Mill Rd
7	Austin Chaney Rd
8	Forest Hills School Rd
9	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy



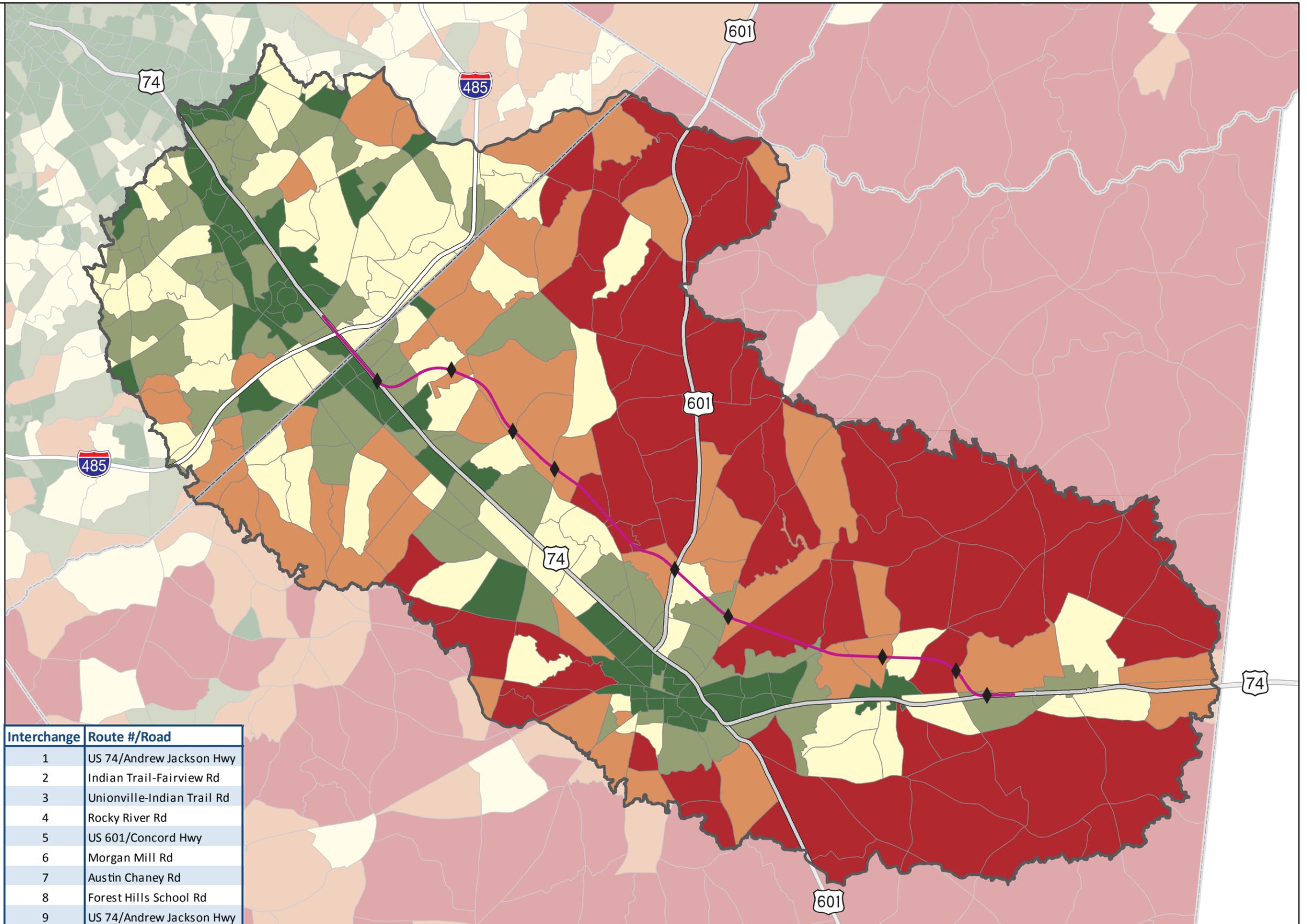
Map 10:  
Employee Density  
2030 Horizon  
Year  
2009 Projections

-  Study Area
-  Interchanges
-  RPA Centerline

Employee Density  
per Sq. Mile

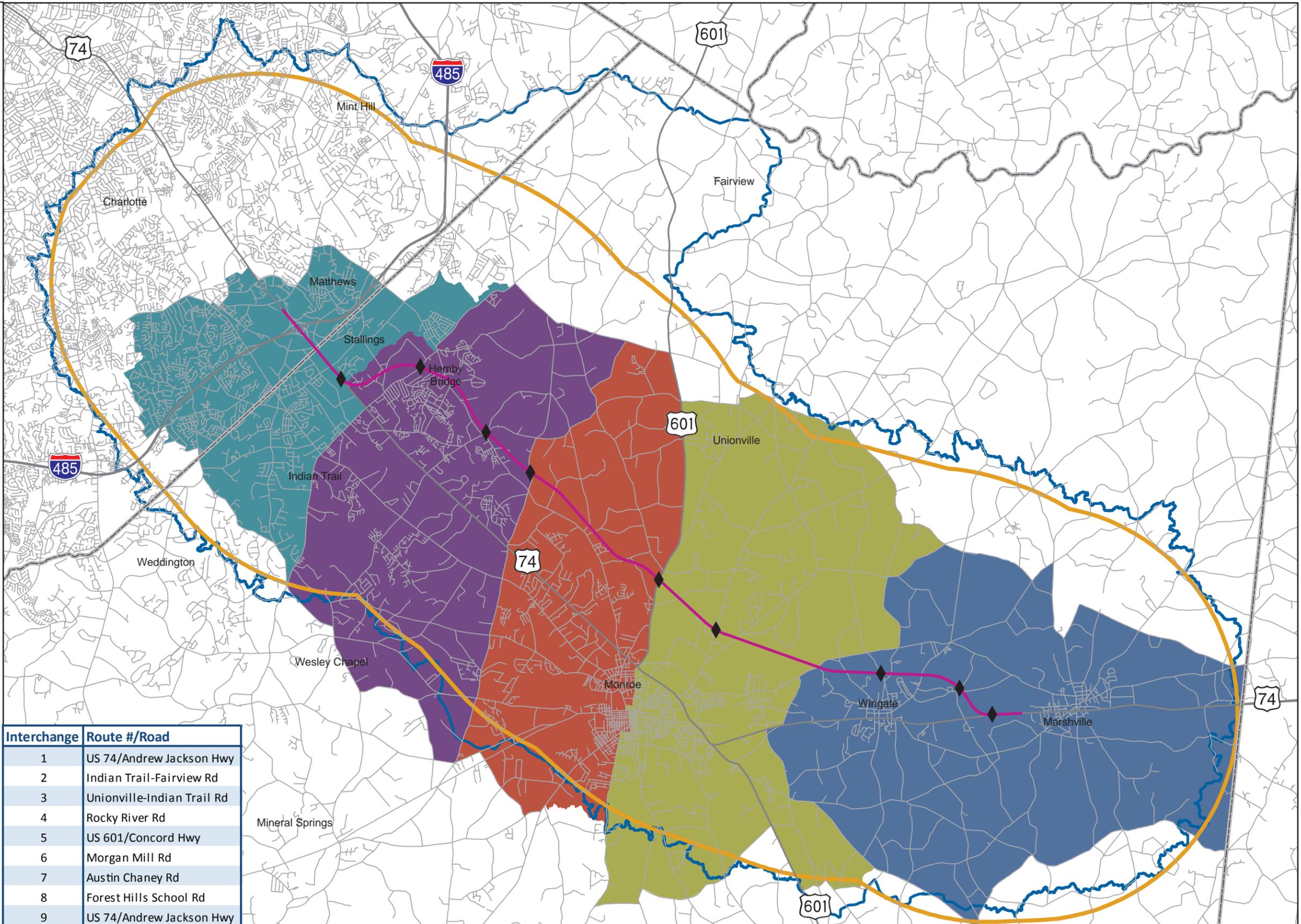


Interchange	Route #/Road
1	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy
2	Indian Trail-Fairview Rd
3	Unionville-Indian Trail Rd
4	Rocky River Rd
5	US 601/Concord Hwy
6	Morgan Mill Rd
7	Austin Chaney Rd
8	Forest Hills School Rd
9	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy



### Map 11: Kenan Institute Study Zones and ICE FLUSAs

- ◆ Interchanges
  - RPA Centerline
  - ▭ FLUSA (Qualitative ICE)
  - ▭ FLUSA (Quantitative ICE)
- Kenan Study Zones**
- 1
  - 2
  - 3
  - 4
  - 5



Interchange	Route #/Road
1	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy
2	Indian Trail-Fairview Rd
3	Unionville-Indian Trail Rd
4	Rocky River Rd
5	US 601/Concord Hwy
6	Morgan Mill Rd
7	Austin Chaney Rd
8	Forest Hills School Rd
9	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy

# Map 12: Household Growth by TAZ

2009 Projections

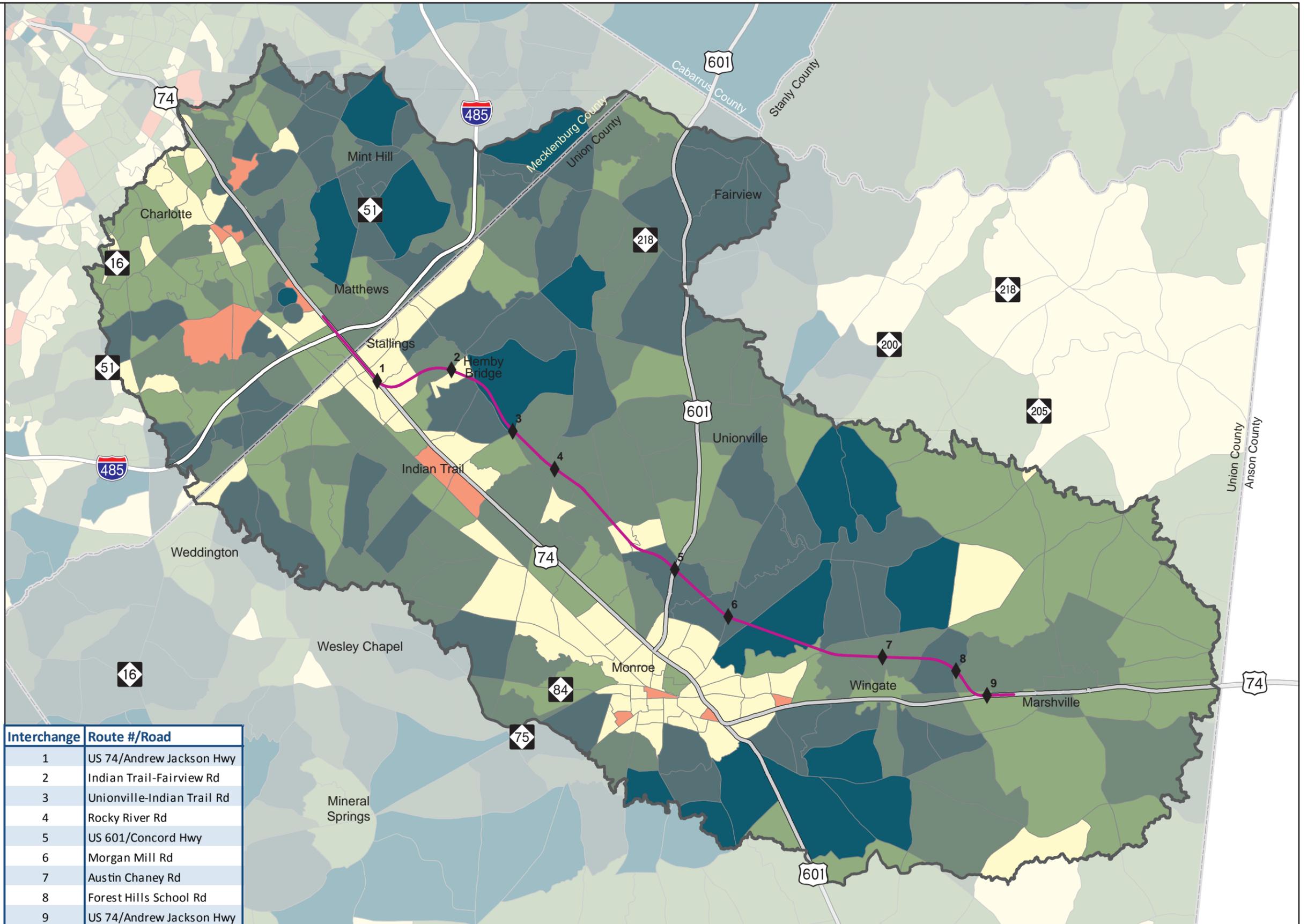
-  Study Area
-  Interchanges
-  RPA Centerline

## Household Growth 2005-2030

-  < 0
-  1 - 50
-  51 - 100
-  101 - 200
-  201 - 500
-  >500



Interchange	Route #/Road
1	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy
2	Indian Trail-Fairview Rd
3	Unionville-Indian Trail Rd
4	Rocky River Rd
5	US 601/Concord Hwy
6	Morgan Mill Rd
7	Austin Chaney Rd
8	Forest Hills School Rd
9	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy



# Map 13: Employment Growth by TAZ

2009 Projections

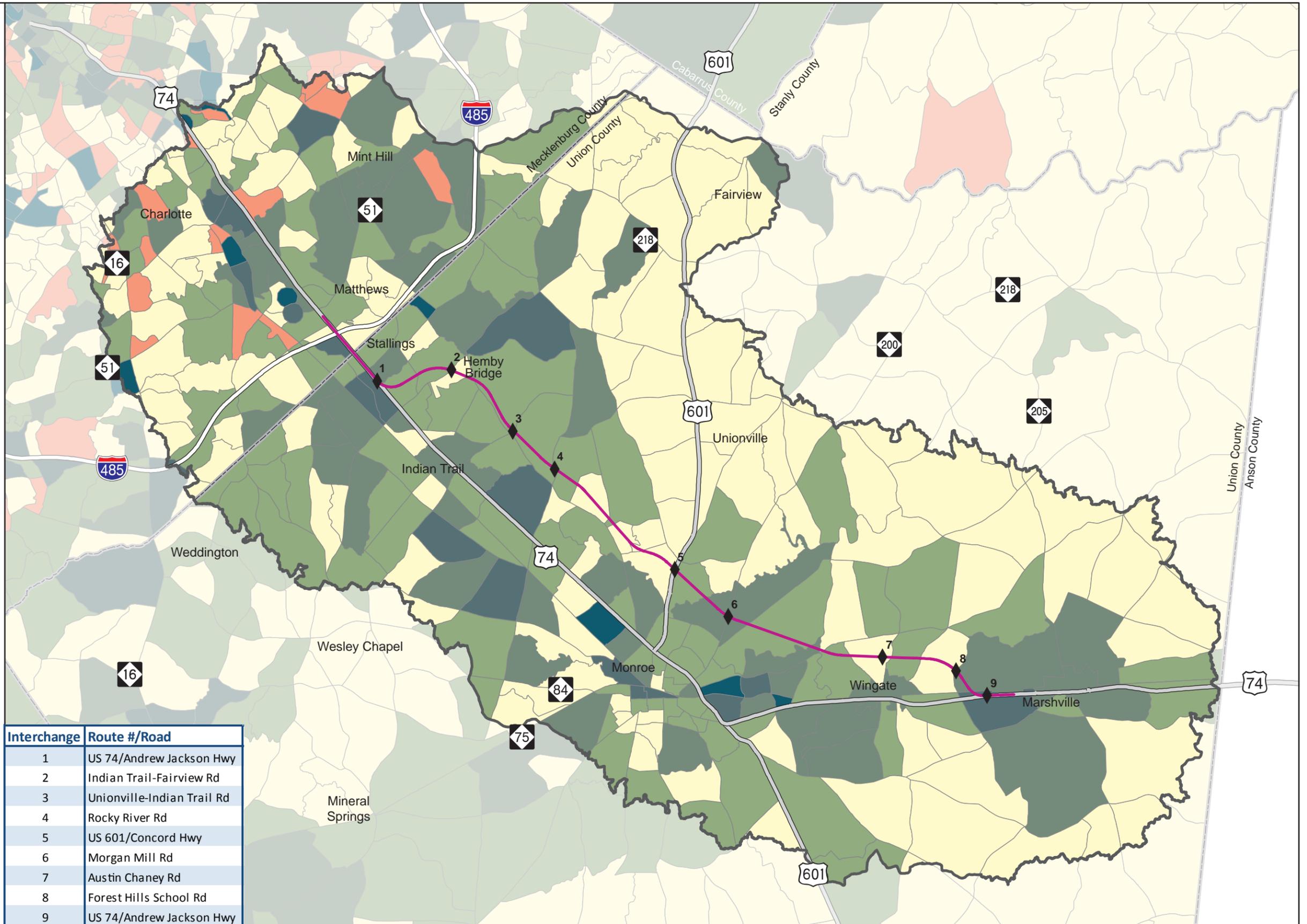
-  Study Area
-  Interchanges
-  RPA Centerline

## Employment Growth 2005-2030

-  < 0
-  1 - 150
-  151 - 350
-  351 - 700
-  701 - 1200
-  > 1200



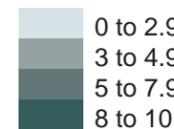
Interchange	Route #/Road
1	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy
2	Indian Trail-Fairview Rd
3	Unionville-Indian Trail Rd
4	Rocky River Rd
5	US 601/Concord Hwy
6	Morgan Mill Rd
7	Austin Chaney Rd
8	Forest Hills School Rd
9	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy



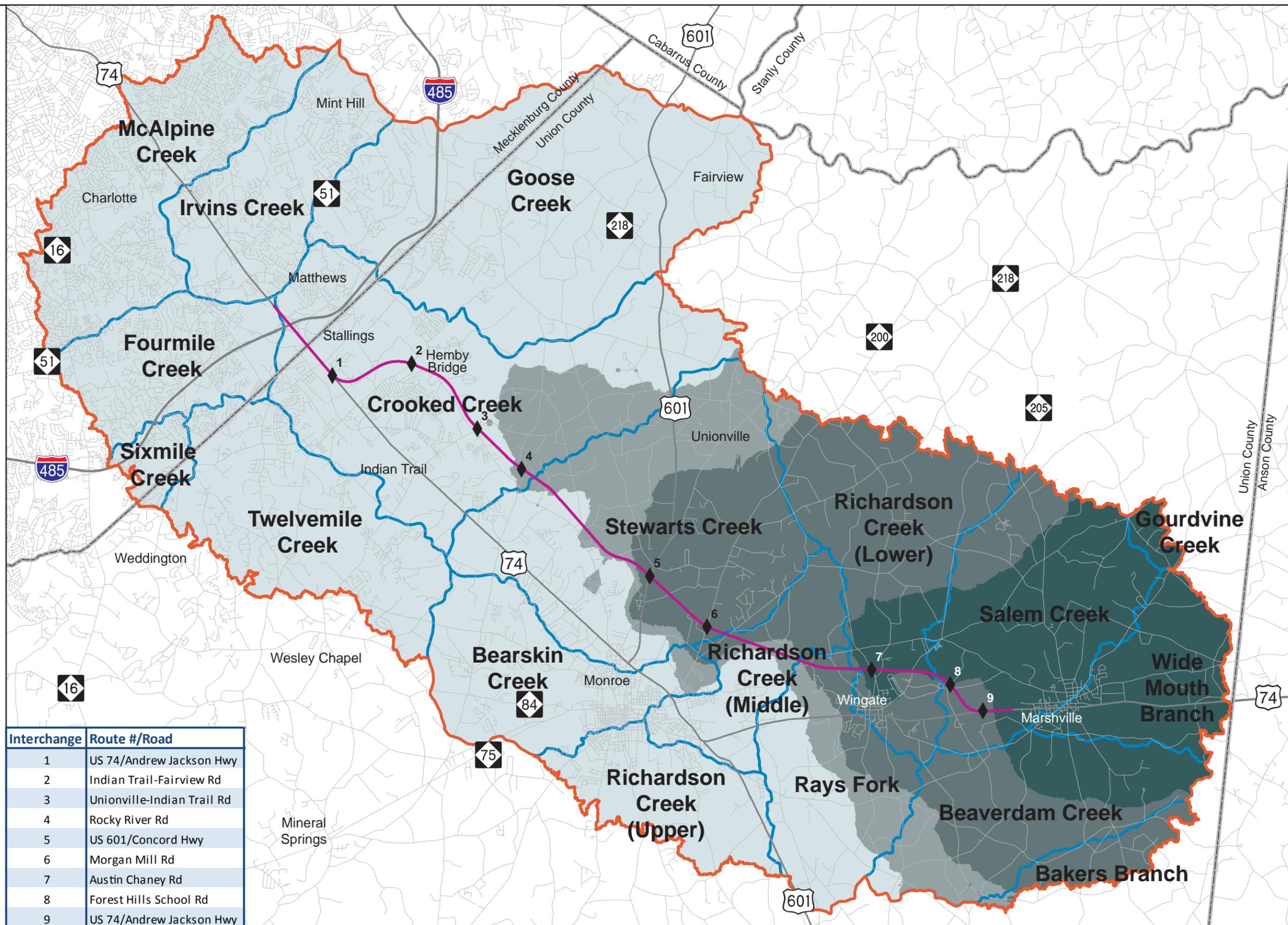
# Map 14: Comparison of Accessibility No-Build vs Build

- ◆ Interchanges
- Recommended Preferred Alternative Centerline
- ▭ Future Land Use Study Area Boundary
- ▭ Watershed Boundary

Change in Travel Time  
Decrease from  
No Build to Build (Min)



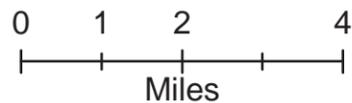
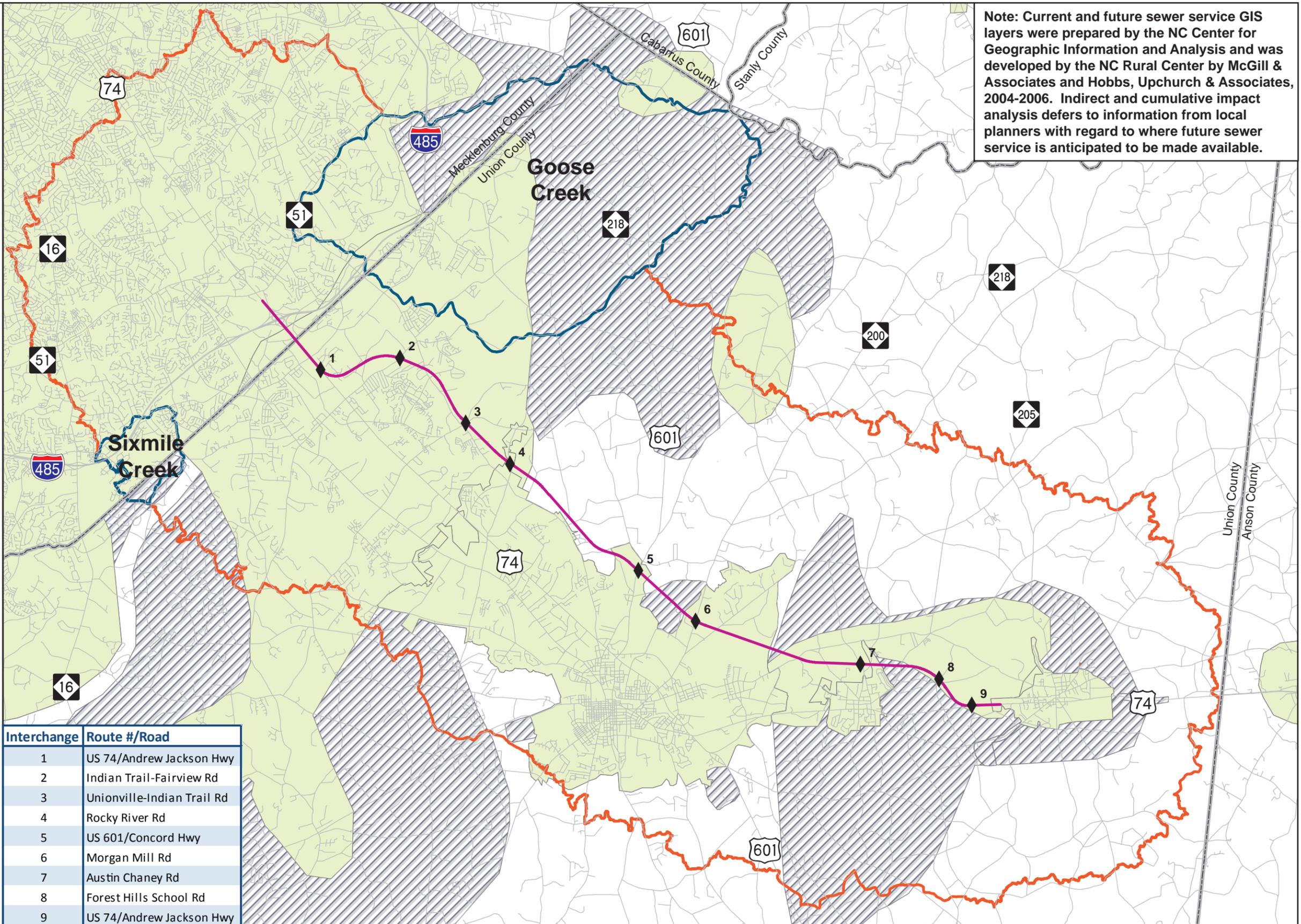
Interchange	Route #/Road
1	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy
2	Indian Trail-Fairview Rd
3	Unionville-Indian Trail Rd
4	Rocky River Rd
5	US 601/Concord Hwy
6	Morgan Mill Rd
7	Austin Chaney Rd
8	Forest Hills School Rd
9	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy



# Map 15: Sanitary Sewer Availability

Note: Current and future sewer service GIS layers were prepared by the NC Center for Geographic Information and Analysis and was developed by the NC Rural Center by McGill & Associates and Hobbs, Upchurch & Associates, 2004-2006. Indirect and cumulative impact analysis defers to information from local planners with regard to where future sewer service is anticipated to be made available.

- ◆ Interchanges
- Recommended Preferred Alternative Centerline
- Existing Roads
- ▭ Future Land Use Study Area Boundary
- Current Sewer Service
- ▨ Future Sewer Service

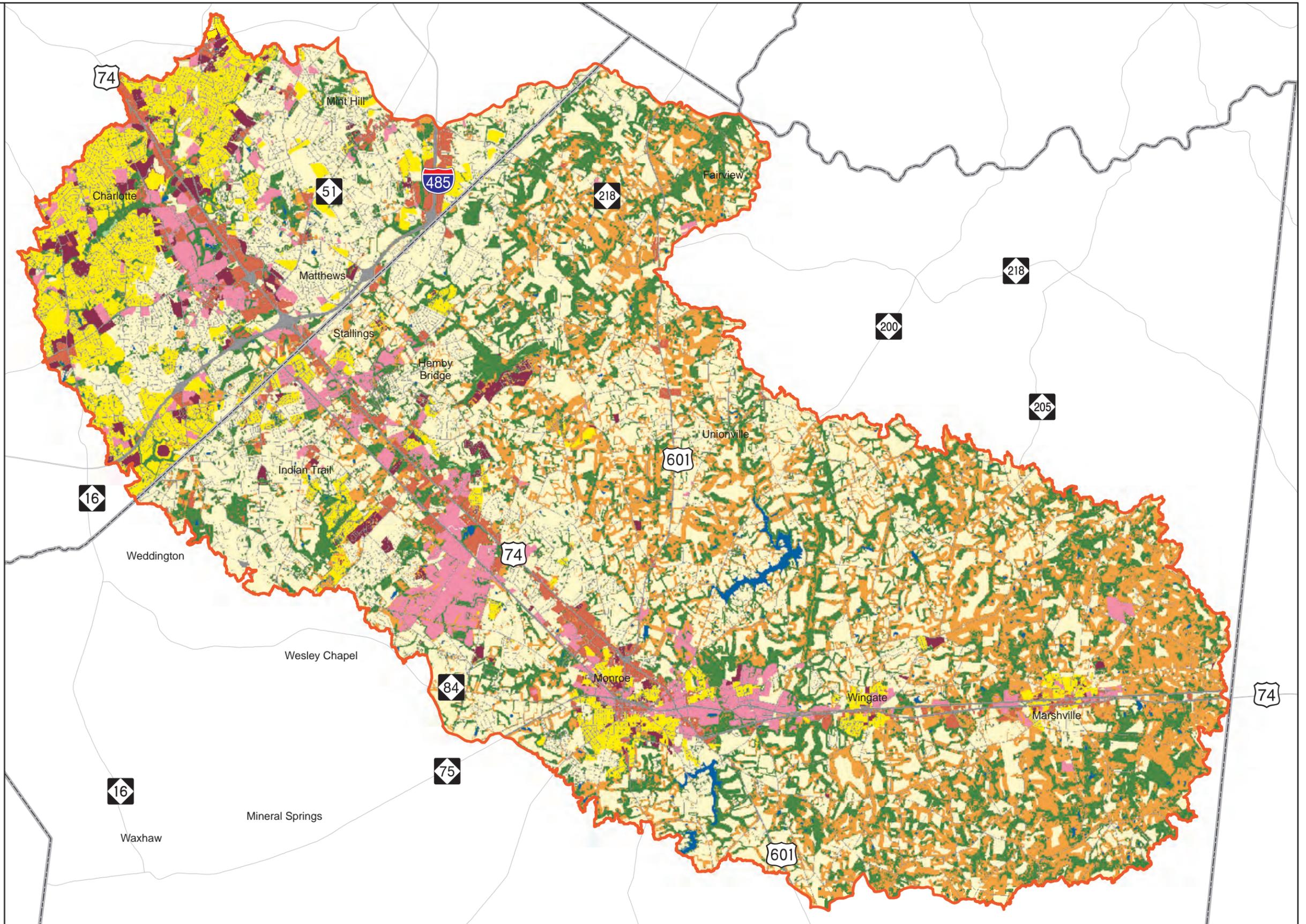


Interchange	Route #/Road
1	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy
2	Indian Trail-Fairview Rd
3	Unionville-Indian Trail Rd
4	Rocky River Rd
5	US 601/Concord Hwy
6	Morgan Mill Rd
7	Austin Chaney Rd
8	Forest Hills School Rd
9	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy

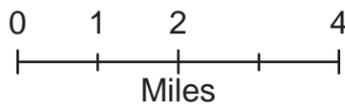
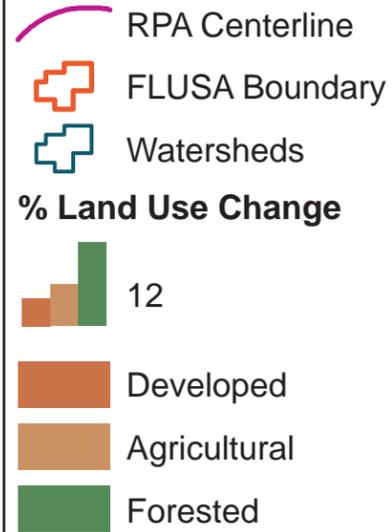
# Map 16: Updated 2030 No-Build Land Use Scenario

## No Build Land Use

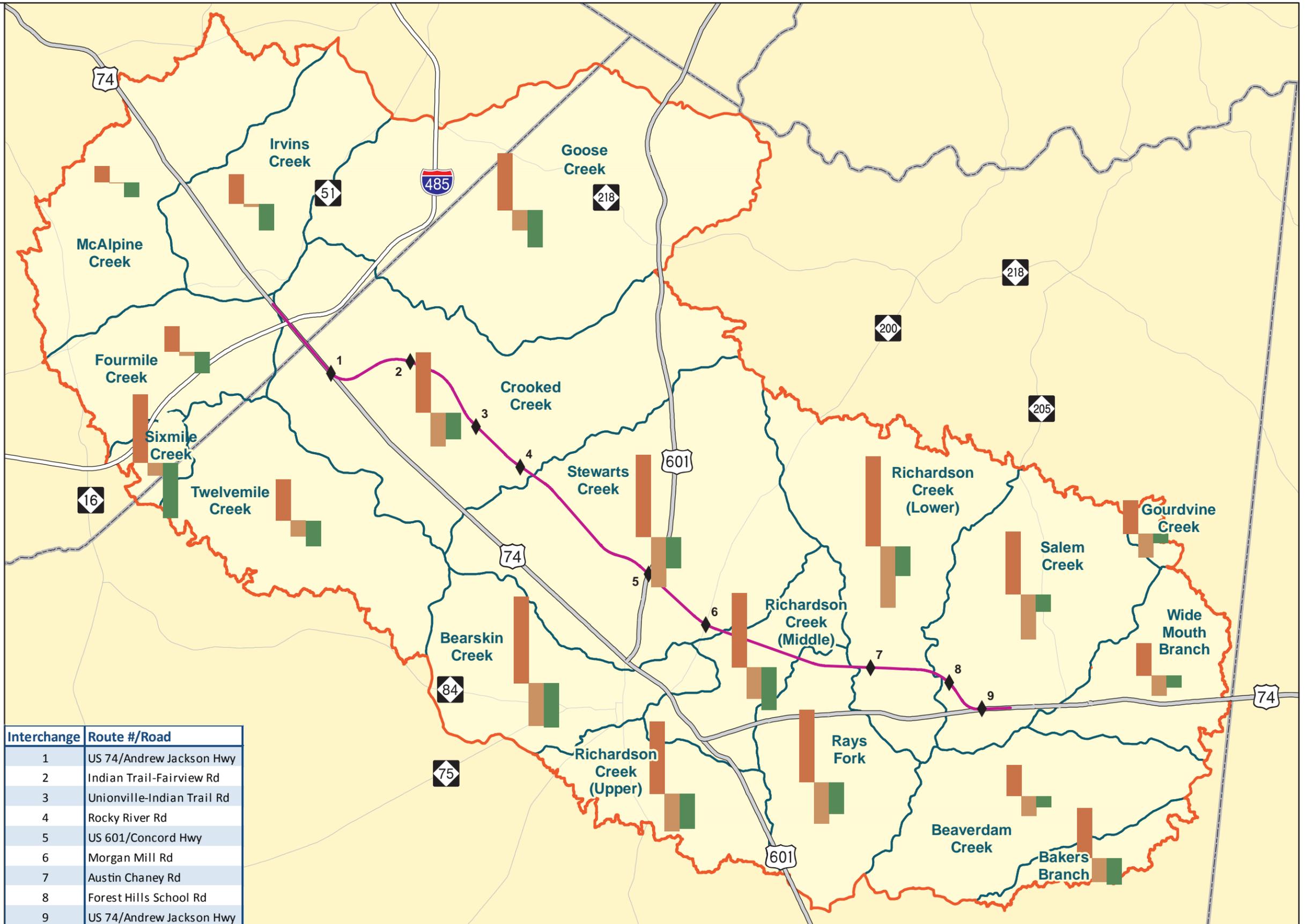
-  Agricultural Fields
-  Barren
-  Commercial
-  Forested
-  Other Natural
-  High Density Residential
-  Industrial/Office/Institutional
-  Low Density Residential
-  Medium Density Residential
-  Open Water
-  Transportation
-  FLUSA Boundary



### Map 17: Change in Land Use from Baseline to No-Build By Watershed



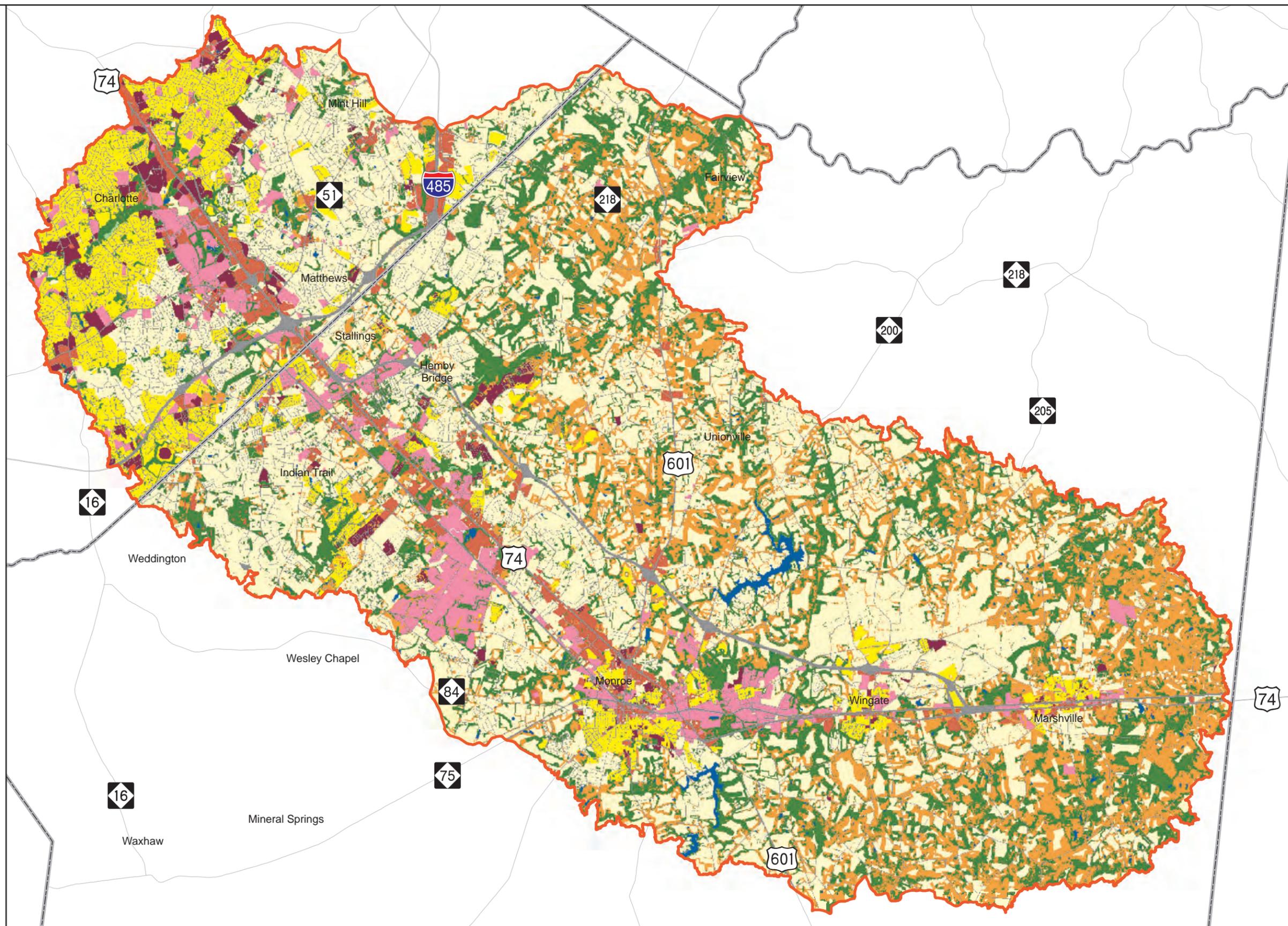
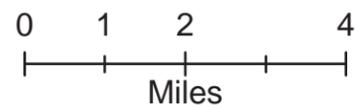
Interchange	Route #/Road
1	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy
2	Indian Trail-Fairview Rd
3	Unionville-Indian Trail Rd
4	Rocky River Rd
5	US 601/Concord Hwy
6	Morgan Mill Rd
7	Austin Chaney Rd
8	Forest Hills School Rd
9	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy



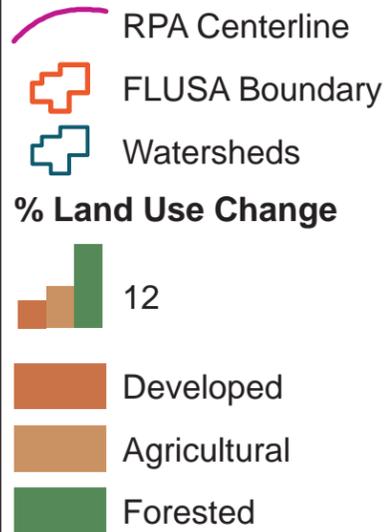
# Map 18: Updated 2030 Build Land Use Scenario

## Build Land Use

-  Agricultural Fields
-  Barren
-  Commercial
-  Forested
-  Other Natural
-  High Density Residential
-  Industrial/Office/Institutional
-  Low Density Residential
-  Medium Density Residential
-  Open Water
-  Transportation
-  FLUSA Boundary



### Map 19: Change in Land Use from No-Build to Build Land Use



Interchange	Route #/Road
1	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy
2	Indian Trail-Fairview Rd
3	Unionville-Indian Trail Rd
4	Rocky River Rd
5	US 601/Concord Hwy
6	Morgan Mill Rd
7	Austin Chaney Rd
8	Forest Hills School Rd
9	US 74/Andrew Jackson Hwy



## Appendix A Interview Summaries

## Appendix B

# Growth Trends and Factors Technical Memorandum

Appendix C  
Operations Research and Education Laboratory Report

## Appendix D

# Metrolina Model Memorandum of Agreement

## Appendix E LUSAM Documentation

Appendix F  
2008 Interim Projections LUSAM Model Inputs and  
Outputs

## Appendix G

### 2009 Projections LUSAM Model Inputs and Outputs

## Appendix H Hammer Report

## Appendix I Smith Report

Appendix J  
Land Use and Socio-Economic Data and Projections for  
the Greater Charlotte Region

Appendix K  
Kenan Institute Report

## Appendix L Hartgen Analysis

## Appendix M

# MRM Raw Model Volume Traffic Comparison

**APPENDIX E-2**  
**SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION REFERENCED IN THE**  
**ICE TECHNICAL REPORT**

- Interim Guidance on the Application of Travel and Land Use Forecasting in NEPA (FHWA, March 2010) ..... E2-1
- Induced Travel: Frequently Asked Questions (FHWA Web site: [www.fhwa.gov/planning/itfaq.cfm](http://www.fhwa.gov/planning/itfaq.cfm)) ..... E2-66

**This page was intentionally left blank.**

**INTERIM GUIDANCE ON THE APPLICATION OF TRAVEL AND  
LAND USE FORECASTING IN NEPA**

**FEDERAL HIGHWAY ADMINISTRATION**

**MARCH 2010**

## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

---

Travel and land use forecasting is critical to project development and National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) processes. In light of the importance of forecasting, the high variation in practice, and the litigation risk involved, the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) created this guidance to encourage improvement in how project-level forecasting is applied in the context of the NEPA process. While technical guidelines for producing forecasts for projects have been documented by others, little has been published on the procedural or process considerations in forecasting. This guidance attempts to fill that gap. The primary audiences are NEPA project managers, FHWA staff, forecasting groups at Metropolitan Planning Organizations (MPOs) and State Departments of Transportation (DOTs), as well as consultants that support MPOs and DOTs in conducting corridor and NEPA studies. Following this guidance is strictly voluntary. It is based on lessons learned and best practices and does not constitute the establishment of an FHWA standard. Not all studies are the same; therefore this guidance is intended to be non-prescriptive, and its application flexible and scalable to the type and complexity of the travel analysis to be undertaken.

This guidance document identifies seven key considerations:

- **Assess project conditions and scope the forecasting needs of the study:** It is crucial to scope the forecasting effort to meet the project analysis, decision-maker and stakeholder needs in the study area. For this reason it is useful to begin the forecasting process by understanding the requirements of the study and anticipating decision-maker and stakeholder interests with respect to forecasting.
- **Review the suitability of modeling methods, tools, and underlying data:** It is important that the study team review the suitability of available modeling methods and the underlying data, including consideration of the currency and quality of the model data and methods, and that they analyze the data and methods' ability to adequately examine alternatives.
- **Conduct scoping and collaborate on methodologies:** Scoping is a collaborative process involving the lead agencies, resource and regulatory agencies, and the public and is typically how a NEPA study begins. It is critical for the study team to document the broad agreements reached during scoping on the assumptions to be used for the land use and travel forecasting.
- **Objective application of forecasting in alternatives analysis:** The requirement for the alternatives analysis to be an objective evaluation makes it essential for the study team to apply forecasting data and methods objectively without any bias towards a particular alternative. Important considerations include understanding uncertainty in assumptions and forecasts and how induced demand and land development effects are taken into account.
- **Project management considerations:** NEPA studies are often complex undertakings and may be accompanied by various special considerations that warrant extra attention, such as the potential for re-do analysis loops and ensuring documentation consistency.
- **Forecasting for noise and air emissions analyses:** Land use and travel demand forecasting models are used to provide inputs to noise and air quality assessments. It is important that assumptions that are made in general forecasting applications as part of the NEPA study are consistent with those used in the noise and air quality analyses.
- **Documentation and archiving:** It is important for NEPA documentation to include enough technical detail to explain complex information in an understandable manner, and to describe how analytical methods were chosen, what assumptions were made, and who made those choices.

As a companion to this guidance, the FHWA is creating a document that will include case studies and best practices to help further the improvement of forecasting techniques at the project level. Training and technical assistance will also be made available to provide educational and peer exchange opportunities to State DOTs, MPOs, resource agencies, and the consultant community, to encourage needed dialogue and discussion to improve the state-of-the-practice.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

<b>1.0</b>	<b>BACKGROUND .....</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	Rationale and Need for Guidance .....	1
1.2	Process for Developing Guidance .....	1
1.3	Using the Guidance .....	2
1.4	Evolving Forecasting Methods .....	2
<b>2.0</b>	<b>GUIDANCE .....</b>	<b>3</b>
2.1	Project Conditions and Forecasting Needs .....	3
2.1.1	<i>Conceptual Review of Anticipated Analysis</i> .....	3
2.1.2	<i>Establishment of Forecasting Analysis Requirements</i> .....	4
2.1.3	<i>Consideration of Tools Required to Forecast Needs</i> .....	6
2.1.4	<i>Review of Prior Forecasts and Technical Issues</i> .....	6
2.1.5	<i>Incorporating Analyses Done in Transportation Planning Studies</i> .....	6
2.1.6	<i>Documentation of Project Conditions and Forecasting Needs</i> .....	7
2.2	Suitability of Modeling Methods, Tools, and Underlying Data .....	8
2.2.1	<i>Age of Forecasts, Models, Data, and Methods</i> .....	8
2.2.2	<i>Calibration, Validation, and Reasonableness Checking of Travel Models</i> .....	9
2.2.3	<i>Calibration, Validation, and Reasonableness Checking of Land Use Forecasts</i> .....	11
2.2.4	<i>Policy Evaluation Considerations</i> .....	12
2.2.5	<i>Advancing Technologies and Methods</i> .....	14
2.2.6	<i>Consideration of Peer Review</i> .....	15
2.2.7	<i>Documentation of Suitability of Modeling Methods, Tools, and Underlying Data</i> .....	16
2.3	Scoping and Collaboration on Methodologies .....	16
2.3.1	<i>Reaching Consensus on Forecasting Methodologies</i> .....	17
2.3.2	<i>Documentation of Scoping and Interaction with Other Agencies</i> .....	18
2.4	Forecasting in Alternatives Analysis .....	18
2.4.1	<i>Overview of Transportation-related Effects and Impacts</i> .....	18
2.4.2	<i>Objective Application of Forecasting Data and Methods</i> .....	21
2.4.3	<i>Refinement of the Analysis during Screening</i> .....	22
2.4.4	<i>Development of Forecast Confidence</i> .....	23
2.4.5	<i>Moving from Regional Model Output to a Project Level Forecast</i> .....	23
2.4.6	<i>Addressing Land Development or Redistribution Effects</i> .....	24
2.4.7	<i>Documentation of Forecasting in Alternatives Analysis</i> .....	30
2.5	Project Management Considerations .....	30
2.5.1	<i>Potential for Reevaluating Analysis</i> .....	30
2.5.2	<i>Consistency</i> .....	31
2.5.3	<i>Enhanced Communication between NEPA Study Team and Forecasting Practitioners</i> .....	32
2.5.4	<i>Considerations for Developing Scopes of Work for Forecasting Practitioners</i> .....	32

2.6	Forecasting for Noise and Air Emissions Analyses .....	33
2.6.1	<i>Noise Analysis</i> .....	33
2.6.2	<i>Air Quality Emissions Analyses</i> .....	34
2.7	Documenting and Archiving Forecast Analyses .....	36
2.7.1	<i>Documenting Forecast Analyses</i> .....	36
2.7.2	<i>Archiving Forecast Analyses</i> .....	38
<b>3.0</b>	<b>CONCLUSION.....</b>	<b>38</b>
<b>4.0</b>	<b>APPENDICES.....</b>	<b>39</b>
4.1	Case Law Summary (January 2009).....	39
4.1.1	<i>Introduction</i> .....	39
4.1.2	<i>Standard of Review</i> .....	39
4.1.3	<i>Travel and Land Use Forecasts: When Are They Relevant?</i> .....	42
4.1.4	<i>Issues Affecting Sufficiency Under NEPA</i> .....	46
4.1.5	<i>Linking Planning and NEPA</i> .....	58
4.2	Definitions.....	60

## 1.0 BACKGROUND

---

### 1.1 Rationale and Need for Guidance

Travel and land use forecasting is critical to project development and National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) processes. Forecasts provide important information to project managers and decision-makers, and provide foundations for determining purpose and need. They are essential in evaluating: the performance of alternatives; the estimation of environmental impacts such as noise and safety (based on traffic volume or exposure) and emissions (based on traffic volume and speed); induced land development effects (change in land development patterns due to changes in accessibility); and resulting indirect and/or cumulative effects (such as watershed effects). In short, travel and land use forecasting is integral to a wide array of corridor and NEPA impact assessments and analyses.

Forecasting methodologies and their applications are often a source of significant disagreement among agencies and interest groups, and are frequently the focus of project-level litigation. While many of the issues raised are technical and methodological, often they are process-related or procedural in nature: misunderstandings regarding what work was done, what assumptions were made or input used, how the methods and approaches were chosen, and how the procedures were carried out. Forecasting is not a heavily legislated or regulated area of science, and is thus mainly driven by professional practice. This situation makes assessments of standards of practice difficult, and results in a large variation in practice and experience among transportation and resource agencies and consultants.

In light of the importance of forecasting in project development and NEPA, the high variation in practice, and the litigation risk involved, the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) created this guidance to encourage improvement in the state-of-the-practice in relation to how project-level forecasting is applied in the context of the NEPA process. While technical guidelines for producing forecasts for projects have been documented by others,<sup>1</sup> little has been published on the procedural or process considerations in forecasting (how to apply forecasting in the context of NEPA). This guidance attempts to fill that gap.

### 1.2 Process for Developing Guidance

In 2007, the FHWA initiated a project to provide practitioners and stakeholders with process and procedural guidance on how to apply forecasting in the context of project development and NEPA studies. The project was scoped to include:

- Creation of an FHWA expert panel, consisting of modeling, NEPA, and planning experts to advise the project
- Outreach to stakeholders and interest groups
- Formulation of project development and NEPA guidance and a review of relevant case law
- Development of a guidebook to include case studies and best practice examples
- Creation of training materials and technical assistance

Early in 2008, the FHWA expert panel was assembled to discuss and provide advice on the purpose and format of the guidance, and how to move forward on supporting activities. The panel included active participation by FHWA headquarters and field offices. The panel provided invaluable input to the guidance development process. In addition, during 2008 and 2009, the FHWA Office of Chief Counsel developed a case law summary that related forecasting issues and the NEPA process; this was also used to inform the guidance. Information on the project was provided to stakeholder and interest groups at various national meetings and venues.

---

<sup>1</sup> See *NCHRP 255: Highway Traffic Data for Urbanized Area Project Planning and Design* (1982), available at: [http://www.oregon.gov/ODOT/TD/TPAU/references.shtml#NCHRP\\_Report\\_255](http://www.oregon.gov/ODOT/TD/TPAU/references.shtml#NCHRP_Report_255)

## 1.3 Using the Guidance

This guidance is intended to provide assistance to NEPA and forecasting practitioners on improving how forecasting is used and applied in the project development and NEPA processes. It does not examine the details of how to calibrate and validate models; rather, it provides procedural and process considerations in developing forecasts in NEPA studies. The primary audiences are NEPA project managers, FHWA staff, forecasting groups at Metropolitan Planning Organizations (MPOs) and State Departments of Transportation (DOTs), as well as consultants that support MPOs and DOTs in conducting corridor and NEPA studies.

Following this guidance is strictly voluntary,<sup>2</sup> and it is suggested that it be adjusted to the individual planning and project contexts, and the scale, size and capabilities of the project and the lead agencies. The guidance is based on lessons learned and best practices and does not constitute the establishment of an FHWA standard. Not all studies are the same; therefore this guidance is intended to be non-prescriptive, and its application flexible and scalable to the type and complexity of the travel analysis to be undertaken.

It is also intended that this guidance will improve communication between forecasters and NEPA practitioners. Travel and land use forecasters are encouraged to demonstrate and explain the validity of the forecasting process along with the reasonableness of the forecasts as a way to mitigate litigation risk. Significant efforts were made to consider relevant case law in the creation of the guidance and, where applicable, specific cases are cited. Hopefully, applying this guidance will assist agencies in creating better and more legally defensible forecasting applications.

## 1.4 Evolving Forecasting Methods

The state-of-the-art and the state-of-the-practice in travel forecasting are always evolving, and the practice typically changes based on careful consideration of the potential or known benefits and costs of different approaches. While this guidance outlines important considerations in developing and documenting forecasts, the intent is not to advocate specific technical model design elements or models to produce forecasts. Because the practice is constantly evolving, forecasting methods are evaluated based on what peers are successfully doing with a reasonable effort.<sup>3</sup>

Travel forecasting methods are evolving because of: (1) advancements in software and hardware; (2) improved data collection methods; (3) a need for improved approaches for analyzing the wide array of transportation-related policies, pricing initiatives, and investments; and (4) the evolution of planning and project development processes and regulations. Each of these factors was considered when this guidance was drafted.

Clearly, it is very important that the methods utilized to produce forecasts are defensible and that the forecasts are reasonable. The specific methods used to produce forecasts can and do vary widely based on the timeframe for the study, and the defensibility of the methods must be judged based on the needs of the study. While certain aspects of models and approaches to forecasting are relatively common, well understood, and accepted, it can often be difficult to judge the merits, costs, and schedule considerations of one modeling approach over another. Additionally, it is not always the case that more difficult or costly modeling methods produce the best forecasts. One motivation for this guidance is to present a framework for considering these challenges in the context of a NEPA study where the forecasts may be questioned and the methods used to produce forecasts will be reviewed and compared to applications elsewhere.

---

<sup>2</sup> There are instances where this guidance references regulatory requirements; following those regulatory requirements is not voluntary

<sup>3</sup> For more information about the latest forecasting techniques see the FHWA's Travel Model Improvement Program (TMIP) website: <http://tmip.fhwa.dot.gov>, or contact TMIP staff

## 2.0 GUIDANCE

---

This guidance document is organized around seven key considerations: (1) the project conditions and forecasting needs of the study; (2) the suitability of modeling methods, tools, and underlying data; (3) scoping and collaboration on methodologies; (4) forecasting in the alternatives analysis; (5) project management considerations; (6) forecasting for noise and air emissions analyses; and (7) documentation and archiving.

### 2.1 Project Conditions and Forecasting Needs

It is crucial to scope the forecasting effort to meet the project analysis, decision-maker and stakeholder needs in the study area. For this reason it is useful to begin the forecasting process by understanding the requirements of the study and anticipating decision-maker and stakeholder interests with respect to forecasting.

Far too often, the forecasting process is not given enough thoughtful proactive attention, and it is not scoped in a detailed manner that will minimize or account for potential issues or problems. It is common for one of the first exercises to be the production of a no-build forecast, with little consideration given to the credibility of and the assumptions made in the forecast. If, instead, the NEPA study team<sup>4</sup> determines the appropriate level of the forecasting effort at the outset and begins by ensuring the suitability of the tools, then the NEPA process can proceed more reasonably.

#### 2.1.1 Conceptual Review of Anticipated Analysis

The NEPA lead agencies often define the study area while also developing the purpose and need statement. They typically base the boundary of the study area on the logical geographic termini, the project purpose and need, and the expected limits of potential impacts. It is important that the study area be large enough to encompass the range of alternatives that will be developed to meet the project purpose and need. The area within which transportation impacts can be measured will likely be substantially larger than the area within which direct environmental impacts are measured. It is important to ensure that the forecasting is extensive enough in its geographic reach to reasonably estimate the transportation and land development impacts.

An early assessment of the current and anticipated travel demand in the study area is important to the success of both the NEPA process and the forecasting effort. It is helpful to document what is understood about the existing travel demand and growth potential in the corridor or area being evaluated. For example:

- What is the nature of demand in the corridor in terms of trucks versus passenger cars, through versus local trips, or non-discretionary trips (such as commute to work) versus discretionary trips (such as shopping trips)?
- Are there unique major generators in the corridor?
- What magnitude of growth in travel demand is anticipated?
- To what extent is the need for the project based on today's travel conditions versus anticipation of growth?

Answers to these questions, as well as others, can inform data collection and help assess the suitability of the forecasting models.

---

<sup>4</sup> "The study team" refers to the lead agencies and their staff and consultants conducting the analysis for the study

## 2.1.2 Establishment of Forecasting Analysis Requirements

Once the lead agencies have considered the anticipated study needs, it is important to establish the travel forecasting requirements for the study. The principal forecasting analysis requirements to be defined early in the process include:

- Specifying the analysis years
- Identifying the geographic scope of the transportation and land development analysis
- Considering the level of detail required in the analysis
- Outlining an initial list of what travel and land use-related or -dependent impacts are to be estimated (see section 2.4.1 on direct, indirect, and cumulative impacts).

### 2.1.2.1 Identifying Analysis Years

Selecting the appropriate timeframes for analysis is essential. Forecasters typically use a 20- to 30-year horizon for long-range transportation planning purposes. In addition to a base year and a future forecast year, intermediate forecast years are usually considered, including (most notably) the opening date of the project. It is common for these intermediate forecast years to be chosen to correspond to future [planning horizons](#) already examined in the region or State's long-range plan since modeling inputs, such as land use forecasts, for these years are readily available. Table 1 presents a list of possible analysis years.

Table1: Possible analysis years for travel forecasting

<b>Base Years</b>	<b>Base model year</b>	The calibration year for the travel model
	<b>Base project year</b>	This could be different from the base model year; it is an updated base year that is validated and is as close as possible to the current year
<b>Forecast Years</b>	<b>Open-to-traffic year</b>	Expected future year that the project will open; in the case of phased projects this might be a sequence of intermediate forecast years
	<b>Plan horizon year</b>	A future forecast year that often corresponds with the long-range plan horizon
	<b>Design year</b>	An alternative future forecast year for the project that may be earlier or further into the future than the forecast year

The appropriate base and future analysis years for a particular study may not align with the available analysis years, which may lead the study team to update the travel model's base year and/or create new land use and travel forecasts for NEPA analysis. Two common examples of this situation are:

- The travel model's base year is several years ago and travel demand in the study area has changed. A more recent base year, as close to the current year as possible, is needed so that the travel model adequately represents current travel demand in the study area.
- The planning horizon year is different from the design year of the project. For example, the planning horizon is 25 years in the future and the design year of the project is 30 years.

Similarly, air quality or noise analysis requirements are a consideration; for example, when a hot-spot or noise analysis is needed this may require the selection of a unique analysis year(s) for that work.<sup>5</sup>

It is important for assumptions regarding open-to-traffic years to be explicit and discussed in the documentation. Also, a project might not rely on future performance to meet purpose and need, and its "design year" may be shorter, or the project is designed to manage current congestion. In that case, while

<sup>5</sup> See Section 2.5 for more information

forecasts could be required for potential impacts, forecasting to support purpose and need is less essential.

Phasing and sequencing considerations are also crucial when the study team is establishing forecasting analysis requirements. If an alternative will be implemented over time, or if alternatives could be implemented with phases in different sequences (for example the sections of a new highway may be built in phases as travel demand increases over time) then it is important for these assumptions to be discussed in the documentation as they will lead to particular analysis needs, such as intermediate analysis years and additional road network and land use assumptions.

### **2.1.2.2 Geographic Scope of Analysis**

It is important to ensure that the forecasting is extensive enough in its geographic reach to estimate travel behavior, transportation, and land development effects.<sup>6</sup> Unique issues may arise when applying a model to evaluate a project near a model boundary. In such cases, model refinements may be needed. In these boundary conditions the traffic analysis zones (TAZs) are typically large, the coded road network is sparse, and travel patterns are heavily affected by external demand. Taken together, these issues lead to both less detail and less model sensitivity. If the project is proximate to the boundary of the model area, it is suggested that the study team code a more detailed road network. It is also suggested that the study team consider both adding more detail to the TAZ structure and expansion of the model to extend its boundary. Refining or expanding the model may lead to significant efforts such as the collection of additional land use data and the need to forecast land use changes for that area, the need to do additional model validation, or, in the case of expanding the model, the integration of land use data and forecasts from a different planning jurisdiction.

### **2.1.2.3 Level of Detail Required in the Analysis**

Using a variety of methods, one can produce forecasts and output indicators at a regional scale (e.g., regional vehicle miles traveled, or VMT), at a microscopic scale (e.g., intersection turning movements), and at a corridor scale (e.g., difference in roadway volumes under two scenarios).<sup>7</sup> It is important for the lead agencies to determine the appropriate level of detail for forecasting analysis based on the specifics of the study, including considerations related to the stage of the project development process and stakeholder issues. It is suggested that performance measures reflect non-automobile impacts, such as transit use. It is important for the lead agencies to select the performance measures so that the impacts of each alternative can be fully explained in the NEPA documentation. It is also important to select the performance measures that can illustrate the relative merits of each alternative in the context of the project purpose and need.

The project development process can be long, with varying levels of forecasting detail typically necessary at different stages in the process; it is essential to avoid confusing *detail* with *accuracy*. Because more detail tends to require more time and effort, it is generally advised to begin a study focusing on more aggregated and large-scale impacts, particularly when the possible alternatives are numerous (pre-screening) or forecasting methods are being refined. Different forecasting tools and processes allow for analysis at different geographic scales; it is important for the study team to judge and explain which modeling tools are appropriate for which analyses and also to recognize the level of detail required at each stage in the study. Forecasting is an iterative process, and with iteration generally comes more confidence and ability to add detail to better inform complex decisions.

---

<sup>6</sup> Often different study areas exist on the same project for a variety of reasons, for example the Area of Potential Effect under Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act will not be the same as study areas for air or noise impacts or for wetland mitigation purposes

<sup>7</sup> See, for example, *Volume I: Traffic Analysis Tools Primer* (July 2004) in the FHWA Traffic Analysis Toolbox

### **2.1.3 Consideration of Tools Required to Forecast Needs**

It is suggested that the lead agencies prepare a brief history describing the tools that have been used to make forecasts in the corridor and region. Once the available data and models have been reviewed, it is important for the study team to consider what data and tools are appropriate for the analyses. Depending on the needs of the study, this can include consideration of readily available data and models, as well as supplementing what is available. As the study team considers applying current models to evaluate the increasingly complex strategies and policies of interest in the project area, it is important to assess the limitations and sensitivity of those models. By identifying the significant issues related to alternatives to be considered, such as pricing, high-occupancy vehicles (HOVs), transit, and transportation control measures, the study team can ensure that methodology and analysis decisions are made with these factors in mind.

In many areas where land use and travel demand models are frequently used in planning and project development, multiple users may exist. For example, modeling staff within the MPO or DOT may be undertaking modifications to the land use or travel model as part of an ongoing model improvement process. In addition, consultants working on other studies in the region may be incorporating additional model functionality and/or correcting existing model errors and deficiencies. It is therefore critically important that the study team consider modeling tools under development, or ones that might be developed in the short term, for inclusion in the land use and travel forecasting process, especially when an improvement to the model would directly affect the project being studied. This is particularly true when the study team expects the project development process to be relatively long or complicated. See section 2.2.1 for additional discussion of these issues.

### **2.1.4 Review of Prior Forecasts and Technical Issues**

Before producing new forecasts, it is useful to critically review past efforts to be aware of the prior work and to improve on or complement that work. In its review of prior planning studies and prior NEPA studies either for the current study project or other projects in or close to the same study area, it is important for the study team to consider travel and land use forecasting needs, in terms of both the forecasts themselves and any known technical concerns related to forecasting. In many cases, projects have been in the planning phase for 10, 20, or more years, and transportation plans identify specific alternatives. To some degree, past decisions are supported by these prior analyses. Therefore, it is critical to assess the comprehensiveness and usefulness of past analyses and compare new analyses and forecasts to previously documented forecasts. In some cases, lead agencies in NEPA may choose to directly use previously developed forecasts. It is recommended that this decision be taken with some care, as previously developed forecasts may not have been subject to the same rigorous review that forecasts produced as part of a NEPA study are likely to face. See section 2.1.5 below for more detail.

To the extent that prior litigation has raised issues related to land use and travel forecasting in the project's region or identified issues in the corridor germane to forecasting, it is important to ensure that these issues are fully addressed or that prior responses are understood and reconsidered. It is important for the study team to describe and clearly and completely address both past judgments in cases pertaining to the project and any ongoing litigation. It is also important to consider and adequately address the less obvious cases that have stalled or stopped planning and project development efforts in other regions with relevance to the subject project. Remedying the concerns raised by legal findings and opinions may lead to significant changes in the team's approach to the analysis for the study.

### **2.1.5 Incorporating Analyses Done in Transportation Planning Studies**

Often, forecasts are prepared for a project or corridor prior to the beginning of the NEPA process. Forecasting may have been done as part of system-level planning activities, or as part of corridor, feasibility, or sub-area studies. At the system level, major efforts include defining the transportation problem, and developing and testing potential solutions. Many times these problems and potential solutions are identi-

fied and tested during planning because that is the scale at which they are appropriately analyzed. For example, developing system-level land development estimates is best done at a regional level, where systemic interactions between transportation and land use policies and the characteristics of existing land availability and transportation accessibility can be analyzed. Travel and land use forecasting procedures play a central role in these analyses.

Corridor, feasibility, and sub-area studies done in a transportation planning context are not as detailed as analyses performed for project-level NEPA alternatives analysis, but are often conducted to refine purpose and need in a corridor, to screen out unreasonable alternatives, and to preliminarily evaluate potential impacts of alternatives, including travel and land development effects. Again, forecasting is critical to performing these studies. All too often, these analyses are redone in the NEPA process, resulting in duplication of effort. This situation also can result in potentially undermining past analyses, and discounting public and agency involvement in the prior studies.

Recognizing these issues, the FHWA and the Federal Transit Administration (FTA) have worked over the past decade to improve the ability of agencies to utilize analyses done as part of planning studies in the NEPA process. Typically referred to as “linking planning and NEPA,” these efforts have culminated in a revision to 23 CFR Part 450 (the FHWA and FTA regulations for the Statewide and metropolitan transportation planning process), and 23 CFR Part 771 (FHWA and FTA NEPA implementing regulations).<sup>8</sup> These regulatory provisions represent new authority to the FHWA, FTA, State DOTs, and MPOs to use decisions and analyses conducted in transportation planning to be used in the NEPA process. Since forecasting is so central to planning studies and analyses, the methods and results can be incorporated by reference in the NEPA process. Such analyses or results should be made available during the NEPA scoping process.

However, the regulatory authority discussed above does not come without conditions.<sup>9</sup> The NEPA lead agencies determine the applicability and appropriateness of the methods used and the continued validity of the results before they can be used on a specific NEPA study or project. The studies must have contained a reasonable opportunity for public review and comment, must be adequately documented, and must have had appropriate interagency involvement in the efforts. From a forecasting perspective, the technical documentation must be adequate to explain and defend those decisions in the context of NEPA. Also, early public and interagency involvement in the forecasting efforts for the planning studies is essential as it helps build trust and comfort with how these analyses were performed, and increases the comfort level in using these forecasts in the NEPA process.<sup>10</sup>

## 2.1.6 Documentation of Project Conditions and Forecasting Needs

This section of the guidance has discussed the importance of beginning the analysis effort with a careful review of forecasting needs. To ensure that the findings of this review are retained and can be referred to as the analysis progresses, it is important for the study team to produce documentation of this work. A possible structure for the documentation follows.

- Conceptual review of anticipated analysis
- Establishment of forecasting analysis requirements
  - Identifying analysis years
  - Geographic scope of analysis
  - Level of detail required in the analysis
- Consideration of tools required to forecast needs
- Review of prior forecasts and technical concerns
- Incorporating analyses done in transportation planning studies

---

<sup>8</sup> See 23 CFR § 450.212 , 450.318, and Appendix A, and 23 CFR § 771.111(a)(2) and 771.123(b)

<sup>9</sup> See 23 CFR § 450.212 (b), 450.318 (b) and Appendix A

<sup>10</sup> For more information see the Planning and Environmental Linkages website at: <http://environment.fhwa.dot.gov/integ/index.asp>

A key purpose of this documentation is to demonstrate that these issues have been considered by the study team. In addition to documenting the decisions that were reached regarding technical issues such as selection of analysis years, such documentation can demonstrate the process and rationale used to make the decision, the information considered in the decision-making process, and who was involved in the decision-making process. In other words, it is very important to document that the decisions made are reasoned and thoughtful.<sup>11</sup>

## **2.2 Suitability of Modeling Methods, Tools, and Underlying Data**

Once the conditions and forecasting needs of the study have been assessed, including a consideration of the forecasting tools and requirements, it is suggested that the study team review the suitability of available modeling methods and the underlying data. For this, it is important for the study team to both consider the currency and quality of the model data and methods and analyze the data and methods' ability to adequately examine alternatives. The purpose of FHWA guidance on travel models and other published resources<sup>12</sup> is to promote good practice. Good practice in model development and application has positive consequences in project development.

### **2.2.1 Age of Forecasts, Models, Data, and Methods**

It is important for the study team to establish how current the land use forecasts, travel demand model, data, and methods are before the alternatives can be analyzed. This process may begin with identifying whether the land use forecasts and the travel demand model are the current versions adopted by the MPO or DOT and whether the methods proposed for the analysis conform to current Federal, State and local requirements, as applicable. Section 2.5.2 explains that it is also important for the study team to identify which methods are being used by concurrent NEPA studies in the same region. However, requesting and receiving the latest land use forecasts and the travel demand model available from the MPO or DOT is only the first step. It may be advisable to update certain elements of the land use forecasts, travel demand model, or model data if they are based on data that were collected a significant time prior to the study. For example, trip generation rates based on survey data collected 20 years before the study may need to be updated. It is important that the study team ensures that the data reflect the most up-to-date assumptions about the relevant transportation infrastructure and land use and socioeconomic conditions. However, there is a limit to the scope of updates to forecasts, models, and data that are required as part of the analysis for a NEPA study. If the costs for updating tools and collecting data would be "exorbitant" then 40 CFR § 1502.22 (b) may apply. It is important to document decisions regarding model updates and also why the decisions were made.

If the study team refines a land use forecast, a travel demand model, or their inputs, it is critical that the study team knows which forecast and model version are being used and, if necessary, institute a system to track and manage the versions of forecast and model tools and inputs. It is important to do more than simply state that "the model" was used to generate travel forecasts. Because the travel demand model and land use forecasts for a particular region may often be in flux (as discussed in section 2.1.3), it is recommended that the study team use the most recently adopted version of the land use forecasts and the travel demand model. Although forecast and model refinements between versions may be few and unrelated to questions pertaining to the study, it is possible that the differences in results produced by a "Version 2.2" versus a "Version 2.3" could be substantial.

An MPO or DOT will not typically adopt a new version of a travel demand model until it has been validated and the results checked for reasonableness, although the thoroughness of these checks varies. It is important to keep in mind that a version of a travel model is made up of both the model code and the various model inputs, such as land use forecasts. Therefore, it is necessary to confirm that the proper

---

<sup>11</sup> See case law summary Section 4.1.2, discussion of *North Buckhead Civic Ass'n v. Skinner*, 903 F.2d 1533, 1543 (11th Cir.1990)

<sup>12</sup> See, for example, the resources section of FHWA's Travel Model Improvement Program website: <http://tmip.fhwa.dot.gov/resources>

model code is being used with the corresponding set of model inputs that together represent the current adopted version of the model.

During the course of a study, an MPO or DOT may adopt a new land use forecast or a new version of the travel demand model. In this situation, it is important for the study team to consider the implications of changing their analysis approach to use the newly adopted forecast or model; section 2.5.1 on consideration of the potential for re-do analysis loops discusses this issue.

## 2.2.2 Calibration, Validation, and Reasonableness Checking of Travel Models

The [calibration](#), [validation](#), and [reasonableness checking](#) of travel models constitute an important and necessary sequence of steps that are taken to prepare a travel model for making reasonable forecasts.

- Calibration, where adjustments are made to the model so that current observed conditions in the study area are reasonably reproduced, ensures that the travel model's forecasts are built on a foundation that is a good representation of existing travel characteristics.
- Validation, where the sensitivity of the model to changes in inputs and assumptions is tested, ensures that the travel model responds reasonably to transportation system changes and will have the ability to produce forecasts.
- Reasonableness checks are additional tests of a model's forecasting performance, including evaluating the travel model in terms of acceptable levels of error and its ability to perform according to theoretical and logical expectations. The checks help to ensure that the model tells a coherent story about travel behavior.

Forecasts from appropriately calibrated and validated models are likely to be more useful throughout a study and raise fewer questions. It is important to demonstrate that the modeling methods proposed for the study corridor have a strong foundation in observed data, are able to represent change, and credibly compare alternatives in a forecasting setting. The calibration and validation of travel models provide the best evidence that the models adequately represent the transportation system supply characteristics and traveler behaviors that are crucial to subsequent forecasts for NEPA studies. Consequently, the lead agencies have a substantial interest in exerting appropriate efforts to calibrate and validate models.

In the context of a NEPA study, it is important for the study team to focus any calibration and validation efforts that they undertake on the study area. Typically, a regional travel demand model will have been adequately calibrated and validated at least at a regional level prior to adoption. While it is important for the study team to critically review the documentation of this effort, it is suggested that more emphasis be placed on checks at the study area level.

It is suggested that the study team scale their calibration and validation effort according to the scale of the analysis, such as its geographic scope. For example, studies that involve the analysis of major changes to transportation system supply with impacts across a large study area require a much broader calibration and validation effort than a simpler project with a smaller study area.

There are several published sources<sup>13</sup> documenting useful calibration and validation checks, and the key elements of a comprehensive review are outlined below.

**Calibration** - A meaningful calibration effort would include:

- Review of trip generation particularly at key generators in the study area
- Detailed inspection of modeled origin–destination patterns in the study area to demonstrate that they compare closely to observed travel within and through the study area

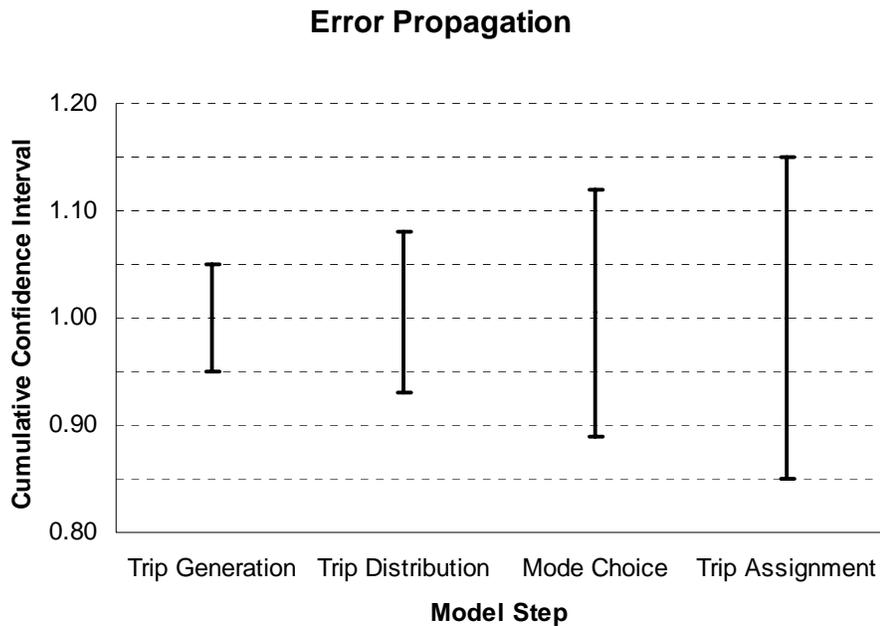
---

<sup>13</sup> See, for example, *Travel Model Improvement Program Model Validation and Reasonableness Checking Manual*, available at: <http://tmip.fhwa.dot.gov/resources/clearinghouse/docs/mvrcm/>; *Federal Transit Administration Guidance on New Starts/Small Starts Policies and Procedures*, available at: <http://www.fta.dot.gov>; several state DOTs such as California, Michigan, Ohio, and Oregon maintain guidance on model calibration and validation

- Careful comparison of point-to-point travel times or speeds on individual road segments, to demonstrate that the model responds appropriately to changing traffic volumes
- Comparison of modeled traffic volumes with traffic counts both for individual roadway segments and at more aggregate levels such as throughout the study area
- Network checks to identify coding errors in, for example, posted speeds and capacities.

Figure 1<sup>14</sup> shows the possible effect of compounding error in travel models, where each step in the modeling process increases the overall error. This underscores the importance of identifying sources of error in each element of the travel model. Implementing a calibration effort such as described above is aimed at minimizing error in each step in the modeling process.

Figure 1: Effects of compounding error in model validation



**Validation and Reasonableness Checking** – It is important for the study team to conduct validation of the travel model at a level of detail that supports reliable forecasts and output indicators, focusing on the ability of the model to represent the effects of transportation system changes. This suggests validation of the travel markets deemed important in the study corridor by analyzing, for example, their trip generation, geographic distribution of trips, traffic volumes, and travel speeds.

The validation effort involves reviewing forecasting results, and results of sensitivity tests, to evaluate the credibility of the changes produced by the model. Sensitivity tests check the responsiveness of the travel forecasting tool to changes in the transportation system, socioeconomic data, and transportation policies. Often, sensitivity is expressed as the elasticity of an independent variable. For example, modelers can express a travel model’s sensitivity to the effects of a parking rate increase in an area by relating the increase in parking prices to the reduction in demand for travel to that area.

Reasonableness checks include the comparison of input such as rates and parameters, outputs such as total regional values, values for subregions covered by the model, and logic tests. Model parameters can be checked for consistency against observed values, parameters estimated in other regions, or secondary

<sup>14</sup> Adapted from Figure 1-3 from *Travel Model Improvement Program Model Validation and Reasonableness Checking Manual*, available at: <http://tmip.fhwa.dot.gov/resources/clearinghouse/docs/mvrcm/>

data sources. A model can be evaluated in terms of acceptable levels of error, its ability to perform according to theoretical and logical expectations, and the consistency of model results with the assumptions used to generate them.

There are several useful types of validation and reasonableness checks, including the following:

- **Forecasting buildup to understand how the different model inputs contribute to changes from the base year to the forecasting year.** It is useful to isolate and understand changes in travel patterns and congestion in a corridor that are due to land use growth versus transportation system expansion. Other inputs that may be important in a corridor include assumptions related to external trips and special generators. This series of tests could easily be conducted using the long-range transportation plan model inputs. Section 2.4.2 discusses the importance of the study team explicitly defining and documenting the future no-build highway (and transit) networks. Understanding the impact of planned changes to the transportation system is an important element of the forecasting buildup.
- **Interpretation of the story told by the models themselves about the behavior of travelers.** This test helps to ensure that the various parameters, assumptions, network coding conventions, and other decision rules in the models tell a coherent story about travel behavior. This helps prevent (by highlighting the need for correction) implausible relationships and explains the properties of the models to non-travel forecasters.
- **Demonstration of reasonable predictions of change between today and the future as well as in response to changes in the transportation system.** This last set of tests adds a major new dimension to the understanding of the properties of a new model set: the ability to respond reasonably to demographic growth and consequent changes in congestion, and to produce coherent responses to major changes in the transportation network.

### 2.2.3 Calibration, Validation, and Reasonableness Checking of Land Use Forecasts

Land use forecasts are one of the foundations upon which travel demand forecasts are built and, as such, it is important for the study team to invest effort in reviewing and checking both base year land use for accuracy and future year land use forecasts for reasonableness, and to understand the implications of growth on the transportation forecasts. A range of land use forecasting techniques may be used during a study from more qualitative techniques such as expert panels to quantitative techniques utilizing land use models. At the simplest level, it is important to understand how much of the justification for a project is based on current demand versus future growth and the implications of these findings related to the uncertainty in the forecasts; at a more complex level, where the study team's analysis involves more complex land use analysis tools and models, a process akin to the calibration and validation of the travel model described above may be necessary.

As discussed in the context of reviewing the travel demand model, it is suggested that the study team scale their land use review effort according to the scale of the analysis, such as its geographic scope and potential for land development or redistribution effects. Section 2.4.6 discusses in detail considerations for addressing land development or redistribution effects in the preparation of project level forecasts.

A review of the base year land use in the study area will often be undertaken as the first step of travel demand model calibration and validation checks. Published sources<sup>15</sup> discuss recommended approaches to check base year land use and socioeconomic data, and also explain the importance of checking these input data to reduce the level of effort needed to perform other validation steps; indeed, it is critical as errors in these data propagate through the subsequent steps in the model system (as shown in Figure 1).

---

<sup>15</sup> See, for example, *Travel Model Improvement Program Model Validation and Reasonableness Checking Manual*, available at: <http://tmip.fhwa.dot.gov/resources/clearinghouse/docs/mvrcm/>

In addition, errors that appear unimportant at a regional level may increase in significance as they are proportionally more important at a study area level.

The complexity of the review of the land use forecasts will depend on the approach selected for land use forecasting. A general framework for producing land use forecasts is as follows:<sup>16</sup>

- *Understand existing conditions and trends:* This principally involves assembling data that will be necessary to conduct the analysis.
- *Establish policy assumptions:* This step involves determining currently anticipated changes in regulatory or economic policies such as zoning, environmental regulations, and impact fees.
- *Estimate regional population and employment growth resulting from change in accessibility:* This step uses local population and employment trends; broader State and national economic industry trends; and economic forecasting models.
- *Inventory land with development potential:* This step identifies undeveloped and underdeveloped land and, in combination with environmental restrictions and zoning regulations, quantifies land available to absorb growth.
- *Assign population and employment to specific locations:* This step uses land availability, the cost of development, and the attractiveness of various areas to estimate the amount and type of growth that will occur in each zone.

The approaches used in this process vary from qualitative techniques (such as utilizing an expert panel and/or the Delphi process) to quantitative models to forecast regional population and employment changes (such as regional economic impact models) to land use models that are integrated with travel demand models.

For project level analysis in cases where alternative specific land development effects are not expected, it is common for the study team to review adopted regional level land use forecasts or use an integrated land use and travel demand model that has been calibrated at a regional level, rather than producing new forecasts. It is important that the study team reviews and understands how each of the steps in the forecast framework was undertaken and how each step applies to the land in the study area. This review might include checks of:

- Whether regional level trends used to produce forecasts have been reflected historically in the study area
- The accuracy of the land inventory (such as the amount of vacant land) for the study area
- Pending development/redevelopment proposals, particularly those that will exceed regulatory limits on density or other factors
- The reasonableness and feasibility of the resulting development allocations to the study area.

Consultation with local governments and others with knowledge of land development patterns can enhance this process.

A critical element of this review is for the study team to understand the future transportation network assumed in the land use forecasts, and particularly whether any of the alternatives under consideration are included in the transportation network assumed in the land use forecasts (see Section 2.4.2).

## 2.2.4 Policy Evaluation Considerations

Forecasting models have been widely used to estimate the effects of standard roadway capacity improvements, like road widening or the addition of a new road. While these types of forecasting efforts can still be complicated and the models may need refinement to be useful, models are built with the basic intention of modeling roadway and major transit capacity improvements. Increasingly, however, requests

---

<sup>16</sup> Adapted from *Handbook on Integrating Land Use Considerations into Transportation Projects to Address Induced Growth*, prepared for AASHTO by ICF Consulting, March 2005

are being made to assess the impacts of transportation demand and supply policies that models were not designed for when they were originally constructed. For example, alternatives in a study may include ramp metering to better manage flow on limited access facilities, a transit technology not currently existing in the region, or various pricing strategies. While some models are equipped to assess these policies, many that are routinely applied in current studies are not. Determining the extent to which some of these policies will be major components of a NEPA study will help ascertain the amount of effort it may require to test alternatives and model changes and/or adjustments that may be needed.

#### ***2.2.4.1 Evaluating Transportation System Management/Transportation Demand Management Strategies***

Transportation system management (TSM) strategies, or intelligent transportation system (ITS) strategies, are put in place to reduce both recurring congestion and incident-related congestion. To the extent TSM strategies affect recurring congestion, the FHWA recommends that they be represented in road or transit networks as capacity improvements relative to facilities without these improvements. Additionally, ITS technologies are increasingly being implemented to monitor and collect travel data (e.g., speeds and volumes) and in this respect are valuable sources of model calibration and reasonableness checking data that can be used to assess capacities, free-flow and congested speeds, volumes by time of day, and the relationship between speed and volume.

Transportation demand management (TDM) strategies vary widely and are designed typically to discourage single-occupant vehicle use during peak hours. These include, but are not limited to, changes in parking policies, ride-sharing, employer-subsidized transit passes or van pools, policies allowing flexible work schedules and telecommuting, HOV lanes, and road or parking pricing. Since these policies vary dramatically in terms of the scale of the impacts and their cost, different analytical approaches may be warranted in each case. Generally speaking, it is reasonable to assess the impacts of the employer-based policies by reducing the number of auto trips to specific destinations during peak hours by a percentage agreed to be reasonable to account for the relevant policies. This exercise can quickly become daunting in its detail, so it is best to acknowledge the effects and develop a quick and reasonable approach to account for the effects if necessary.

#### ***2.2.4.2 Evaluating Managed Lanes and Pricing Strategies***

Managed lanes and in particular roadway pricing are crucial elements of some regions' networks and nationally are becoming particularly relevant as States and regions consider how to pay for maintaining and expanding their road networks. However, models are typically not well equipped to evaluate such policies as HOV lanes, high-occupancy toll (HOT) lanes, or tolled facilities. The consideration of managed lanes investments and in particular road pricing policies involves thoughtful consideration of how different travelers trade-off time and cost, along with a realistic representation of travel times and trip patterns.

While there are different methods that can be used to estimate demand for a managed lane or a toll facility (e.g., diversion curves, toll mode choice models, or traffic assignment methods that incorporate time and cost), for each approach to be successful it is recommended that the basic components leading to the demand estimate (trip distribution patterns by market segment, values-of-time, and travel time differences) be demonstrated to be reasonable and reliable. Traffic assignment models typically produce better estimates of volumes than speeds and, in the case of managed lanes, both are important.

Road pricing strategies also involve reliable estimation of the revenue potential for a facility, which adds an additional layer of complexity to the forecasting exercise. Typically, for projects involving private investment or bonding, a separate "investment-grade" forecasting study is carried out, which serves a different purpose from the NEPA study. While the NEPA travel forecasts are intended to form the basis for an informed Federal decision about the project, the "investment-grade" study provides assurances to investors that traffic levels will be sufficient to support the toll revenues anticipated for the project. The "investment-grade" study may involve different methodologies and produce different results from the

NEPA study. If the results of the “investment-grade” study are released during the NEPA process, it is suggested that the study team explain differences between the two sets of forecasts in the NEPA documentation.<sup>17</sup>

### **2.2.4.3 Evaluating Transit Strategies**

Transit provides important mobility benefits in congested corridors throughout the country and it is often necessary in a major NEPA study with highway alternatives to consider the potential benefits of upgrading transit services. While most models have the ability to represent transit to some degree, the models may not be a reliable predictor of travel by new transit modes, depending on the extent of the use of this aspect of the model. The introduction of a new transit mode in a corridor or a region is complicated to model and calls for careful consideration. The use of models that have been recently vetted and refined through the FTA’s New Starts project evaluation process<sup>18</sup> are most likely able to evaluate major transit alternatives. In situations where there is no transit modeling component, or one exists but has not been carefully reviewed, it is suggested that care be given to ensure that the transit model is working reasonably well, that transit model parameters are reasonable, and that transit markets and forecasts are validated.

### **2.2.4.4 Evaluating Integrated Land Use and Transportation Scenarios**

From a travel demand forecasting perspective, the type of land use development can influence travel behavior and choices. A paper written by Cervero and Kockelman<sup>19</sup> provides the basic premise and foundation for subsequently developed sketch planning elasticity-based modeling methodologies. The “3D’s” were eventually expanded to 4, and include land-use density, land-use design, destinations (i.e., the appeal of the places), and diversity in the attractions.

Incorporation of a 4D component into travel demand forecasting models is a very complex undertaking that, to be done correctly, requires extensive data collection to first observe how these components affect travel behavior, and then model the effects of urban design elements on each aspect of the travel model. Due to the high degree of complexity and high cost associated with such an endeavor, efforts to capture these effects have often utilized off-model adjustments based on elasticities, whereby auto trips are removed to represent reductions in travel associated with specific land development characteristics. An additional and important layer of complexity is that models tend to capture some of these phenomena in some direct and indirect ways. Therefore, it is important for the study team to be very careful if they decide to apply additional off-model effects, and to document the need for the adjustments in addition to any effects captured by the model.

## **2.2.5 Advancing Technologies and Methods**

With research efforts continually developing new and improving existing technologies and methods, the state of the practice in land use and travel forecasting will never be static. Two particular methods that are becoming commonly used are integrated land use and transportation models and activity-based models, which are discussed below.

The use of integrated land use and transportation models is becoming more widespread, with implemented models in use in a number of metropolitan areas. Integrated models are designed to allow the

---

<sup>17</sup> For more information on modeling and forecasting considerations for pricing and tolling alternatives, see *AASHTO Practitioner Handbook #3: Managing the NEPA Process for Toll Lanes and Toll Roads* at: <http://environment.transportation.org/pdf/programs/PG03.pdf>.

<sup>18</sup> *Federal Transit Administration Guidance on New Starts/Small Starts Policies and Procedures*, FTA June 2007, available at: <http://www.fta.dot.gov>

<sup>19</sup> R. Cervero and K. Kockelmann. *Travel Demand and the 3 Ds: Density, Diversity, and Design*. Transportation Research D, 2, 3: 199-219, 1997

two-directional interactions between land use development and transportation demand to be represented: for example, land use development increases demand for personal travel, while construction of new transportation infrastructure can affect land development patterns. The use of these models, while conceptually attractive, may add to the complexity of the analysis carried out by the study team.

Despite a long history of forecasting practice using traditional models, these tools have limitations, as described in TRB Special Report 288<sup>20</sup> and other publications. These limitations range from the theoretical (that aggregate four-step models do not reflect travel as a “derived” demand resulting from the needs of households and individuals to participate in activities) to the practical (that these models are fairly insensitive and lack detail needed to test some policies). In the past decade, more advanced “activity-based” forecasting approaches have been developed and implemented in a number of large- and medium-sized regions. These models offer expanded analysis capabilities, more behavioral, temporal, and spatial resolution, and better integration with long-term land use forecasting models and traffic micro-simulation models. However, there are many concerns with these models that are common with traditional four-step models: they are sequential systems, and they are subject to the same concerns regarding the quality of model input data and the robustness of the model calibration and validation. In addition, calibration and validation of an activity-based model system necessarily involves greater effort than one associated with a four-step model because of the more comprehensive treatment of all aspects of travel.

It is suggested that the study team consider the potential benefits but also the practical difficulties associated with these advanced techniques during their evaluation of the suitability of modeling methods and tools available to them. As with any tool used during analysis, if the study team chooses to use one of the advanced techniques discussed above, it is important to demonstrate its suitability. In many cases, the study team will not have an advanced model available to them or they will be faced with an analysis for which an advanced technique is not necessary.

## 2.2.6 Consideration of Peer Review

There are substantive and procedural benefits from leveraging outside expert opinion. Lead agencies can use peer reviews to help ensure that the forecasting processes being applied meet the standards of professional practice and/or Federal, State, or local requirements. In addition, peer reviews of models inherently require an appropriate level of detailed technical documentation, and can have value for this reason alone. Finally, because forecasting can be a difficult and complicated process, an outside and objective perspective may be helpful.

There are several options for peer review of the forecasting work, including internal and external review approaches:

- **Independent review of the travel forecasting methods and preliminary output by outside experts.** A rigorous review would consist of a review of the model files and output, whereas a less rigorous review would cover the documentation only.
- **Interagency panel of MPO, transit, transportation, and land use planning agencies.** This review would be conducted by the stakeholder agencies in the study area to ensure the use of the best available forecasts and data. Effectively, this panel would form a technical advisory group for the project.
- **Review of the forecasting effort by the agency responsible for maintaining the model.** This can help ensure that the model was applied correctly, facilitate consistency across studies, and leverage the appropriate government resources and expertise.
- **Internal, semi-independent review by senior staff from the study team.** Such an effort would be analogous to the formal review required of engineers who produce designs.

---

<sup>20</sup> TRB Special Report 288, *Metropolitan Travel Forecasting: Current Practice and Future Direction*, TRB, October 2007, available at: <http://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/sr/sr288.pdf>

The need for and appropriate level of review depends on the circumstances of each study. It is critical to engage in a peer review at a stage in the study where the findings of the review can still be taken into account when conducting the analysis. More complicated analyses, or situations where new methods have to be implemented, will obviously require more time.<sup>21</sup>

### **2.2.7 Documentation of Suitability of Modeling Methods, Tools, and Underlying Data**

This section of the guidance discusses the importance of ensuring the suitability of modeling methods, tools, and underlying data. It is important for the study team to produce documentation that describes their review of the tools that they choose to use to support their analysis, and to document any updates or improvements that they identified as necessary for the analysis.

It is also important for the study team to focus this documentation on the needs and scale of the analysis that they are undertaking. The MPO or DOT that maintains the regional travel demand model is likely to publish a calibration report that can be referenced to demonstrate that the model is calibrated at a regional level; however, this report is unlikely to deal specifically with calibration for the study area for a particular project. Therefore, it falls to the study team to demonstrate that the travel demand model is adequately calibrated in their study area.

Other elements to consider for inclusion in the documentation are:

- Demonstration that the tools have the capability to forecast the range of policies that will be developed in the alternatives analysis
- Discussion of the appropriateness of using new or advanced methods that might be considered a departure from typical practice, given the context of the application
- Results of any peer reviews or an explanation detailing why no peer review was required.

As with forecasting needs, the key purpose of this documentation is to demonstrate that these issues have been considered by the study team. Again, the documentation can demonstrate the process used to make decisions relating to model suitability and record who was involved in the decision-making process.

The Council on Environmental Quality (CEQ) regulations for implementing the provisions of NEPA require that the lead agencies insure the professional integrity, including scientific integrity, of the discussions and analyses in environmental impact statements,<sup>22</sup> and this and other elements of documentation discussed in this guidance can help the lead agencies to demonstrate that they are meeting this requirement.

## **2.3 Scoping and Collaboration on Methodologies**

Scoping is a collaborative process involving the lead agencies, resource and regulatory agencies, and the public. Typically, this is how a NEPA study begins, and is intended to initiate activities in the most efficient and effective direction. Early consideration is given to determining what factors and resources will be issues of concern during the NEPA process and therefore have an impact on the decision being made, and conversely, what factors and resources are not likely to impact decision making.

---

<sup>21</sup> For more information on forecasting peer reviews, see the Travel Model Improvement Program Peer Review Program at: [http://tmip.fhwa.dot.gov/resources/peer\\_review](http://tmip.fhwa.dot.gov/resources/peer_review)

<sup>22</sup> See 40 CFR § 1502.24

### 2.3.1 Reaching Consensus on Forecasting Methodologies

SAFETEA-LU Section 6002 provided additional direction regarding the scoping process for environmental impact statements (EISs) by specifying that lead agencies collaborate with participating agencies on the methodologies to be applied and the level of detail required in the NEPA study.<sup>23</sup> Participating agencies are those Federal and non-Federal agencies that have an interest in the project. These agencies may also be cooperating agencies, meaning that they have special expertise or legal authority such as a permit approval. Such collaboration can be advantageous when conducting categorical exclusions or environmental assessments as well, although it is not required. The goal of the scoping process is to provide an opportunity for agencies and the public to raise critical issues and concerns early in the NEPA study so that these can be adequately considered as the NEPA study moves forward.

For this reason it is important to reach early agreements on the methodologies and conduct of the many technical studies that will support the overall NEPA analysis. The focus of this guidance is travel and land use forecasting, but the forecasts are relied upon as inputs for other technical studies, such as air quality, noise, and land development effects. Therefore, to ensure that the effects of potential alternatives are reasonably estimated, it is important for the travel forecast to provide an adequate representation of the travel patterns and volumes to be expected with each of the alternatives. Because future land use forms the basis for demand in the travel forecasting process, it is suggested that agreements be reached first on future land use scenarios for the alternatives and the methodologies to be used to develop those estimates.

The primary reason for reaching agreement early during the scoping process is to minimize the cost and schedule risk associated with “backing up” or re-doing work during the study. It is not uncommon during the NEPA process, particularly during alternatives analysis and evaluation, for the public and agencies to question the work done prior to that stage. Because not everyone will be 100% satisfied with the alternatives under consideration, it is natural for this questioning to take place. Having documentation on the agreements reached and the assumptions used for the land use and travel forecasts will facilitate the process to move forward with minimal delay and disruption. It is important to explain why the agreements were reached and how the team arrived at the assumptions used for land use and travel forecasting. In the absence of these agreements, the likelihood that the process may cycle back to this stage increases and could result in additional delay to the study and increased costs. Several agencies have developed procedures, such as templates, to assist with reaching consensus during scoping and documenting the agreed upon analysis approach.<sup>24</sup>

It is important for NEPA study teams to recognize that effective use of the scoping process is integral to a successful forecasting effort, since the scoping process sets the tone for participation throughout the study and can identify key issues germane to the forecasting exercise. The definition of a successful forecasting effort would be one where there is broad acceptance of the outputs from that effort. As described above, getting to that consensus requires early agreement on the inputs to the forecasting process and methods used. In addition to land use, it is important that the agreements cover all aspects of the forecast effort, such as whether the model accounts for modal splits, tolling, “induced” travel, and other items that relate to the range of alternatives being considered. All of these considerations are discussed elsewhere in this guidance.

Agencies would be well served to adopt written procedures for scoping all studies, regardless of the type of NEPA analysis. Simply stated, scoping sets the framework for everything that follows. It is suggested that the level of effort devoted to the scoping process be tailored to the context of the proposed project and/or the range of alternatives. Typically, the level of scoping effort associated with the replacement of a deficient bridge on an existing site would be different from the level of effort for a potential freeway in a

---

<sup>23</sup> See 23 USC § 139 (f)(4)(C), and Question 38 in FHWA and FTA “SAFETEA-LU Environmental Review Process Guidance,” at: <http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/hep/section6002/index.htm>

<sup>24</sup> See, for example, North Central Texas Council of Governments pre-analysis consensus plan template, available online at: [http://www.texastwg.org/files/pre-analysis\\_consensus\\_template.pdf](http://www.texastwg.org/files/pre-analysis_consensus_template.pdf)

new location, or a new commuter rail line. In addition, the roles of forecasts are different under each of those scenarios and would also require a commensurate level of effort in terms of reaching early agreements on how they will be determined.

### 2.3.2 Documentation of Scoping and Interaction with Other Agencies

As discussed above, it is critical for the study team to document their work on scoping of the analysis and their interaction with other agencies, recording the broad agreements reached and the assumptions used for the land use and travel forecasts. This documentation can then be used throughout the study as a reference during analysis and later to demonstrate what decisions were made and the process by which decisions were made, and to identify who was involved in making those decisions.

## 2.4 Forecasting in Alternatives Analysis

The CEQ regulations require lead agencies to “rigorously explore and objectively evaluate all reasonable alternatives.”<sup>25</sup> This provision establishes a standard for NEPA studies to treat each alternative in an unbiased manner so that the related benefits and impacts can be estimated and compared across alternatives. For EISs, the regulations go on to say that the study “shall provide full and fair discussion of significant environmental impacts and shall inform decision-makers and the public of the reasonable alternatives which would avoid or minimize adverse impacts or enhance the quality of the human environment.”<sup>26</sup> In addition, the regulations say that the alternatives analysis is “the heart of an environmental impact statement.”<sup>27</sup> From a land use and travel forecasting perspective, these provisions have direct relevance in how forecasting methods are applied for the purposes of analyzing alternatives.

### 2.4.1 Overview of Transportation-related Effects and Impacts

The CEQ regulations define the effects and impacts that Federal agencies are to address and consider in satisfying the requirements of the NEPA process. These effects include direct effects, indirect effects, and cumulative impacts:

- **Direct effects** are caused by the action and occur at the same time and place (40 CFR § 1508.8).
- **Indirect effects** are caused by the action and are later in time or farther removed in distance, but are still reasonably foreseeable. Indirect effects may include growth-inducing effects and other effects related to induced changes in the pattern of land use, population density, or growth rate, and related effects on air and water and other natural systems, including ecosystems (40 CFR § 1508.8).
- **Cumulative impact** is the impact on the environment, which results from the incremental impact of the action when added to other past, present, and reasonably foreseeable future actions, regardless of what agency (Federal or non-Federal) or person undertakes such other actions. Cumulative impacts can result from individually minor but collectively significant actions taking place over a period of time (40 CFR § 1508.7).

The terms “effect” and “impact” are used synonymously in the CEQ regulations (40 CFR § 1508.8). “Secondary impact” does not appear, nor is it defined in the CEQ regulations or related CEQ guidance, but the FHWA has used the terms “secondary impact” and “indirect effect” interchangeably.<sup>28</sup>

---

<sup>25</sup> See 40 CFR § 1502.14

<sup>26</sup> See 40 CFR § 1502.1

<sup>27</sup> See 40 CFR § 1502.14

<sup>28</sup> FHWA’s *Interim Guidance on Indirect and Cumulative Impacts*, January 2003, available online at: <http://www.environment.fhwa.dot.gov/guidebook/qaimpact.asp>

There are several available resources that discuss the distinctions between these types of effects and provide guidance on considering and measuring them.<sup>28, 29</sup> From a travel forecasting standpoint, there are numerous transportation-related impacts that are measurable and may be meaningful in an alternatives analysis. Following are examples of impacts that illustrate the type of information that comes from a travel forecast, or is closely related to travel forecasting output, organized into direct effects, indirect effects, and cumulative impacts.

### 2.4.1.1 Direct Effects

Transportation-related direct effects are generally well understood. Table 2 presents a brief list of typical direct effects that have their basis in travel and/or land use forecasting, including how each one is usually sourced:

Table 2: Typical Direct Effects Estimated using Outputs from Forecasts

Effect	Effect Type	Effect Source
Congestion /Delay	Peak hour/period level of service	Direct output of traffic assignment and/or post processed output to produce intersection turning movement volumes (see section 2.4.5)
	Hours of congestion	
	Intersection level of service	
	Point-to-point travel times	
Travel Choices	Mode shares	Direct output of mode choice model
	Transit boardings and loadings	Direct output of transit assignment
Revenue	Toll revenue, transit revenue	Revenue forecasts based on traffic and transit assignment results
Environmental/Social	Noise	See section 2.6.1
	Air quality	See section 2.6.2
	Traffic diversion	Direct output of traffic assignment
	Travel benefits for different socio-economic groups	Post processed travel model outputs by socioeconomic groups
	Accident rates	Post processed traffic assignment by functional class, and changes in non-motorized trips and shares from trip generation and mode choice models

### 2.4.1.2 Indirect Effects

Potential changes in land development patterns due to a transportation investment are typically examined as part of an indirect effects assessment, particularly on major projects.<sup>30</sup> These effects are not easy to forecast. The study team may undertake a land development impact assessment through the use of integrated land use and transportation models, the application of [gravity](#) or other more simplified models, or simply an analysis of regional and local trends. In some studies the team may also choose more qualitative methods such as surveys, interviews with developers, discussions with local planners, or the Delphi or expert panel process. These are considered further later in this document.

The FHWA's *Interim Guidance on Indirect and Cumulative Impacts* explains that a proposal for a new alignment project in an area where no transportation facility currently exists, or one that adds new ac-

<sup>29</sup> Draft Baseline Report, Executive Order 13274: Indirect and Cumulative Impacts Working Group, March 15, 2005

<sup>30</sup> CEQ regulations specifically mention "growth inducing effects" as potential indirect effects. See 40 CFR § 1508.8(b)

cess to an existing facility may indicate an increased potential for project-related indirect impacts from other distinct but connected actions, such as the opening of access to land with a new highway leading to new development.<sup>31</sup> Likewise, the purpose and need of a proposed project that includes a development or economic element might establish an indirect relationship to potential land use change or other action with subsequent environmental impacts.<sup>32</sup> It is important for the lead agencies to identify potential indirect impacts of the transportation proposal early in the NEPA project development process.

Land development effects and potential redistribution of growth within a region may be analyzed more robustly at the regional level and during the regional planning process. Increasingly, MPOs, DOTs, and other agencies are using integrated land use and transportation forecasting procedures in the planning process to better understand the interrelationship between growth and the transportation system. It is therefore possible that the study team can glean insights at the project level from a regional planning analysis. One advantage of a regional analysis is that the study team can consider the region-wide growth pressure dynamics.<sup>33</sup>

Table 3 presents a brief list of typical indirect effects that may be considered in a NEPA study that are based on or use forecasting outputs:

Table 3: Typical Indirect Effects That are Based on or use Forecasts

Effect	Effect Type	Effect Source
Land Use	Residential development	Based on land development impact assessment
	Commercial development	
Revenue/Economic Growth	Increased tax revenue	Based on fiscal impact assessment of land development forecasts
	Regional economic growth	
Environmental/Social	Noise	See section 2.6.1
	Air quality	See section 2.6.2
	Visual impact of development	Based on land development impact assessment
	Floodplain and wetland encroachment	
	Fragmentation of habitat	

### 2.4.1.3 Cumulative Impacts

The FHWA's *Interim Guidance on Indirect and Cumulative Impacts* states that cumulative impact analysis is resource-specific and generally performed for the environmental resources directly impacted by a Federal action under study, such as a transportation project. However, not all of the resources directly impacted by a project will require a cumulative impact analysis. The resources subject to a cumulative impact assessment should be determined on a case-by-case basis early in the NEPA process, generally as part of early coordination or scoping.<sup>34</sup>

Two types of direct impacts, both measured and part of travel model output, have potentially important cumulative effects: air emissions and noise. The study team will typically evaluate the cumulative effects

<sup>31</sup> This is an example of a "but for" action: induced actions that would not or could not occur except for the implementation of a project

<sup>32</sup> See case law summary Section 4.1.3.3, discussion of *City of Davis v. Coleman*, 521 F.2d 661, 675-677 (9<sup>th</sup> Cir. 1975)

<sup>33</sup> See Section 2.1.5 "Incorporating Analyses Done in Transportation Planning Studies" for more information

<sup>34</sup> See discussion in *Guidance on the Consideration of Past Actions in Cumulative Effects Analysis*, Council on Environmental Quality, June 2005, available online at: [http://www.nepa.gov/nepa/regs/Guidance\\_on\\_CE.pdf](http://www.nepa.gov/nepa/regs/Guidance_on_CE.pdf)

on air quality during the regional air quality conformity modeling process. The study team can measure the cumulative noise impacts through a noise model and an understanding of existing noise levels.

If a project is expected to induce land development, such development could potentially cause additional cumulative impacts such as (but not limited to) impacts to farmland or open space, animal habitat, wetlands, water supply and quality, and air quality. In other words, to the extent the transportation system induces land development that development may cause further impacts to the environment and public health.<sup>35</sup>

Table 4 presents a brief list of typical cumulative impacts that may be considered in a NEPA study:

Table 4: Typical Cumulative Impacts That are Based on or use Forecasts

Effect	Effect Type	Effect Source
Land Use	Reduction in open space, farmland, animal habitat, wetlands	Based on land development impact assessment
	Impacts on water supply and quality	
Environmental/Social	Noise	See section 2.6.1
	Air quality	See section 2.6.2

## 2.4.2 Objective Application of Forecasting Data and Methods

The requirement for the alternatives analysis to be an objective evaluation makes it essential for the study team to apply forecasting data and methods objectively without any bias towards a particular alternative. It is important for the forecasting data and methods applied in the alternatives analysis to be consistent and create a level playing-field where alternatives can be fairly and reasonably compared. In other words, if the lead agencies structure the analysis to be predisposed to favoring the preferred alternative, then they are not meeting NEPA requirements, thus falling short of FHWA program requirements and creating litigation risk.<sup>36</sup>

To ensure that the objective evaluation requirement is met, it is essential for the study team to maintain consistency in assumptions across the alternatives being considered, and to clearly understand the impact that differences in model parameters cause. Apparently small inconsistencies in assumptions or model parameters can affect particular alternatives disproportionately. For example, assuming a slightly lower maximum walk access distance to a bus stop compared to a light rail stop can lead to large differences in the forecast for a bus rapid transit alternative compared to a light rail alternative; in this case the land area accessible to each stop is related to the square of the maximum walk access distance, so small differences are magnified. There are certainly cases where the study team will be justified in varying assumptions between alternatives; in that case, it is important for the study to be as transparent as possible in documenting and justifying those variations.

It is important for the study team to explicitly define and document the no-build condition. The no-build scenario contains a highway and most likely a transit network, as well as a no-build land use forecast. Defining the no-build networks in the intermediate and final horizon year requires assumptions about which projects in both the transportation improvement program (TIP) and long-range transportation plan are to be included. This requires some dialogue among local stakeholders to determine which projects have already been approved and funded, which projects are likely to be approved, and which projects are unlikely and therefore do not need to be included in the no-build scenario. The study team needs to pay special attention to projects closely associated with the subject study alternatives (i.e., capacity enhancements upstream or downstream from the study area, or on parallel facilities). It is important for

<sup>35</sup> Draft Baseline Report, Executive Order 13274: Indirect and Cumulative Impacts Working Group, March 15, 2005

<sup>36</sup> See case law summary Section 4.1.3.2, discussion of *Jones v. Peters*, 2007 WL 2783387, 10-11 and 23 (D. Utah, September 21, 2007)

the study team to ensure that alternatives to be analyzed are not included in the future no-build networks.

The typical practice in forecasting for NEPA studies is to use the adopted land use forecasts, which are usually developed by the State, MPO, and/or other regional planning agency, as a basis for estimating travel demand. As a matter of good practice, it is important that the study team understand the assumptions and inputs for a travel forecasting exercise, and this applies to land use as well. Occasionally, during an alternatives analysis, the study team and/or planning officials will adjust the land use forecasts within a corridor based on a more thorough and focused review. This corridor-specific review would typically include comparisons to current land use patterns and consideration of land-use policies, land availability, and anticipated development plans.

In addition, the study team will typically use one land use forecast in the no-build scenario and the other alternatives. However, in studies where land development patterns (both new and redistribution effects) are likely to be substantially different among alternatives, it is critical to understand whether the land use forecasts provided for use in the study represent a no-build or a build condition in the corridor. The answer to this question may not be immediately obvious, and the difference will not be relevant in many studies. However, particularly in cases where a new transportation facility is being proposed, it is important that the study team consider whether the development patterns adjacent to and reliant on the proposed facility will be the same if an alternative is built or not built. This situation is discussed further below in section 2.4.6.

### 2.4.3 Refinement of the Analysis during Screening

The alternatives screening process varies from one study to the next but, generally speaking, analysts follow a multi-step screening process. The Administrative Procedure Act requires that decisions made by Federal agencies are rational and clearly explained, with consideration given to all reasonable options.<sup>37</sup>

The tiered screening process often includes the following sequential decision points as the list of alternatives is vetted during project development:

1. **Initial screening based on purpose and need.** Does the alternative meet the study purpose and need? Are there fatal safety, engineering, mobility, or environmental flaws? Answers to these questions can sometimes be made with qualitative analysis. It is important to document *all* the reasons for screening out an alternative.
2. **Long list screening based on an initial impact assessment.** In a large or complicated study, it is not uncommon for a long list of alternatives to make it through the first screen. A second screen is then used that is based on preliminary analyses of impacts and performance at a level of detail that allows a reasonable decision to be made on the merits of the alternatives.
3. **Short list screening and detailed alternatives analysis during environmental review.** The short list of alternatives is the list that is carried forward to the environmental review. In this stage the analysis is typically the most detailed and time-consuming.<sup>38</sup>

The forecasting process typically mirrors the screening process in terms of the level of detail in the analysis. It is important for the study team to fully document the screening process and accompanying forecasting work. For example, it is important for the documentation to include an explanation of the screening performance measures and the process used to develop and select those measures (with reference to the purpose and need of the project), and to describe how each round of forecasting and screening was done and why key decisions were made.

---

<sup>37</sup> See case law summary Section 4.1.2, discussion of *Senville v. Peters*, 327 F. Supp. 2d 335, 344-345 and 369 (D. Vt. 2004)

<sup>38</sup> Note that SAFETEA-LU Section 6002 added the flexibility of analyzing the preferred alternatives to a higher level of detail, see 23 USC 139 (f) (4) (D)

If the forecasting methods change during this process, it is suggested that the study team evaluate in a reasonable manner the continuing validity of the prior decisions, to the extent that travel modeling was a basis for the screening out of alternatives.<sup>39</sup> This evaluation can include the use of sensitivity tests to assess the differences in the modeling results, assuming that the results of the tests pertain to a group of alternatives, or in more extreme cases by redoing the prior modeling work and subsequent analysis of the results.

#### **2.4.4 Development of Forecast Confidence**

For estimates of forecasts, substantial uncertainties include, but are not limited to, the following: population and employment forecasts, housing trends and costs, global and local economic conditions, other planned transportation improvements, time-of-day assumptions, parking prices, fuel prices, and long-term changes in vehicle technology. Obviously, the further the forecasting horizon is from the current year and the larger and more complex the alternatives that are being analyzed, the greater the level of uncertainty may be. To separate the various sources of uncertainty, it is suggested that the lead agencies identify the principal drivers of changes in traffic volumes through an incremental buildup of the forecasts for an alternative.

This forecasting buildup starts with a forecast using current conditions, such as land use and travel patterns, and then prepares a series of intermediate forecasts—in each case, replacing one of the inputs that describe current conditions with the analogous description of future conditions. The buildup concludes with a forecast that uses all of the forecast year conditions—effectively reproducing the traditional forecast for the alternative. The level of effort for this analysis is modest because it involves the straightforward reapplication of travel models with input files that are already available.

Identification of the key drivers of uncertainty in forecasts for an alternative can lead to very productive discussions early in the project development process, which is the right time to consider the reasonableness of future demand projections, while there is opportunity to reevaluate the approach used to analyze an alternative. As with other assumptions made and model tests carried out during the analysis, it is important for the study team to document their work to understand forecast confidence. The findings of these analyses form a key element of the demonstration that the approach used to analyze an alternative is appropriate. The documentation of these analyses is also essential so that the lead agencies can clearly communicate a level of confidence in the forecasts and point out areas where uncertainty in assumptions may lead to uncertainty in forecasts.

#### **2.4.5 Moving from Regional Model Output to a Project Level Forecast**

In the case of a regional travel model, it may not be advisable to directly use the raw forecasted volumes from a planning model and apply them in the context of a NEPA study. In most cases, the study team will need to conduct additional post processing or refinement of the travel model output before the forecasted volumes can be used in NEPA analysis. In practice, two approaches tend to be most commonly used for adjusting forecasts from regional planning models.<sup>40</sup> The first is a post-processing technique that aims simply to adjust the regional planning model forecasts of roadway volumes. The second is a sub-area analysis, which may involve the use of a microsimulation model to estimate traffic volumes on a detailed road network in a corridor.

When adjusting traffic volumes produced with a regional model, the modeler develops adjustment factors using base year volumes and observed traffic counts and applies those adjustment factors to the fu-

---

<sup>39</sup> See case law summary Section 4.1.4.1, discussion of *Conservation Law Found. v. Fed. Highway Admin.*, 2007 WL 2492737, at \*24 (D.N.H. August 30, 2007)

<sup>40</sup> One other approach worth noting is *matrix estimation*, which is less common in practice, but can be used successfully with a high degree of attention to detail. See, for example, *Improving the Estimation of Travel Demand for Traffic Simulation: Part 1*, available online at: <http://tmip.fhwa.dot.gov/resources/clearinghouse/407>

ture traffic volumes estimated from a model. NCHRP Report 255<sup>41</sup> describes methodologies for performing this post processing and remains the standard for adjusting planning models forecasts to this day.

The methods and principles outlined in NCHRP Report 255 advise the modeler to use the regional planning model to estimate future changes in traffic levels across screenlines, which are then added to or used to factor up base-year screen line counts. The modeler would then allocate traffic to specific links, with consideration given to relative capacities on the links and/or base-year traffic distributions, depending on the specifics of the analysis. This adjustment of forecasts from planning models requires an additional level of effort and attention to detail due to the number of calculations involved, but can improve the consistency and quality of the project development forecasts. However, this approach assumes that the differences between base-year traffic counts and assigned volumes across a screenline will remain relatively constant in the forecast year.

For an intersection analysis, the modeler would use the methodologies mentioned above to obtain traffic volumes in and out of the intersection. An iterative procedure can be used to convert the adjusted future-year traffic volumes to future-year intersection turning movement volumes, using the base-year turning movement patterns as a starting point. The iterative process involves alternately balancing the future inbound and outbound traffic volumes until a certain level of consistency is reached. As always, professional judgment is necessary to determine the reasonableness of the future-year turning movement volumes, particularly considering the purpose of the forecast.

While developing future-year forecasts, the study team may determine that the regional travel model lacks enough detail for the level of analysis required. In such a case, a sub-area model and analysis may be needed. This would involve the use of a model based on Highway Capacity Manual (HCM) methods or a microsimulation model. A sub-area analysis may also be warranted if the validation of the regional model is poor in the sub-area or if the regional model is too coarse in the sub-area. The best time to develop a sub-area model is at the beginning of the project development process while the regional model is being reviewed and calibrated, when it is simpler to create additional detail in the regional model (e.g., TAZ splits and new roadway links) that will be useful in a refined sub-area model.

Refined travel forecasting models, such as HCM or microsimulation models, require substantially more attention to detail than a regional travel demand model but can produce a more useful and informative forecast. As with sub-area models, it is best if the decision to utilize microsimulation methods is discussed early in the study process at scoping. It is recommended that the study team consider the evolving nature of microsimulation techniques and use the most appropriate tools available to them during the NEPA analysis.<sup>42</sup>

## 2.4.6 Addressing Land Development or Redistribution Effects

Land development and/or redistribution that is an indirect effect of specific transportation alternatives is often difficult to forecast. This is particularly true regarding changes in a transportation investment due to the complex, dynamic nature of the urban development process. More specifically, local conditions, changing policies, the incremental long-term nature of land use change, and the flexibility of travelers' responses all affect our ability to forecast transportation project outcomes. Despite these difficulties, transportation/land use impacts often need to be evaluated within the planning/NEPA process. Figure 2 presents a model of factors influencing development location decisions.<sup>43</sup>

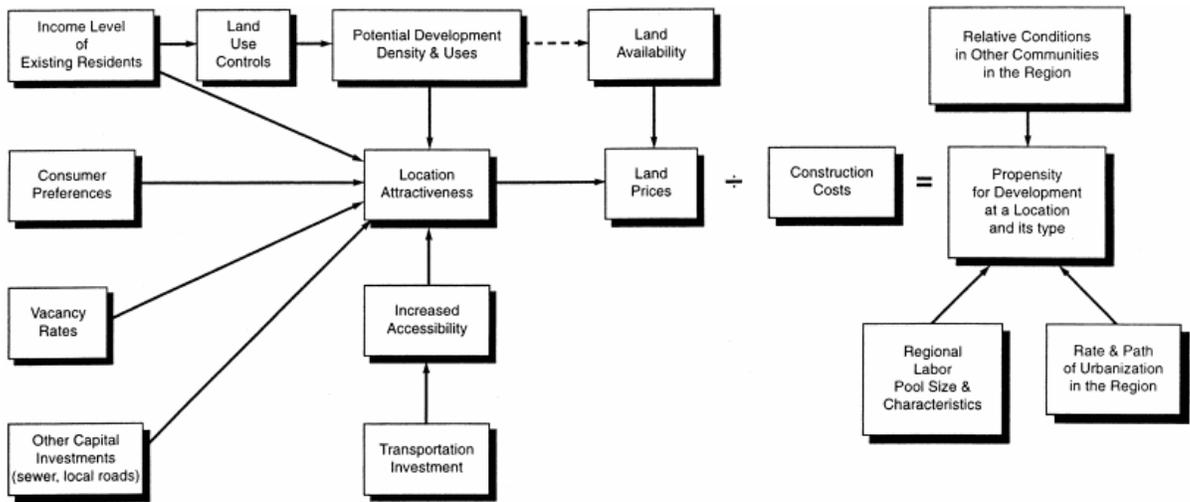
---

<sup>41</sup> NCHRP Report 255: *Highway Traffic Data for Urbanized Area Project Planning and Design*, TRB 1982

<sup>42</sup> *Volume II: Decision Support Methodology for Selecting Traffic Analysis Tools in the FHWA Traffic Analysis Toolbox* (June 2004) provides a detailed decision support methodology for selecting the appropriate type of analysis tool for the problem facing the study team. *Volume III: Guidelines for Applying Traffic Microsimulation Modeling Software in the FHWA Traffic Analysis Toolbox* (July 2004) provides procedures for performing simulation modeling, including detailed information regarding the preparation of simulation models and their calibration and use in analyzing alternatives.

<sup>43</sup> Figure 7-6 from NCHRP Report 466: *Desk Reference for Estimating the Indirect Effects of Proposed Transportation Projects*, TRB 2002

Figure 2: Simplified model of various factors influencing development location decisions



**2.4.6.1 Options for Addressing Land Use Issues in NEPA Studies**

Table 5 outlines some potential steps for conducting both base-case land use forecasts and analyses of the land use impacts from a build alternative.

Table 5: Comparison of Steps in Base-Case Forecasts and Impact Assessments

Base-Case Forecast	Impact or Policy Assessment
1. Understand existing conditions and trends	1. Understand existing conditions and trends
2. Establish policy assumptions	2. Establish policy assumptions
3. Estimate regional population and employment growth	3. Measure the transportation outcomes with and without project 4. Estimate total study area population and employment growth with and without project
4. Inventory land with development potential	5. Inventory land with development potential
5. Assign population and employment to specific locations	6. Estimate how the project will change the location and type of development within the study area from what would occur anyway

Both types of analysis require understanding existing transportation and land development patterns, making assumptions about the policy framework that will guide the process, estimating the amount of growth expected during the planning period in the study area, inventorying land that might be developed and any physical and regulatory constraints on that development, and assigning the expected growth in households and jobs to specific locations.

The key difference between the processes is that, to measure transportation outcomes with and without the project, an impact assessment uses estimates of the ways that accessibility and travel behavior will change because of the transportation investment. In addition, an impact assessment requires a comparison not only with existing conditions, but also with the quantity, type, and location of future growth that would occur without the project.

There is a wide range of specific techniques to assess the indirect land use impacts of transportation alternatives. Formal land use models require the most data and time, and they generally suit analyses at a larger geographic scale and better represent the complex interactions between transportation access and

land development patterns. Qualitative methods suit smaller sites and projects, though they may also be applied to larger areas. As discussed in section 2.3, close collaboration on methodologies is critical to the success of a NEPA study and, whatever the decisions taken to select a methodology, it is important that the decision-making process is well documented.

Reference documents on this topic include the following:

- *Handbook on Integrating Land Use Considerations into Transportation Projects to Address Induced Growth*<sup>44</sup>
- NCHRP Project 25-25, Task 22, *Forecasting Indirect Land Use Effects of Transportation Projects*<sup>45</sup>
- NCHRP Report 423a: *Land Use Impacts of Transportation: A Guidebook*.<sup>46</sup>
- NCHRP Report 466: *Desk Reference for Estimating the Indirect Effects of Proposed Transportation Projects*<sup>47</sup>

#### **2.4.6.2 Addressing Land Development Effects in Alternatives Analysis**

It is important for the study team to consider and address, when applicable, induced land development that may vary by build alternative, or simply between build and no-build. For transportation investments that are regionally important in scale, such as new or substantially improved highway facilities, it is more likely that the future land use patterns will be different if the alternative is built. If this situation exists, it is important for the study team to look at whether the differences would be simply between the build alternative(s) and the no-build, or if there would be a difference between the no-build alternatives and each of the build alternatives. The latter case is more likely when alternative alignments being considered are far enough apart or have such different characteristics that there would likely be a discernable difference between the land development impacts of each alternative. In many cases, however, it is reasonable to find induced land development to not be an important issue in a corridor, and therefore to use the same land use forecast for all alternatives. Figure 3 presents a framework for analysis of projects that warrant alternative land use forecasts for each alternative.

Likewise, the purpose and need of a proposed project that includes a development or economic element might establish an indirect relationship to potential land use change or other action with subsequent environmental impacts. It is important for the study team to establish the potential relationship of alternatives to indirect land development impacts in the scoping phase of the NEPA process on a project-by-project basis.<sup>48</sup>

The study team has at its disposal at least a few ways to assess the potential for induced development, including talking with land-owners in the corridor and local officials. If land is currently vacant or underutilized in the corridor, it is suggested that the study team consider whether there are development plans or land use policies related to these parcels that assume the construction of the transportation facility. This is particularly likely if a right-of-way has been preserved and/or a specific alternative is envisioned on municipal master plans. It is not uncommon for new transportation projects to be anticipated by land use planners and developers in advance of the project development process.

During NEPA studies where an analysis of land development effects is warranted, the analyses of the impacts of land development are often considered as part of a discrete indirect effects analysis. This ap-

---

<sup>44</sup> *Handbook on Integrating Land Use Considerations into Transportation Projects to Address Induced Growth*, prepared for AASHTO by ICF Consulting, March 2005

<sup>45</sup> *Forecasting Indirect Land Use Effects of Transportation Projects*, NCHRP 25-25 Task 22, December 2007

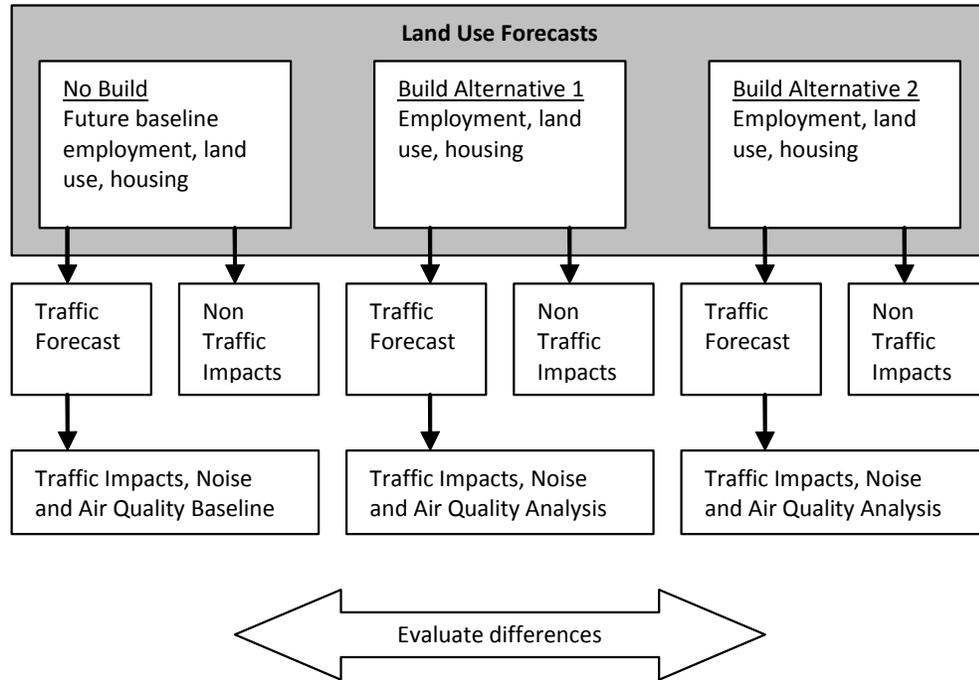
<sup>46</sup> *NCHRP Report 423a: Land Use Impacts of Transportation: A Guidebook*, TRB 1999

<sup>47</sup> *NCHRP Report 466: Desk Reference for Estimating the Indirect Effects of Proposed Transportation Projects*, TRB 2002

<sup>48</sup> See case law summary Section 4.1.3.1, discussion of *North Carolina Alliance for Transp. Reform v. U.S. Dept. of Transp.*, 151 F. Supp. 2d 661, 686-88 (N.D. N. C. 2001)

proach differentiates the direct versus indirect effects and analyzes the resulting indirect impacts of induced development on traffic, air quality, noise, water quality, etc., as appropriate.

Figure 3: Framework for analysis of projects that warrant using alternative land use forecasts



Another option for incorporating the land development effects as part of alternatives analysis is to include the land development effects of the build alternative(s) as part of the forecasting effort that supports the direct effects analysis. In effect, this approach embeds the indirect effects of land development in the direct effects analysis. One of the likely benefits to this approach would be the streamlining of the forecasting effort by eliminating the number of needed model runs.

Finally, before making a decision on how to handle land development effects in the NEPA document, it is important to consider how the scope of NEPA analysis is affected by the degree of Federal influence and control over the project. This issue, which is sometimes referred to as the “Federal handle” on the project, can have particularly important impacts with respect to the analysis approach for land use impacts.

### 2.4.6.3 Induced Demand and Land Development

One of the most controversial issues with regard to forecasting as part of the NEPA process is that of induced demand. While there are limits and complex factors in reality and every corridor is unique to some degree, it is important for transportation analyses to consider the significance of induced demand. Induced demand is the volume of traffic that is drawn to a new or expanded road by providing additional capacity. This induced demand comes from a number of sources, including trips diverted from other routes, discretionary trips that might not have been made without the service improvement, and improved access to employment and other activity location choices.

Those challenging the results of a NEPA process often cite induced demand in comments on environmental documentation and litigation involving travel models.<sup>49</sup> In economic terms, induced demand is the notion that demand increases as a result of increased supply. In a transportation context, the idea is that

<sup>49</sup> See case law summary Section 4.1.4.1, discussion of *Serville v. Peters*, 327 F. Supp.2d 335, 368-369 (D. Vt. 2004)

every action to improve travel conditions will lead to more travel demand. Table 6 shows the main components of induced demand according to prior research, and the extent to which typical practice models capture these components.<sup>50</sup>

Table 6: Components of Induced Demand

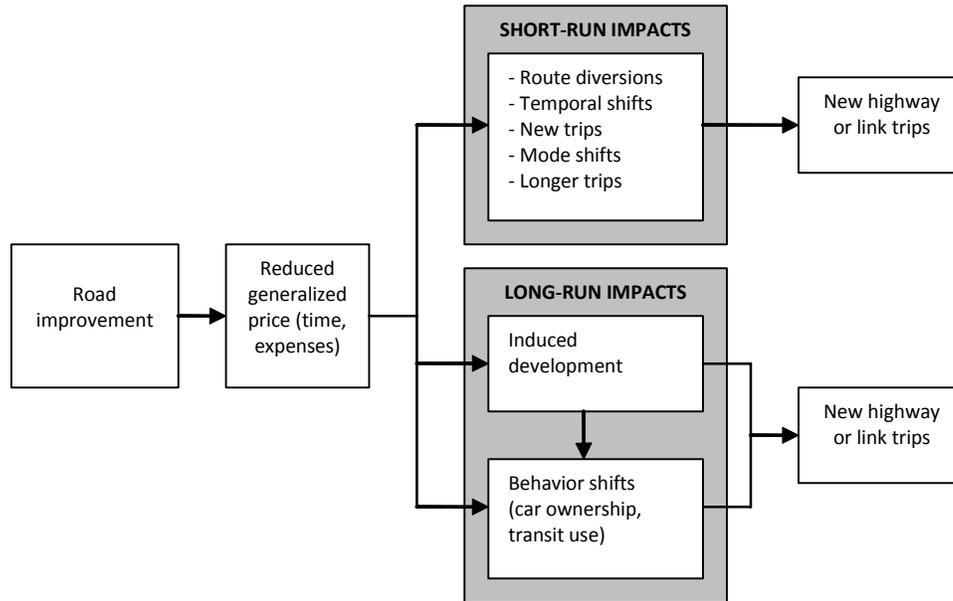
	Induced Demand Components	Effects on Forecasting Analysis	Effectiveness of Model
Short-run Impacts	Change in number of trips	The net addition of trips will affect traffic, noise, and emissions impacts	Poor – Trip generation models are typically based on demographic factors such as household size, income and auto ownership, and are insensitive to changes in travel time or accessibility.
	Change in length of trips	Change in trip length will affect duration of use of facility and emissions	Fair – Trip distribution models use an aggregate measure of impedance based largely on travel times. Feedback of travel impedances from assignment to distribution enables distribution models to be sensitive to congestion effects.
	Change in mode of travel	Change in mode to or from auto will affect noise and emissions	Good – Disaggregate mode choice models estimate mode choice probabilities based on relative attractiveness of alternative modes with respect to travel times, costs, and other factors.
	Change in route	Changes in route will affect traffic volumes on facility and emissions	Good – Equilibrium traffic assignment models reallocate trips to alternative routes based on travel impedances and volume-delay functions.
	Change in time of travel	Changes in time of travel will affect levels of congestion	Poor – Most travel models partition daily trips into fixed time periods with no option for adjustment between periods based on traffic volumes.
Long-run Impacts	Change in development patterns	Net addition of trip-generating land uses will increase traffic volumes, may increase trip lengths	Poor – Most travel models use population and employment forecasts developed outside the model and have little or no feedback between the travel model and land use forecasts.
	Change in behavior (e.g., vehicle ownership)	Changes in behavior have long run-impacts on number of trips, length of trips, mode of travel and hence affect traffic volumes	Poor – Most travel models use static assumptions about future residential locations, vehicle ownership, and mode preferences.

Short-term induced demand results from changes in the number of trips people take, where people travel to, what mode they take, and what route they take. Table 6 shows that typical practice models tend to account reasonably well for some of these short-term induced demand effects but do not generally account for changes in the number of discretionary trips taken and the time of travel. Longer-term induced demand can arise from changes in household location or vehicle ownership, and these longer-term impacts are notably harder to measure and relate to a specific transportation project with a high degree of confidence. Figure 4 illustrates short and long-run sources of induced demand.<sup>51</sup>

<sup>50</sup> Adapted from Table 1: Sensitivity to Environmental Analysis to Induced Demand, and Table 4: Effectiveness of Current Travel Models in Accounting for Components of Induced Demand from *Working Together to Address Induced Demand*, Eno Transportation Foundation, 2002

<sup>51</sup> Adapted from Figure 2 of *Working Together to Address Induced Demand*, Eno Transportation Foundation, 2002

Figure 4: Short-Run and Long-Run Sources of Induced Demand



Typically, the long-term land development effects are more effectively analyzed at the system, metropolitan, or regional level. At this scale of analysis, systematic interrelationships between the transportation system and land development characteristics and dynamics (including other relevant policies and conditions) can be meaningfully evaluated. The results of these planning-level analyses may be incorporated in the NEPA process if appropriate (see section 2.1.5 for a more complete discussion).

Induced land development is development that may occur as a direct or indirect result of improvements to the transportation network. While the issues of “induced demand” and “induced land development” are related, they are in reality separate and are often confused and used interchangeably. Induced land development is one of the sources of induced demand on an improved roadway, but only accounts for a portion of the induced demand components.<sup>52</sup>

A range of approaches are available to address induced demand components not considered as part of an agency’s routine forecasting methods, and are discussed in other research.<sup>53</sup> When dealing with induced demand issues within a particular NEPA study, it is important to understand and document the different components of induced demand and which components are adequately dealt with within the forecasting analysis. It is also important to understand and document what elements require additional work and where it is not possible to perform this work given the unavailability of information or exorbitant cost of obtaining the information and performing the analysis.<sup>54</sup> These considerations should be weighed during the early stages of the analysis process and should be discussed during scoping.

<sup>52</sup> See, for example, *NCHRP Report 466: Desk Reference for Estimating the Indirect Effects of Proposed Transportation Projects*, TRB, 2002, pp 58 – 65

<sup>53</sup> See, for example, *NCHRP Report 423a: Land Use Impacts of Transportation: A Guidebook*, TRB 1999; *Working Together to Address Induced Demand*, Eno Transportation Foundation, 2002; *NCHRP Report 466: Desk Reference for Estimating the Indirect Effects of Proposed Transportation Projects*, TRB, 2002; *Handbook on Integrating Land Use Considerations into Transportation Projects to Address Induced Growth*, prepared for AASHTO by ICF Consulting, March 2005

<sup>54</sup> See 40 CFR § 1502.22 Incomplete or unavailable information. It is important to note that a high bar is placed on demonstrating the inability to obtain information or perform analysis. See case law summary Section 4.1.4.4, discussion of *Sierra Club, III. Chapter v. U.S. Dept. of Transp.*, 962 F. Supp. 1037, 1043-1046 (N.D. Ill. 1997)

#### **2.4.6.4 Addressing Variations from “Approved” Forecasts**

It is common for the land use forecast used in an EIS to vary from the land use forecast used in the MPO planning process and conformity analysis. If a review of the land use forecast provided by the MPO suggests that refinements are necessary within a corridor, typical practice involves starting with the MPO land use forecast and adjusting land use within a study area while preserving housing and employment control totals within an appropriate aggregate geographic area, such as the study area or a county. An essential element of a land use forecast review is to obtain and understand the assumptions that led to the forecast, such as changes to the transportation network. If refinements to the land use forecasts are made, it is important for the study team to document the changes so that they can be disclosed and explained. It is also suggested that improvements to land use forecasts made during NEPA studies be provided back to the MPO for their use to leverage the work performed during NEPA studies.

#### **2.4.7 Documentation of Forecasting in Alternatives Analysis**

There are several aspects of forecasting in the alternatives analysis that are especially important to include in the documentation, in addition to presenting the travel model results and impacts for each alternative. They are highlighted here, and discussed in more detail in the relevant sections above:

- An explicit definition of the no-build condition with regard to land use, network, and modeling assumptions
- In cases where the study team is justified in varying modeling assumptions between alternatives, documentation that explains those variations
- If the forecasting methods change during the screening process, documentation of the evaluation of prior analyses and decisions
- Analyses to understand uncertainty in assumptions and forecasts
- How the travel forecasting work takes induced demand and land development effects into account
- The approach used to develop and the reasons for variations from approved land use forecasts

### **2.5 Project Management Considerations**

NEPA studies are often complex undertakings and may be accompanied by various special considerations that warrant extra lead agency and study team attention. These include the potential for re-do analysis loops and ensuring documentation consistency. If these issues are understood from the initiation of the study, there will be ample opportunity to proactively address them and facilitate a smooth and expeditious study process.

#### **2.5.1 Potential for Reevaluating Analysis**

In the course of a NEPA study, changed conditions may trigger a reevaluation of past forecasting work. A reevaluation could lead to revisions of data inputs and model assumptions used to produce the study's forecasts. The study team may need to conduct sensitivity tests to assess the magnitude of differences from prior analyses resulting from use of new data and their effects on past decisions. Depending on the outcome of such tests, the study team may need to decide how to choose the best and most appropriate way to address the new information. For example, updates to key data sets, such as new land use estimates or forecasts, updated project lists, or the availability of a new model version, may potentially bring into question the credibility of already-conducted forecasts, and consequently, the decisions made based on those data.

On the other hand, a sensitivity test may reveal that the changes caused by the introduction of the new data or model version do not change the conclusions made from the previous analysis. In this case, the study team would incorporate the updates to the model at a future milestone, such as for the final EIS, or

simply document the change and the sensitivity analysis in the project administrative record and move on. Depending on the stage in the analysis, for example, when new land use forecasts become available, it may not be necessary to re-do analysis.<sup>55</sup>

Sometimes a change in the scope of the analysis may also require past model work to be reevaluated. For instance, the testing of a new alternative may be requested, such as a toll facility, that was identified after scoping and was not considered in the original analysis. It is then also possible that model refinements may be necessary to evaluate this unforeseen alternative, or existing tools may be adequate to use to test the new alternative. It is important that choices that are made regarding changes in the alternatives and analysis are the result of a deliberative process, and that the decisions and the decision process are well documented.

In sum, it is important for the scope of the modeling effort for the study to recognize the potential for re-evaluation of the analysis and thus include adequate time and budget at the outset to address such contingencies. In the case of large, unforeseen issues, adequately addressing the study requirements may require scope and/or budgetary change orders. The implications of this issue for the scopes of work for consultants conducting forecasting analyses are discussed in section 2.5.4.

## 2.5.2 Consistency

NEPA documentation often presents a large amount of data and uses several applications and iterations of land use and travel forecasts as the basis for alternatives screening and impact estimation. There are therefore numerous opportunities for inconsistencies of data or results. First, there are the obvious inconsistencies, such as the same performance measures for an alternative having different values in different tables or sections of the documentation. A recent NCHRP report<sup>56</sup> recommended systematically reviewing assumptions, data, and results to ensure internal consistency, and explained that careful cross-checking is a valuable effort that enhances the credibility of the documentation for the public, agency reviewers, and a reviewing court.

It is important that the reported differences in impacts across alternatives reflect actual differences between the alternatives instead of being the result of inconsistencies in the analysis across alternatives, such as from slightly different model versions or assumptions. It is important for the study team to explain the differences in impacts across alternatives and to demonstrate that they are the results of a consistent and reproducible modeling process. Typically, travel model results developed early in the analysis process are used for preliminary estimates of air emissions and noise impacts and preliminary engineering design. As the analysis process progresses, travel model results are refined. This refinement process creates an environment where, unless care is taken, inconsistencies can occur due to analyses being based on different sets of results. It is important for the study team to ensure consistency between the travel modeling efforts and the work that uses travel model results as inputs so that analyses are all based on a consistent set of travel model results. Finally, it is important for logical inconsistencies to be avoided between sections of the EIS (e.g., the land development effects assumed as part of the alternative analysis being different from the effects documented in the indirect and/or cumulative effects analysis). There is no easy way to eliminate these inconsistencies; careful attention to detail and review of the documentation is therefore essential.

In addition, the current project development effort may not be the first alternatives analysis prepared for the corridor; there may be a corridor or planning study, or a previous NEPA study. It is important to be aware of the differences in transportation-related impacts from one study to the next, and ideally be able

---

<sup>55</sup> See case law summary Section 4.1.4.4 for discussion of several cases that deal with the need to redo analysis, including *Stop H-3 Ass'n v. Dole*, 740 F.2d 1442, 1464-1465 (9th Cir. 1984), *Audubon Naturalist Society of the Central Atlantic States, Inc. v U.S. Dept. of Transportation*, 524 F. Supp. 2d 642, 673 (D. Maryland 2007), and *Town of Winthrop v. Federal Aviation Administration*, 535 F.3d 1, 9-12 (11th Cir. 2008)

<sup>56</sup> *Synthesis of Data Needs for EA and EIS Documentation – A Blueprint for NEPA Document Content*, NCHRP Project 25-25(01), January 2005

to explain generally and credibly why the differences are logical. Further, this particular study may not be the only one occurring in the region or even in the same general area, and consistency across studies is important. Although it is not necessary that all the details are exactly the same, in some cases that may be necessary; in general, consistent methods are preferable. The likelihood of maintaining consistency between parallel studies can be enhanced by appointing a member of the study team to be responsible for consistency by checking with the other studies.

### **2.5.3 Enhanced Communication between NEPA Study Team and Forecasting Practitioners**

Because the NEPA process is often highly complex and, by its very nature, requires the involvement of multiple entities and individuals, it is appropriate to take special care to ensure logical and clear communication protocols are in place during the course of the study. This is particularly true with regard to communications between the project manager(s), other members of the NEPA study team, and the forecasting practitioners. Each needs to have an appropriately substantive level of understanding of the other's work, especially regarding analytical assumptions, data sources and reliability, interpretation of analysis results, and documentation of work performed. Establishing clear and well-understood protocols for communication among the management and forecasting parties will help ensure a credible and defensible NEPA product.

The extent to which communication protocols need to be documented will vary depending on the specific circumstances of the study. For example, for a study in which the project manager and forecasting practitioners are co-located and generally work closely on a day-to-day basis, a relatively simple agreement describing the general information flow between parties, documented in a memorandum, may be sufficient. However, for a complex study involving a large team of practitioners, who may be located in various sites across a region or the country, it will likely be very important to clearly describe a protocol for communication between and among the project manager and forecasting practitioners. Such a protocol, documented in writing, could include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Personnel (management, forecasting, others as appropriate) and responsibilities
- Description of decision-making structure within the NEPA team (possibly in writing and flowchart form)
- Schedule of communication events (e.g., regular meetings/conference calls of forecasting team and project manager)
- Format for documenting key assumptions, decisions, and communications and maintenance of that documentation

The NEPA project manager and other key players will need to determine what is appropriate for a particular project regarding the structure of a communication protocol. The goal of any such protocol should be to facilitate consistent and useful communication between the project manager and forecasting practitioners.

In addition, the involvement of legal counsel may be needed during the NEPA study on complex, controversial, and/or previously litigated projects. The role of counsel in this context is to ensure that the work being done and the documentation of the work are legally sufficient and adequately address typical legal issues with regard to forecasting. This involvement will help to ensure that the forecasting work performed meets legal requirements and improves the defensibility of the study.

### **2.5.4 Considerations for Developing Scopes of Work for Forecasting Practitioners**

It is typical for the majority of the forecasting work carried out during a NEPA analysis to be performed by a transportation consultant hired by the lead agency. In practice, the level of detail of scopes of work for these forecasting efforts vary considerably from a few lines to a very detailed discussion of the needs

of the forecasting effort. Beyond the provision for basic forecasting work to be conducted, the following are a few of the important elements of a scope of work that warrant consideration by a lead agency:

- Potential reevaluations and re-do loops: As mentioned above, new information, updated data and assumptions, or updated model versions can impact forecasting efforts, often in the middle of the NEPA study. While this may only happen on a few, complex or controversial projects, the impact on a study contract can be sizable. Incorporating resources into contracts to account for the potential of these occurrences will help ensure that needed analysis can be conducted. Professional judgment should be utilized to determine projects where this may be appropriate.
- Contract length and litigation contingency: a NEPA process can take place over a considerable time frame. That time-frame may be unexpectedly extended if the project is the subject of litigation. Because forecasting is often the focus of litigation, and to ensure continuity in the study team, it is important to consider that the work may need to be extended to provide additional analyses and support from the forecasting practitioners during responses to litigation.

## 2.6 Forecasting for Noise and Air Emissions Analyses

Land use and travel demand forecasting models are used to provide existing and future traffic volumes on the road network, estimated operating speeds, and information on mode usage that are used as inputs to noise and air quality assessments. This information is crucial to the successful completion of these analyses. It is important that lead agencies assure that assumptions that are made in general forecasting applications as part of the NEPA study are consistent with those used in the noise and air quality analyses. As an example, noise and air analyses may have specialized requirements regarding the needed forecasting analysis years, scales, or time periods. As a result, it is appropriate that the NEPA and forecasting practitioners take this into account early in the model development and scoping process.

More detail on the evaluation of noise and air impacts is provided below.

### 2.6.1 Noise Analysis

The results of travel demand forecasts are used as inputs to noise analyses routinely conducted as part of the NEPA process. The procedures used to identify and estimate noise impacts are found in 23 CFR Part 772, the FHWA regulations for the evaluation and mitigation of traffic noise in the planning and design of Federally funded highway projects.<sup>57</sup> This regulation establishes:

1. Methodologies for conducting a traffic noise analysis, and
2. Guidelines and requirements for the consideration of noise abatement measures.

In preparing traffic projections for NEPA documents, it is important to understand certain requirements of the FHWA regulations with respect to traffic volume estimation and modeling:

- Noise levels are established for the existing condition and a no-build and build scenario in the design year. The “design year” is “[t]he future year used to estimate the probable traffic volume for which a highway is designed” and is usually consistent with the design year established for other impact analyses in the EIS process.
- Impacts are measured during the one-hour period where the worst-case noise levels are expected to occur. This may or may not be the peak hour of traffic. That is, higher traffic volumes can lead to higher congestion and lower operating speeds. Since higher speeds lead to higher noise emissions from motor vehicles, the worst-case noise levels may occur in hours with lower volumes and higher speeds. In addition, vehicle mix may also change hourly. On many highways, the percentage of heavy trucks is reduced during peak hour. Since heavy

---

<sup>57</sup> Additional guidance can be found in *Highway Traffic Noise Analysis and Abatement: Policy and Guidance* (1995)

trucks have greater sound emissions than passenger cars, vehicle mix is an important component in determining the peak hour of noise impact. It may be necessary to conduct screening runs on several hours to determine which combination of traffic volume, speed, and vehicle mix yields the greatest impact. It may be the case that the peak hour of noise impact changes as the result of the proposed project. For example, the introduction of a multimodal facility like a freight terminal could introduce a large volume of heavy trucks during off-peak hours. In this case, a different analysis hour could be evaluated for the no-build and build alternative scenarios.

If the hour to be modeled is not included as a direct output of the travel demand forecasting model, then adjustments can be considered based on factors developed for similar types of roads. For example, if a transportation model is used to develop [annual average daily traffic](#) (AADT), then adjustment factors based on [automatic traffic recorders](#) (ATRs) could be used to estimate time-of-day hourly volumes and vehicle mix. The methodology for adjustments of model volumes used in the noise analysis should be consistent with that used in other sections of the EIS, and should be documented.

## 2.6.2 Air Quality Emissions Analyses

Results from travel demand forecasting models are used as inputs for estimating the regional and project-level emissions impacts of transportation plans, programs, and projects, as well as NEPA project alternatives. Emissions analyses are required to demonstrate that transportation plans, programs, and projects conform to the goals as identified in the State Implementation Plan (for areas in non-attainment or maintenance for a specific pollutant) to meet specific Clean Air Act requirements.<sup>58</sup> Emissions analysis may also be conducted to estimate the potential impacts of a specific alternative for other pollutants such as mobile source air toxics (MSATs) and greenhouse gases (GHGs). In addition, two levels of analyses are typically conducted with regard to transportation emissions: regional and micro-scale or hot-spot analyses. The analyses required for a specific NEPA study will depend on several factors, including:

- The context of the project: Is the area a non-attainment or maintenance area? Are there sensitive groups near the project area?
- The scale of the project alternatives being considered: Are there alternatives that are major expansions of an existing highway or new alignment? Or are they minor improvements on an arterial?
- The type of pollutant involved: Is a regional or local-level analysis required for a particular pollutant? Have other pollutants been raised as issues of concern by the public or other agencies?

The details of how emissions analyses will be conducted for a plan or project in order to meet Clean Air Act requirements are too extensive to discuss here, so this guidance will focus on the forecasting implications of both regional and local-scale analysis.<sup>59</sup>

### 2.6.2.1 Regional Emissions Analysis

Regional emissions analyses are conducted to produce estimates of emissions over a large area, typically the air quality non-attainment or maintenance areas (such analyses are not routinely conducted in attainment areas). This type of analysis is usually conducted to assess regional emissions to support a conformity determination for an MPO long-range transportation plan to demonstrate conformity or for a project in an isolated rural non-attainment or maintenance area. Travel demand forecasting models are generally used to supply inputs for the emissions estimation process, although some areas may use other appropriate forecasting methodologies. Typically, forecasting models or methodologies are used to pro-

---

<sup>58</sup> 42 U.S.C. § 7506(c) (Clean Air Act § 176(c))

<sup>59</sup> See 40 CFR § 93 for transportation conformity requirements. For more information, see the *Transportation Conformity Reference Guide* at: [http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/conformity/ref\\_guid/index.htm](http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/conformity/ref_guid/index.htm)

duce future VMT and speed estimates for the regional network. These estimates are used to represent travel activity in the study area. Emission rate models (such as MOBILE6.2 or MOVES) are used to create emission rates based on travel activity, vehicle fleet mix, temperature, and other variables. Emissions are estimated by multiplying the appropriate VMT estimate to the corresponding emission rate.

From a NEPA study forecasting perspective, the key considerations include consistency of assumptions and data and evolving analysis methods. It is important that the design concept and scope of the project in the NEPA analysis be consistent with that included in the conforming transportation plan and TIP in non-attainment or maintenance areas. Any substantial change in a project's design concept or scope will require a new plan/TIP conformity determination<sup>60</sup> and could require a reevaluation of regional and local-level emissions and a new project-level conformity determination. Also, certain analysis years will be required for the regional emissions analysis. These years may be different from the analysis years used in the NEPA study. The methodologies employed and assumptions used should be as consistent as practicable between the regional emissions analysis and the NEPA study. For example, if the land use assumptions in the NEPA study are sizably different from those used in the regional emissions analysis, then it is suggested that the differences be explained and documented. In addition, analysts are required to ensure that the latest planning assumptions are used in an emissions analysis.<sup>61</sup>

Periodically, a new emissions model is released by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and is typically phased in over time. For example, the current emissions rate model from EPA is MOVES,<sup>62</sup> although MOBILE6.2 has been used until very recently, and will be required when conducting emissions analyses. It is strongly recommended that analysts ensure that the latest emissions model is being used and anticipate if new models or updates will be available during the course of the NEPA study. This may mean that updated emissions analyses are required prior to the final approval of the NEPA analyses.

### **2.6.2.2 Micro-Scale Emissions Analysis**

Hot-spot analyses are conducted to determine the ground-level concentration of a pollutant of concern. In most cases, carbon monoxide (CO) is evaluated at intersections, as this is where the greatest concentrations are often found. However, these types of analyses can also be conducted for other pollutants, such as PM.<sup>63, 64</sup> Hot-spot analysis typically includes information on traffic volumes and free flow travel speeds on each roadway segment in the analysis. There are CO standards for both the 8-hour and 1-hour averaging period, although the 1-hour averaging period is almost never exceeded without the 8-hour averaging period being exceeded first. In general, the average of the highest consecutive 8 hours of traffic volume is chosen for the 8-hour analysis, or the peak hour is analyzed with a [persistence factor](#) to adjust the 1-hour impacts to 8 hours. When travel demand models are used to generate the peak 1-hour traffic volume, the latter method is most often used.

The evaluation of MSATs is generally conducted using a project level analysis.<sup>65</sup> As with CO, emissions of MSATs are dependent on traffic volume, vehicle mix, and operating speed. Other factors are also taken into account, such as fuel characteristics, but these are independent of whether traffic data are provided by a travel demand model or by other means. Since many of these air toxics are carcinogenic, long-term exposure is generally of the greatest concern. As a result, averaging times for analysis is usually one year. Therefore, AADT models are often sufficient for generating the traffic volumes, vehicle mix, and operating speeds.

---

<sup>60</sup> See 40 CFR § 93.104(d)

<sup>61</sup> More information on current planning assumptions can be found at: <http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/conformity/assumpt.htm>

<sup>62</sup> For more information see the MOVES website: <http://www.epa.gov/otaq/models/moves/>

<sup>63</sup> See 40 CFR § 93.123(b)(1)

<sup>64</sup> *Transportation Conformity Guidance for Qualitative Hot-spot Analysis in PM2.5 and PM10 Nonattainment and Maintenance Areas*, joint FHWA and EPA guidance, March 29, 2006. Available at: <http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/conformity/pmhotspotguidmemo.htm>

<sup>65</sup> The current guidance on this topic is *Interim Guidance on Air Toxic Analysis in NEPA Documents* (February 3, 2006). Available at: <http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/airtoxic/020306guidmem.htm>

Models of air impacts are required to be conducted during the year of peak emissions from the project.<sup>66</sup> This can typically be achieved by analyzing both the first build year and the design year, although an intermediate analysis year may also be necessary. This is because there is a tradeoff between traffic volume and emissions. That is, in the design year, traffic volumes are usually higher due to background growth, but emissions are lower due to the retirement of older and dirtier vehicles. Therefore, depending on which factor is more important, the worst-case impacts could occur earlier in the project life (such as the “open to traffic” year) or later.

## 2.7 Documenting and Archiving Forecast Analyses

### 2.7.1 Documenting Forecast Analyses

As mentioned throughout this guidance, documentation is an essential component of the NEPA and the project development process, which supports transportation decision making and complements public involvement and interagency coordination. NEPA requires that Federal agencies disclose the results of their analysis and the effects of project implementation on the environment and solicit comments on the proposals from interested and affected parties. The purposes of documenting the NEPA process are to:

- Provide for full disclosure to the public
- Allow others an opportunity to provide input and comment on alternatives and environmental impacts
- Provide the appropriate information for the decision-maker to make a reasoned choice among alternatives
- Provide an adequate administrative record for potential legal challenges.

A forecasting effort typically involves a tremendous amount of technical work that the study team then documents and describes in a manner so that it can be understood and meaningful to both technical readers (i.e., other modelers) and non-technical readers more interested in the results of the analysis (i.e., decision-makers and the public). Given the amount of work that must be documented in a typical NEPA study, it is important for lead agencies to provide the study team with sufficient time and budget to complete this critical phase of the study.

From a legal standpoint, any work not documented as part of the Administrative Record (AR) is not useful, since the AR is the documentation that would be used by a judge reviewing the procedural aspects of project litigation.<sup>67</sup> Consequently, the technical documentation typically goes in an appendix, whereas the main document presents the salient points from the analysis relevant to decision making and comparing alternatives. CEQ regulations (40 CFR § 1502.18) support this use of technical appendices, stating that “if an agency prepares an appendix to an environmental impact statement the appendix shall...normally be analytical and relevant to the decision to be made.”

If a peer review is to be done, it is important for the study team’s technical documentation to present the forecasting process in enough detail for the peer reviewers to analyze. It is suggested that this documentation describe the forecasting methods, key assumptions, and data used in the analysis, as well as any changes made during the study, and fully explain the methods used. This explanation may cover base-year model calibration and validation, as well as any technical evidence supporting the reasonableness of the forecasts (or incorporate existing documentation by reference). It is advisable for the study team to coordinate and share refinements made to model inputs, algorithms, or methodology with the agency that maintains the model and data (such as an MPO).

It is important for NEPA documentation to include enough technical detail to explain complex information in an understandable manner and present information in a way that is easy to follow for agency re-

---

<sup>66</sup> See 40 CFR § 93.116(a)

<sup>67</sup> See, for example, *Protect Our Water v. County of Merced* (03 C.D.O.S. 6067 July 9, 2003, \_Cql. App. 4<sup>th</sup>\_)

viewers, courts, and the public. In addition to explaining the technical information, it is important for agency reviewers, courts, and the public to understand the reasoning behind how analytical methods were chosen, what assumptions were made, and who made those choices. The study team can take several steps to achieve this balance, as outlined in a 2005 NCHRP report:<sup>68</sup>

- **Identify and Explain Key Assumptions.** The technical analyses contained in NEPA documentation generally are based on a series of assumptions. For example, travel forecasts are based on assumptions about future population and employment trends, and future transportation investments. It is important for decisions regarding these underlying assumptions to be reached using a reasoned approach. Also, it is important for the assumptions themselves to be reasonable in order for the results of the forecasts to be reasonable. Therefore, in presenting technical information, it is important for preparers of NEPA documentation to specifically identify key assumptions and *explain why* those assumptions were made.
- **Describe Methods Used to Develop Forecasting Results.** The persuasive power of technical data depends heavily on the reader's confidence in the methods used to generate those data. If the reader cannot understand how the data were developed, the reader is essentially being asked to "take it on faith." Thus, describing the methodologies used to develop the data can enhance the credibility of NEPA documentation. This approach requires more than giving the name and version of the model used; it requires explaining in simple terms how that model works and what type of information it provides. It also means explaining any inherent limitations in that model.
- **Summarize and Explain the Forecasting Results.** NEPA documentation presents a vast quantity of technical information. A critical task of a NEPA documentation preparer is to explain the data. Explaining the data involves more than reciting in text the data that appear in an accompanying table or figure. It is suggested that the explanation identify patterns in the data, explain causal relationships, and explain anomalous or otherwise unexpected results.
- **Systematically Review Assumptions, Data, and Results to Ensure Internal Consistency.** The large amount of data presented in NEPA documentation creates numerous opportunities for internal inconsistencies and contradictions. Careful cross-checking to ensure rigorous consistency is a valuable effort that enhances the credibility of the documentation for the public, agency reviewers, and a reviewing court.

An important job of the documentation writer is to explain what the technical data mean in relation to the decision(s) to be made. The writer might achieve this objective by capturing compelling cross-cutting issues that are important for the study and by summarizing key issues with perspective.<sup>69</sup> It is not enough to simply describe the technical work completed. Quality NEPA documentation effectively tells the project story through clear, concise writing; effective organization and formatting; and effective use of visual elements. It is suggested that if this story is to be presented in the main body of the documentation then it will present reasonable information and indicators describing how each alternative meets or does not meet the project's purpose and need, explaining any technical details in a way that is understandable to non-technical readers, and referencing the technical documentation in an appendix.

Telling the story of a forecasting effort requires a shift in the thinking away from the technical aspects of the modeling work and towards the impacts of the project that stakeholders are concerned about. A recent report from AASHTO illustrates how an EIS can be reorganized to be more engaging to readers. This reorganization of the EIS document mirrors the shift in thinking necessary to convey forecasts—that it is important for the results of the technical analysis to be relevant and understandable. The report has several suggestions for improving the readability of NEPA documents that reflect the intent of the CEQ regulations:

- Use clear, concise writing
- Provide effective summaries

---

<sup>68</sup> *Synthesis of Data Needs for EA and EIS Documentation – A Blueprint for NEPA Document Content*, NCHRP Project 25-25(01), January 2005

<sup>69</sup> *Improving the Quality of Environmental Documents*, A report of the joint AASHTO/ACEC Committee in cooperation with FHWA, May 2006

- Select an easy-to-use format
- Summarize information and use pictures and effective graphics to help communicate complex issues or comparisons<sup>70</sup>
- Separate technical information or high-volume materials into appendices or use cross-references as appropriate
- Include only the most relevant information—do not discuss effects that do not matter.

### 2.7.2 Archiving Forecast Analyses

In addition to producing thorough and understandable documentation of the forecasting effort, it is important for the study team to preserve the ability to replicate the forecasts in the future by archiving the relevant modeling information. Relevant modeling information includes the data inputs, outputs, and the model setup files, including a written description of the model methodology, model version, and the software used in the analysis.

During a land use and travel forecasting effort, the study team will produce a tremendous amount of intermediate data. Not all of these data are pertinent to the decisions made in the NEPA process and, consequently, these may not need to be archived as part of the NEPA documentation. It is important that all decisions about whether to archive data are made between the NEPA project manager and the documenters; it is also important to retain any data that might be needed in the future. The study team may also want to keep in mind that the NEPA process can be lengthy, which may mean that examinations or interpretations of forecasting inputs, assumptions, or results may come at the end of the NEPA process or during a legal challenge. The study team may need to look at this information several years into the future. The archiving procedure, including the selection of storage medium, should reflect this.

## 3.0 CONCLUSION

---

Few analysis methods are as integral to NEPA and other project development studies as travel and land use forecasting. Forecasts provide important information to project managers and decision-makers, and are used throughout the project development and NEPA processes, providing foundations for purpose and need. They are important in evaluating the performance of alternatives, the estimation of environmental impacts, induced land development effects, and resulting indirect and/or cumulative effects.

Even though it is so integral to the NEPA process, forecasting is not a heavily legislated or regulated area and is mainly driven by the standards of professional practice. This results in a large variation in practice and experience. Forecasting methods are often the source of disagreements among agencies, and forecasting is often the subject of litigation.

The FHWA embarked on creating this guidance to help improve the state-of-the-practice in relation to how project-level forecasting is applied in the NEPA process, since no procedural or process guidance has been issued in the past. As a companion to this guidance, the FHWA is creating a document that will include case studies and best practices to help further the improvement of forecasting techniques at the project level. Training and technical assistance will also be made available to provide educational and peer exchange opportunities to State DOTs, MPOs, resource agencies, and the consultant community, to encourage needed dialogue and discussion to improve the state-of-the-practice.

Another important area that is not addressed by this guidance or any of the complementary activities discussed above is the need to improve the actual technical methods used to forecast land use and travel behavior as applied to NEPA processes. The FHWA is involved in efforts to initiate research, in coopera-

---

<sup>70</sup> For example, effective graphics could include the use of GIS and thematic mapping tools to display benefits and tabulations of forecasts at aggregated levels of geography (e.g., district to district trip tables)

tion with the Transportation Research Board and AASHTO, and to create information that discusses up-to-date technical methods and improvements that can be applied to project-level forecasting.<sup>71</sup>

## 4.0 APPENDICES

---

### 4.1 Case Law Summary (January 2009)

#### 4.1.1 Introduction

This document was prepared to serve as a resource for the FHWA research project entitled “Development of Guidance on Travel Demand and Land Use Forecasting in NEPA.” The summaries below are intended to provide a sense of the current judicial perspectives on issues surrounding the preparation and use of travel demand and land use forecasts in evaluations prepared pursuant to the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA).<sup>72</sup>

A word of caution is in order about how readers use this material. This document does not constitute legal advice to any party. Readers should keep in mind that judicial interpretations of issues under NEPA differ from court to court. While decisions from the various jurisdictions can be instructive, as the summaries below illustrate, jurisdictional differences or differences in case facts often lead to variations in outcomes.

Finally, these summaries are much abbreviated descriptions from more detailed decisions. Those wishing to use these decisions for other than background purposes are advised to review the decisions in their entirety.

#### 4.1.2 Standard of Review

A reviewing court determines whether the agency took a “hard look” at environmental issues. As a part of its review, the court will consider whether the agency’s actions were arbitrary or capricious, an abuse of agency discretion, or otherwise not in accordance with the law or with procedures required by law. The court will consider whether the agency has compiled sufficient information to permit the agency to make a decision, considered relevant factors, articulated the reasoning behind its decisions, and disclosed this information to the public. Where these standards have been met, the courts will accord deference to the agency’s decisions.

1. *Kleppe v. Sierra Club*, 427 U.S. 390, 410 (1976)

In a footnote to its decision (footnote 21), the Supreme Court noted the limitations on the role of a reviewing court, favorably citing to earlier cases on this point:

Neither the statute nor its legislative history contemplates that a court should substitute its judgment for that of the agency as to the environmental consequences of its actions....The only role for a court is to insure that the agency has taken a “hard look” at environmental consequences; it cannot ‘interject itself within the area of discretion of the executive as to the choice of the action to be taken....’

(citations omitted).

This “**hard look**” doctrine has been applied consistently since *Kleppe*.

---

<sup>71</sup> For example, a key reference document in this field is *NCHRP Report 255: Highway Traffic Data for Urbanized Area Project Planning and Design*, TRB, 1982, which documents techniques that were the state of the practice over 25 years ago; since then there have been many technological innovations that are now in common use

<sup>72</sup> 42 U.S.C. § 4231 *et seq.*

2. *Vermont Yankee Nuclear Power Corp. v. Natural Res. Def. Council Inc.*, 435 U.S. 519, 557-58 (1978)

The Supreme Court considered the standard of review under NEPA and emphasized that judicial review under NEPA is primarily focused on procedural requirements of the statute:

NEPA does set forth significant substantive goals for the Nation, but its mandate to the agencies is essentially procedural.... It is to insure a fully informed and well-considered decision, not necessarily a decision the judges of the Court of Appeals or of this Court would have reached had they been members of the decision making unit of the agency. Administrative decisions should be set aside in this context ... only for substantial procedural or substantive reasons as mandated by statute ... not simply because the court is unhappy with the result reached.

(citations omitted).

3. *Strycker's Bay Neighborhood Council v. Karlen*, 444 U.S. 223, 227 (1980)

The Supreme Court further clarified the standard of judicial review under NEPA, emphasizing again the procedural nature of NEPA and limiting the ability of the reviewing court to substitute its judgment on substantive issues.

... the Court of Appeals [concluded in its earlier decision in *Strycker*] that an agency, in selecting a course of action, must elevate environmental concerns over other appropriate considerations. On the contrary, once an agency has made a decision subject to NEPA's procedural requirements, the only role for a court is to insure that the agency has considered the environmental consequences; it cannot 'interject itself within the area of discretion of the executive as to the choice of the action to be taken.'

(citations omitted).

4. *Marsh v. Oregon Natural Res.*, 490 U.S. 360, 375-78 (1989)

In examining the question whether there was significant new information that required preparation of a supplemental EIS, the Supreme Court held that the proper standard of review is found in the Administrative Procedure Act (APA) at 5 U.S.C. § 706(2)(A), which provides that a reviewing court shall "hold unlawful and set aside agency action, findings, and conclusions found to be arbitrary, capricious, an abuse of discretion, or otherwise not in accordance with law." The Court noted that the question presented for review was a 'classic example of a factual dispute the resolution of which implicates substantial agency expertise' and that the dispute involved primarily issues of fact that could be analyzed only by the application of a high level of technical expertise. The Court did note that, when determining whether an agency decision was 'arbitrary or capricious,' the reviewing court 'must consider whether the decision was based on a consideration of the relevant factors and whether there has been a clear error of judgment.' This inquiry must 'be searching and careful,' but 'the ultimate standard of review is a narrow one.'

(citations omitted).

5. *N. Buckhead Civic Ass'n v. Skinner*, 903 F.2d 1533, 1543 (11th Cir. 1990)

Where an EIS was challenged on the basis that the agencies' review of the available traffic and environmental information was incomplete or inaccurate, the Court held that

[r]esolution of this dispute requires analysis of the relevant environmental documents and traffic projections, so we cannot accept appellants' contentions that our review is of a legal question. The questions presented for review in this section are classic examples of 'a factual dispute the resolution of which implicates substantial agency expertise, so we must defer to the informed discretion of the responsible agencies.' Accordingly, as noted above, the agencies' decisions on the adequacy of the environmental and traffic data should not be set aside unless arbitrary and capricious.

(footnotes and citations omitted).

6. *Senville v. Peters*, 327 F. Supp. 2d 335, 344-45, 69 (D. Vt. 2004)

The Court summarized the provisions of the APA, which governs judicial review of a Federal agency's compliance with NEPA, and of its application in NEPA cases. The Court noted that under the relevant provisions of the APA, a reviewing court shall "hold unlawful and set aside agency action, findings, and conclusions found to be...arbitrary, capricious, an abuse of discretion, or otherwise not in accordance with law, ... [or] without observance of procedure required by law."<sup>73</sup> The *Senville* Court went on to state that a reviewing court may not substitute its judgment for that of the agency, but

an agency decision may be set aside where the agency 'has relied on factors which Congress has not intended it to consider, entirely failed to consider an important part of the problem, offered an explanation for its decision that runs counter to the evidence before the agency, or is so implausible that it could not be ascribed to a difference in view or the product of agency expertise.' ... An EIS will be upheld as adequate if the agency has followed a 'rule of reason' in its preparation, and has compiled it in good faith, and set forth 'sufficient information to enable the decision-maker to consider fully the environmental factors involved and to make a reasoned decision after balancing the risks of harm ... against the benefits to be derived from the proposed action, as well as to make a reasoned choice between alternatives.'

However, the Court went on to hold that where there had not been a "hard look" at cumulative impacts,

[t]his neglect of a statutory duty is not subject to the arbitrary and capricious standard afforded an agency determination of whether new information is likely to have a significant impact on the environment; the Court concludes that the failure to produce any environmental document that addresses the cumulative impacts of the [project] when considered with other projects was 'not in accordance with law.' 5 U.S.C. § 706(2)(A).

(footnotes and citations omitted).

7. *Senville v Peters*, 2006 WL 2585130, at \*2 (D. Vt. July 20, 2006)

The Court denied a government motion to amend its judgment in the 2004 case (see above). With respect to the scope of review, the Court noted that

[i]n this Circuit a court must ascertain that 'the agency has made an adequate compilation of relevant information, has analyzed it reasonably, has not ignored pertinent data, and has made disclosures to the public.' This Court was able to perform this task with respect to a portion of the induced growth analysis, and concluded that FHWA took the requisite 'hard look.'

(footnotes and citations omitted).

8. *Laguna Greenbelt v. U.S. Dep't of Transp.*, 42 F.3d 517, 523 (9th Cir. 1994)

The Court, considering a challenge to a decision not to prepare a supplemental EIS, noted that "[we] may not substitute [our] judgment for that of the agency concerning the wisdom or prudence of a proposed action." Under our "rule of reason," we determine " 'whether the [EIS] contains a reasonably thorough discussion of the significant aspects of the probable environmental consequences' by making 'a pragmatic judgment whether the [EIS's] form, content and preparation foster both informed decision-making and informed public participation.' "

(citations omitted).

---

<sup>73</sup> 5 U.S.C.A 706(2)(A), (D)

### 4.1.3 Travel and Land Use Forecasts: When Are They Relevant?

Forecasts relating to future travel demand and land use have relevance for defining project purpose and need, selecting project alternatives, and determining likely project impacts (direct, indirect, and cumulative).

#### 4.1.3.1 Purpose and Need

Data-driven determinations of purpose and need typically will be upheld so long as the data is valid and is interpreted in a reasonable and credible manner.

1. *North Carolina Alliance for Transp. Reform v. U.S. Dept. of Transp.*, 151 F. Supp. 2d 661, 686-88 (N.D. N. C. 2001)

Although the parties settled the underlying case, the Court reviewed the NEPA issues in order to determine whether the plaintiffs were entitled to attorneys fees. The Court recognized that traffic projections prepared for the project played a legitimate role in establishing purpose and need. With respect to purpose, the Court found that providing a continuous north-south connecting road that would link the existing radial farm-to-market roadways was not an overly narrow statement of purpose where traffic projections showed that only 10 percent of the projected traffic in the relevant area would be through traffic and that the vast majority of the traffic needed to travel within that local area. The Court also indicated that it would defer to the transportation agencies on whether the traffic projections for the proposed facility sufficiently established need, but that the agencies' intentional misstatement of traffic modeling data showing expected daily traffic volumes on the new facility was impermissible.

In this case, the traffic projections used in the [Final Environmental Impact Statement] FEIS were not only overstated, they were considerably higher than the updated figures that Defendants decided to omit. While a need for the proposed project might have existed even under the lower traffic projections, the decision to purposefully include the higher, significantly overstated estimates of traffic projections in the FEIS conflicts with one of the major policy goals of NEPA and fails to accurately examine an important aspect of the project. Defendants violated NEPA by purposefully including the inaccurate data in the FEIS. *See* 40 C.F.R. § 1500.1(b) ("Accurate scientific analysis, expert agency comments, and public scrutiny are essential to implementing NEPA.").

The Court concluded that the plaintiffs were entitled to attorneys' fees under the Equal Access to Justice Act, 28 U.S.C. § 2412.

2. *Burkholder v. Wykle*, 268 F. Supp.2d 835, 849-50 (N.D. Ohio 2002)

Plaintiffs challenged a Finding of No Significant Impact issued for a project that would upgrade and/or relocate various highway segments in Ohio. Plaintiffs' claims included an attack on the project's purpose and need. Plaintiffs alleged that the purpose and need was overly narrow and based, in part, on faulty forecasting of the project's probable benefits to traffic volume, safety, and economic prosperity. The District Court held that the purpose and need statement satisfied NEPA requirements. The Court found that

...the project's stated justification is supported by sufficient data. In fact, the record is clear that the data, upon which the defendants relied, showed that the level of service on the present U.S. 30 was seriously deficient... that traffic could be expected to increase as it had during the previous decade, that the safety of the route was a significant concern of both the public and highway officials, and that the improvement would be economically beneficial. Moreover, in light of the foregoing, the Court finds a factual basis for the defendants' conclusion that a limited-access, four-lane freeway would best solve the road's problems. While it is clear that the plaintiffs' expert has reached a different conclusion, the Court must be wary of interposing itself in such a technical or methodological dispute. This being so, the Court finds that the defendants' projection of the im-

provement's benefits was not arbitrary and capricious and rejects the plaintiffs' contention in this regard.

(citations omitted).

3. *Sierra Club, Ill. Chapter v. U.S. Dep't of Transp.*, 962 F. Supp. 1037, 1043 (N.D. Ill. 1997)

The Court found that, while it is legally sufficient to rely on existing transportation needs to justify a project even if the future needs analysis is flawed, in this case the FEIS contained no analysis of how the project would improve travel times, enhance community linkages, or alleviate other existing transportation problems. The Court found the FEIS legally insufficient because of the absence of such information.

#### **4.1.3.2 Analysis of Alternatives**

NEPA documentation must demonstrate that forecasts have been used in a rational and supportable manner when they serve as part of the underpinning for project purpose, and where project alternatives are judged based on their ability to satisfy forecasted needs. Courts may, of course, come out with differing views of what is adequate based on the particular facts of the case. *See also* section 4.1.4.4 below.

1. *Sierra Club, Ill. Chapter v. U.S. Dep't of Transp.*, 962 F. Supp. 1037, 1043 (N.D. Ill. 1997)

Challengers alleged that the use of the same land use forecast for the build and no build scenarios prevented a rational analysis of alternatives. The Court agreed, stating that

...the final impact statement in this case relies on the implausible assumption that the same level of transportation needs will exist whether or not the tollroad is constructed....The result is a forecast of future needs that only the proposed tollroad can satisfy. As a result, the final impact statement creates a self-fulfilling prophecy that makes a reasoned analysis of how different alternatives satisfy future needs impossible.

(footnotes and citations omitted).

2. *Laguna Greenbelt v. U.S. Dept. of Transp.*, 42 F.3d 517, 526-27 (9th Cir. 1994)

The Appellate Court upheld the agencies' use of data for the build and no-build alternatives where they relied on local planning documents. The challengers claimed that the EIS's analysis was flawed because it purported to reflect a comparison between the environment with and without the tollroad through the year 2010, but that the traffic projections used in the EIS failed to provide a true comparison because they were based on population and housing data that assumed existence of the tollroad. The Court agreed that the projections did assume the existence of the tollroad, but held that the incongruity was not fatal because "the need for the corridor is based on existing as well as future traffic congestion...and the county's population probably will grow in the coming years even without the corridor, AR 31:013173 (population increased by 2.1 million from 1950 to 1989 with little highway improvement...)."

(citations omitted).

3. *Jones v. Peters*, 2007 WL 2783387, at \*10-11, 23 (D. Utah September 21, 2007)

Plaintiffs challenged FHWA approval of two highway projects in Utah. Claims included the allegation that the traffic modeling used to screen alternatives was flawed and incorrectly calculated the ability of various alternatives to improve mobility. As a result, the plaintiffs claimed that the alternatives analysis failed to satisfy the NEPA requirement to "rigorously explore and objectively evaluate all reasonable alternatives..."40 C.F.R. § 1502.14(a) (2006). The Court rejected the claims, finding that

The traffic modeling relied upon by the agencies in ...evaluating alternatives comprehends nearly 40 current regional transportation plans, federal and state, as well as the projected traffic demand for the region within and beyond the study area boundaries. It takes into account the phasing of plans from now through 2030, including increased mass transit development that may affect the study area. Alternatives to the proposed action are thus evaluated using projections that take into account that larger context.

While the plaintiffs dispute the methodology used and conclusions drawn from the agencies' traffic modeling, they have not persuaded this court that the agencies' traffic modeling and the analysis flowing from that modeling lacked a rational basis, lacked consistency, or failed to take relevant considerations into account. Expert opinions do clash over the efficacy of one approach to traffic flow analysis compared with another. But disagreement between experts often does not present an 'either-or' question, and each of the opinions may be footed upon its own rational basis.

Here, neither NEPA nor § 4(f) call upon this court to resolve those differences of expert opinion-to make a *de novo* determination of the comparative accuracy of the experts' contrasting approaches to traffic modeling, or to choose between differing interpretations of the modeled data. Those choices are for the FHWA, not the court. Instead, this court must decide whether the agencies' choices of method and interpretation as to the modeling of traffic data had a rational footing. Based upon the record now before us, this court concludes that they did.

(footnotes and citations omitted).

#### **4.1.3.3 Direct, Indirect, and Cumulative Impacts Analyses**

Impacts must be addressed if they are "reasonably foreseeable." That standard has been interpreted as meaning that the impact is "sufficiently likely to occur that a person of ordinary prudence would take it into account in reaching a decision."<sup>74</sup> The Supreme Court in *U.S. Dep't. of Transp. v Public Citizen*, 541 U.S. 752, 769, 124 S.Ct. 2204, 2216 (2004) rejected the "but for" test that had evolved to determine whether effects required NEPA analysis because they were causally linked to a Federal action. The Court held that that the correct test is whether the Federal action is the "legally relevant cause" of the effects. Application of the *Public Citizen* test is requires a more complex analysis than the earlier "but for" analysis and practitioners are encourage to consult with counsel if there is any question whether the effects they are considering meet the *Public Citizen* test.<sup>75</sup>

CEQ regulations explicitly recognize induced growth among the potential indirect effects of a project:

Indirect effects may include growth inducing effects and other effects related to induced changes in the pattern of land use, population density or growth rate, and related effects on air and water and other natural systems, including ecosystems. 40 CFR § 1508.8(b).

As with alternatives, care should be taken to ensure that information is developed and used in a rational and supportable way.

##### 1. *City of Davis v. Coleman*, 521 F.2d 661, 675-77 (9th Cir. 1975)

In an early case addressing the linkage between land use and transportation, the Court held that FHWA must prepare an EIS and must address the land use impacts of the proposed action. The Court found it particularly problematic that the environmental review performed by FHWA and the State had ignored such impacts even though the purpose of the project was to facilitate economic development in the project area. The Court stated that

... it is obvious that constructing a large interchange on a major interstate highway in an agricultural area where no connecting road currently exists will have a substantial impact on a number of environmental factors....The growth-inducing effects of the [interchange project] are its *raison d'etre*, and with growth will come growth's problems: increased population, increased traffic, increased pollution, and increased demand for services such as utilities, education, police and fire protection, and recreational facilities.

<sup>74</sup> *Dubois v. U.S. Dep't of Agric.*, 102 F.3d 1273, 1286 (1th Cir.1996) (quoting *Sierra Club v. Marsh*, 976 F.2d 763, 767 (1th Cir.1992)).

<sup>75</sup> For a helpful discussion of *Public Citizen* and its progeny, see *Humane Soc. of U.S. v Johanns*, 520 F.Supp.2d 8, 22-28 (D.D.C. 2007).

The expert opinions and studies that [the plaintiff] has submitted during this litigation bolster the conclusion that [the State]...could not have known enough about the environmental effects of this project to 'reasonably conclude' that they would not be significant.... In this context the purpose of an EIS/EIR is to evaluate the possibilities in light of current and contemplated plans and to produce an informed estimate of the environmental consequences. That the exact type of development is not known is not an excuse for failing to file an impact statement at all. Uncertainty about the pace and direction of development merely suggests the need for exploring in the EIS/EIR alternative scenarios based on these external contingencies....It must be remembered that the basic thrust of an agency's responsibilities under NEPA is to predict the environmental effects of proposed action before the action is taken and those effects fully known. Reasonable forecasting and speculation is thus implicit in NEPA, and we must reject any attempt by agencies to shirk their responsibilities under NEPA by labeling any and all discussion of future environmental effects as 'crystal ball inquiry.'

2. *Utahns for Better Transp. v. U.S. Dep't of Transp.*, 305 F.2d 1152, 1179-80 (10th Cir. 2002)

The geographic scope of forecasted land use changes does not necessarily define the areas of evaluation for impact analysis. Where the Federal agencies considered impacts on wildlife habitat only within an "arbitrary" 1000 foot distance from the right of way, the Court held the FEIS was inadequate. The Court noted that while the FWS had submitted information to show that "roads can cause significant adverse effects to bird populations as far as 1.24 miles from roadways, especially in open terrain like that adjacent to the proposed Legacy Parkway," the agencies had decided to limit the analysis to the 1000-foot area because "the data ...collected for land use (which extended to 1 mile from the edge of the wetland) did not result in any statistical difference from the data collected at 1000 feet." The Court concluded that the 1000-foot limitation was overly restrictive and eliminated evaluation of species of concern to agencies and the public, including migratory birds. The failure to address migratory bird impacts rendered the FEIS inadequate.

3. *Sierra Club v. U.S. Dep't of Transp.*, 310 F. Supp. 2d 1168, 1186-88 (D. Nev. 2004)

Plaintiffs brought several challenges to the EIS for a proposed highway project. One of these challenges alleged that FHWA inadequately analyzed the indirect impacts of the project, including induced growth and induced travel. The Court upheld the sufficiency of the FEIS analysis of induced growth, finding that the FEIS discussed at length various land use and zoning issues including existing plans for master planned communities and other land uses in the area, city and county growth plans and zoning regulations and patterns, current and anticipated land use and zoning, and "induced" or "accelerated development impacts."

The Court was more troubled by the treatment of induced travel. After reciting the effect that failure to account for induced travel may have on decision-making ("...may lead agencies to select projects which provide no relief from congestion combined with increased adverse impacts to air quality...."), the Court discussed the degree to which the modeling accounted for the full range of induced travel impacts. The FHWA admitted that the model did not account for impacts from new trips made in direct response to a perceived reduction in congestion, but said that the portion of induced travel that the model did not address was a small and indeterminate part of induced travel effects and that current models cannot accurately capture the information. In the end, the Court upheld the sufficiency of the EIS on this point, finding that

...the FEIS's treatment of induced travel effects is a reasonably thorough analysis. The FEIS considered nearly all induced travel effects. The portion not considered is the subject of scientific debate, and current models vary in their calculations to quantify induced travel effects. ... Consequently, FHWA included a reasonably thorough evaluation of induced travel effects based on the information and modeling techniques available to the agency at that time.

(citations omitted).

#### **4.1.4 Issues Affecting Sufficiency Under NEPA**

The NEPA document's discussion must be adequate to inform decision-makers and the public about the various ways in which induced growth and other effects may occur. The agency must examine the relevant data and articulate a reasoned basis for its choice of methodologies and its decisions. Conclusory statements are not enough. It is important to think through all of the "links in the chain" of potential effects and to disclose and discuss information on all sides of an issue.

##### **4.1.4.1 Consideration of an Appropriate Range of Impacts**

When public or agency comments, or the transportation agencies' own evaluation, suggest that impacts may occur, the agencies should address those impacts in the NEPA documentation. The nature of the impact at issue will dictate the degree of evaluation and explanation required. The failure to provide *any* information on identified potential impacts often leads reviewing courts to find that the agencies have violated NEPA.

1. *Senville v. Peters*, 327 F. Supp. 2d 335, 368-69 (D. Vt. 2004)

The Court held that, even though the FHWA had taken a "hard look" at whether an alternative would cause growth that would not have occurred without construction, the agency failed to consider other requisite aspects of the induced growth issue.

Induced growth consists not only of growth that would not have occurred absent the project, however, but of relocated or redirected growth due to changes in accessibility. The 1986 FEIS assumed that relocated development would occur generally in the vicinity of the new intersections and in high density zoning districts. There was no discussion of the potential detrimental impact upon areas from which population and resources would be drained....In response to comments pointing out this omission, FHWA noted that growth rates in the urban core cities have been declining for thirty years and are predicted to continue, and that the change attributable to the [project] is too small to be material....To the charge that FHWA underestimated the impact on communities that will experience increased development pressure due to increased accessibility, FHWA responded only that towns in the area will experience increased but insignificant development pressure. The dismissive treatment of relocated growth pressures on the outlying towns ... is inconsistent with a hard look at relocated or redirected growth, particularly when the issue was not part of the original EIS. Despite the massive number of pages devoted to attempting to quantify induced growth, the Court cannot conclude that the determination that relocated growth will have an insignificant impact upon the inner cities or outlying towns is based upon reason.

(citations omitted).

2. *Conservation Law Found. v. Fed. Highway Admin.*, 2007 WL 2492737, at \*24 (D.N.H. August 30, 2007)

The Court found that the agencies failed to consider appropriately the population growth and attendant traffic impacts on air quality.

Because Defendants based their air quality analysis on traffic counts derived from the use of an outdated OEP population forecast that did not account for induced population growth, they did not consider how air quality will be affected by the additional traffic that will result if the Delphi Panel's population growth forecasts are correct. Accordingly, they must revise their analysis to address the foreseeable air quality effects of the additional baseline and induced population growth forecast by the Delphi Panel.

#### 4.1.4.2 Sufficient Disclosure and Discussion

Agencies have an obligation to disclose potential environmental impacts, including those identified by others (and especially those identified by agencies with relevant expertise). NEPA documentation should include at least a brief summary of potential impacts and the results of the evaluations of those impacts. Courts consistently reject documentation that contains a "mere conclusory statement" not accompanied by any rationale for the conclusion about the impact. With some regularity, courts find a NEPA violation where there is a failure to disclose new or conflicting data, or a failure to explain the rationale behind the agency's choice about which data to use. The level of detail required in the documentation's discussion depends upon the importance of the impact under consideration.

1. *Davis v. Mineta*, 302 F.3d 1104, 1123 (10th Cir. 2002)

The Court held the EA inadequate where it failed to do more than make conclusory statements. For example, stand-alone statements like "growth would increase with or without the project," or "development is inevitable" are insufficient. The Court pointed out that the minimal and conflicting statements in the EA, which were the subject of an EPA comment calling for further analysis, failed to provide an adequate discussion of growth-inducing impacts. The Court also noted that the agencies apparently did not adequately address the EPA's comments in the EA.

The EPA's viewpoint on this issue is undeniably relevant. While it is true that NEPA 'requires agencies preparing environmental impact statements to consider and respond to the comments of other agencies, not to agree with them,' it is also true that a reviewing court 'may properly be skeptical as to whether an EIS's conclusions have a substantial basis in fact if the responsible agency has apparently ignored the conflicting views of other agencies having pertinent expertise.'

(footnotes and citations omitted).

2. *Senville v. Peters*, 327 F. Supp. 2d 335, 369 (D. Vt. 2004)

In ruling that the FHWA has failed to comply with NEPA, the Court found that

[o]ther than the bald assertion in the introduction to the induced growth study that 'induced growth, as utilized in this study, includes both secondary and cumulative impacts'...the Court has been unable to find any discussion of cumulative impacts in the study or the [EA] overall.

NEPA requires a 'sponsoring agency to consider the impact on the environment resulting from the *cumulative* effect of the contemplated action and other past, present, and 'reasonably foreseeable' future actions.' As noted above, there has been no environmental analysis whatsoever, in the entire life of this project, of the cumulative effect of the [project] considered in conjunction with other past, present and reasonably foreseeable future actions.

(citations omitted).

The Court also pointed to "the cursory treatment of induced growth impacts in the 1986 FEIS; its failure to recognize that there will be induced growth impacts on outlying towns and on the cities; its inadequate treatment of secondary impacts on agricultural lands; the [EA's] omission of analysis of the effects of re-located growth on the inner cities and outlying towns" and other factors as grounds for its determination.

3. *Laguna Greenbelt v. U.S. Dept. of Transp.*, 42 F.3d 517, 525-26 (9th Cir. 1994).

The Court, reviewing a challenge to the sufficiency of an EIS discussion of growth-inducing impacts, upheld the adequacy of the EIS. The Court noted the distinction between cases where the EIS contained unsupported, conclusory statements and those cases where an EIS's discussion of growth-inducing impacts was reasonably thorough. The Court acknowledged that the EIS's analysis of growth-inducing impacts had weaknesses, including some data that could be interpreted as contradicting the EIS's conclusion

about growth-inducing effects; but the Court determined that the weaknesses did not prevent a conclusion that the discussion of growth-inducing impacts in the EIS easily met the “rule of reason.”

NEPA does not require us to decide whether an EIS is based on the best scientific methodology available or to resolve disagreements among various experts. While Laguna may disagree with the EIS’s substantive conclusion regarding growth-inducing impacts, the EIS’s discussion of those impacts was reasonably thorough.

(footnotes and citations omitted).

4. *Citizens Advocate Team v. U.S. Dep’t of Transp.*, 2004 WL 725279, at \*5-6 (N.D. Ill. March 31, 2004)

Reviewing an allegation that the FEIS failed to satisfy NEPA because it failed to provide a detailed assessment of growth and traffic inducing impacts, the Court found that the FEIS was adequate and noted that the extent of discussion required should be determined based on the “overall level of significance the agency places on the impacts.” The Court looked to whether the agency had made a “reasonable, good faith, objective presentation of the impacts sufficient to foster public participation and informed decision making.” It concluded that

...[a]lthough the Final EIS contains only a limited discussion of the projected traffic and population increases associated with the construction of the [project], the FHWA’s decision to issue the ROD was not arbitrary and capricious in light of the minor role these growth-inducing impacts were determined to have on the surrounding area....Where the growth-inducing impacts or effects are determined to be minor, however, the agency is not required to quantify all possible effects provided it has reasonably explained why such a quantification is not necessary or feasible.

(footnotes and citations omitted).

5. *Conservation Law Found. v. Fed. Highway Admin.*, 2007 WL 2492737, at \*23 (D.N.H. August 30, 2007)

In addition to studies, the agencies used a Delphi Panel to estimate growth-inducing effects of the proposed project. The Court held that the agencies are obliged to disclose the effects of that panel’s work on traffic projections for the project. The Court rejected the agencies’ position that disclosure was not required because the additional traffic that would result from the panel’s forecast was not significant.

While this argument may well justify a decision to proceed with [the preferred alternative]...it cannot excuse a decision to withhold information from the public that leaves it with the mistaken impression that the selected alternative will be substantially more effective in achieving one of the project’s two primary objectives than may actually be the case. Reliable information produced by the agency’s own experts that casts doubt on the agency’s statements concerning a selected alternative’s effectiveness is not insignificant....The additional traffic projected ... is also significant because it will produce foreseeable indirect effects on secondary road traffic and air quality that Defendants failed to analyze in the FEIS.... This foreseeable effect of the [preferred alternative] must be assessed by the Defendants in a manner that allows for public comment.

The Court did uphold the agencies’ use of challenged forecasts for vehicle operation and parking cost assumptions in their decision to eliminate rail from further consideration as an alternative. The Court cited the fact that the agencies gave a rational explanation in the FEIS for why they relied on the assumptions, and performed an additional sensitivity test in response to DEIS comments.

(footnotes and citations omitted).

#### **4.1.4.3 Choice of Methodology**

Agencies generally are entitled to select the methodologies they will use for NEPA analyses. Courts typically will not substitute their judgment for the agencies’ expertise if the agencies have explained in the NEPA documentation their reasons for choosing one method over another, including the reasons for re-

jecting other methodologies. There are limitations on this deference. If the chosen methodology lacks a rational basis, lacks consistency, or fails to take relevant considerations into account, or if the transportation agencies' choice of methodology ignores the comments of agencies with particular expertise and fails to explain why those comments were ignored, courts will take a harder look and may overturn the transportation agencies' decision.

1. *N. Buckhead Civic Ass'n v. Skinner*, 903 F.2d 1533, 1543- 44 (11th Cir. 1990).

Appeal of a case that attacked the validity of traffic modeling used to generate projections used in evaluating alternatives. The challengers argued that the estimates failed to take into account the possible beneficial effect of mass transit on traffic in the corridor. The traffic projections came from the State DOT's analysis of present traffic amounts and projected future amounts, which in turn relied on system-wide projections calculated using the MPO's computer model. The State DOT projected highway use statistics for the year 2010 by assuming that the calculated growth trend for 1990 to 2000 would continue into the next century and by incorporating planned improvements from the regional plan. The FHWA accepted the techniques, and it was used on several important highway projects. The MPO had agreed with the State's traffic estimates as "consistent with 1990 and 2000 system traffic assignments and with 2010 [regional] socio-economic and land use forecasts." The Court noted that the challengers had neither offered any alternate method of computation, nor identified specific errors in the calculations. The Court upheld the agencies' action, referring to an earlier case where

this court was called on to determine the propriety of competing traffic projection methodologies. The court recognized that it could not expect the district court to designate itself as a 'super professional transportation analyst' to determine the proper traffic planning technique. The same result must obtain here. After reviewing all the evidence, the district court concluded in this case that the plaintiffs failed to show that the traffic computations were unreasonable. The choice of methodology was determined to have a rational basis and was consistently applied in an objective manner. Our review of the record convinces us that this finding [by the lower court] is not clearly erroneous.

(footnotes and citations omitted).

2. *Senville v. Peters*, 327 F. Supp 2d 335, 354, 365-67 (D. Vt. 2004)

The Court rejected several challenges to the agencies' choice of methodologies for traffic and land use forecasts, even though it found the induced growth impacts analysis inadequate on other grounds. The plaintiffs alleged that the traffic methodology was flawed because it inflated the traffic levels under the no-build scenario, and failed to consider the impact of induced travel (increased road capacity that encourages additional travel) or peak-hour shifting (off-peak trips that shift into peak-hour due to perceived decreases in congestion). They also alleged that the traffic model was flawed because the demographic and economic forecasts that were used in the model assumed that sufficient infrastructure will be available to support the population and economic growth trends that they predicted, and therefore the same socioeconomic estimates were used to model both the build and no-build scenarios. As a result, the plaintiffs alleged, the build and no-build scenarios were bound to show no significant difference in the overall amount of growth in the area. The Court found that

[w]hile the Plaintiffs' objection may prove to be well-taken, a dispute over the inputs to a computer model is the kind of technical determination that requires deference to the agency from the Court, which is constrained to determine whether or not FHWA made a 'reasoned decision,' even if its conclusion is debatable. Given the wealth of opinion that supports the assumption of no significant increase in overall regional growth from construction of a circumferential highway, and the outcome of the ... modeling, the Court cannot say that FHWA's conclusion was not a reasoned decision.

(footnotes and citations omitted).

3. *Jones v. Peters*, 2007 WL 2783387, at \*23 (D. Utah September 21, 2007)

Plaintiffs alleged that the traffic modeling used in the screening of alternatives already included the future traffic flows both inside and outside of the FEIS study area. The Court found that the traffic modeling relied upon by the agencies considered

...nearly 40 current regional transportation plans, federal and state, as well as the projected traffic demand for the region within and beyond the study area boundaries. It takes into account the phasing of plans from now through 2030, including increased mass transit development that may affect the study area. Alternatives to the proposed action are thus evaluated using projections that take into account that larger context.

The Court concluded that

[w]hile the plaintiffs dispute the methodology used and conclusions drawn from the agencies' traffic modeling, they have not persuaded this court that the agencies' traffic modeling and the analysis flowing from that modeling lacked a rational basis, lacked consistency, or failed to take relevant considerations into account. Expert opinions do clash over the efficacy of one approach to traffic flow analysis compared with another. But disagreement between experts often does not present an 'either-or' question, and each of the opinions may be footed upon its own rational basis....Here, neither NEPA nor § 4(f) call upon this court to resolve those differences of expert opinion-to make a *de novo* determination of the comparative accuracy of the experts' contrasting approaches to traffic modeling, or to choose between differing interpretations of the modeled data. Those choices are for the FHWA, not the court. Instead, this court must decide whether the agencies' choices of method and interpretation as to the modeling of traffic data had a rational footing. Based upon the record now before us, this court concludes that they did.

4. *Sierra Club v. Marita*, 46 F.3d 606, 621-23 (7th Cir. 1995)

In a case challenging the U.S. Forest Service's adoption of a forest management plan, the Court upheld the agency's choice of methodology, stating that agencies are entitled to use their own methodology "unless it is irrational." The record demonstrated that the agency developed its own method of analysis, and that it had considered (i.e., had taken a "hard look" at) the conservation biology principles put forth by the plaintiffs but rejected them based on the scientific uncertainty about the actual application of those principles. The Court upheld the agency's application of the "uncertainty" provision in CEQ regulation.

[The challengers] misapprehend the 'uncertainty' of which the Service and the district court spoke. We agree that an agency decision to avoid a science should not escape review merely because a theory is not certain. But, however valid a general theory may be, it does not translate into a management tool unless one can apply it to a concrete situation....Nor did [the CEQ regulation on uncertainty at 40 CFR § 1502.22] require the Service to use a methodology it reasonably found lacking in certainty of application. 'NEPA does not require that we decide whether an [EIS] is based on the best scientific methodology available, nor does NEPA require us to resolve disagreements among various scientists as to methodology.'

The Court also rejected the argument that the agency's choice of science ought to be tested against evidentiary rules governing the admissibility of scientific expert testimony.

An EIS is designed to ensure open and honest debate of the environmental consequences of an agency action, not to prove admissibility of testimony in a court of law. *Cf.* 40 CFR § 1500.1(c) ('Ultimately, of course, it is not better documents but better decisions that count. NEPA's purpose is not to generate paperwork-even excellent paperwork-but to foster excellent action.').

The Court went on to conclude that, to the extent that the CEQ regulation on uncertainty requires a discussion of the issue, the agency had complied by describing the alternate approach and stating its reasons for rejecting it.

(footnotes and citations omitted).

5. *Natural Res. Def. Council v. Herrington*, 768 F.2d 1355, 1385 (D.C. Cir. 1985)

Where a Department of Energy final rule was challenged based, in part, on its choice of modeling, the Court upheld the agency's action, stating that

As we have recently reaffirmed, '[a]n agency may utilize a predictive model so long as it explains the assumptions and methodology it used in preparing the model. If the model is challenged, the agency must provide a full analytical defense.' However, we will defer to an agency's judgment to use a particular model if the agency examines the relevant data and articulates a reasoned basis for its decision.

(footnotes and citations omitted).

#### **4.1.4.4 Conflicts, Inconsistencies, and Validity Issues in Modeling or Data**

Consistency and integrity in the selection and use of data is important. Courts often fault agencies for appearing to "pick and choose" which data or assumptions to use in different parts of the NEPA analysis. Courts also sometimes find that agencies are overly eager to determine that there is "uncertainty" that excuses analysis. Agencies should disclose and resolve data conflicts (including "old" versus "new" data), inconsistencies, and validity problems. The agencies must ensure that the record contains an explanation of the problem and how it was resolved. If such problem is not cured, the agencies bear the burden of providing a full and credible explanation in the NEPA documentation.

1. *Laguna Greenbelt v. U.S. Dep't of Transp.*, 42 F.3d 517, 526-27 (9th Cir. 1994)

Appellate court, in reviewing a lower court decision that EIS satisfied NEPA, upheld the adequacy of the EIS. The Court upheld the agencies' use of data for the build and no-build alternatives where they relied on local planning documents. The challengers had claimed that the EIS contained insufficient data and analysis regarding the need for the proposed tollroad, its air quality and traffic impacts, and alternatives to the project. Among the allegations was that the EIS's analysis was flawed because it purported to reflect a comparison between the environment with and without the tollroad through the year 2010, but that the traffic projections used in the EIS failed to provide a true comparison because they were based on population and housing data that assumed existence of the tollroad. The Court agreed that the projections did assume the existence of the tollroad, but held that the incongruity was not fatal because "the need for the corridor is based on existing as well as future traffic congestion...and the county's population probably will grow in the coming years even without the corridor, see AR 31:013173 (population increased by 2.1 million from 1950 to 1989 with little highway improvement...)."

(citations omitted).

2. *Utahns for Better Trans. v. U.S. Dep't of Transp.*, 305 F. 3d 1152, 1182 (10th Cir. 2002)

The Court of Appeals upheld a district court decision relating to alleged flaws in modeling and data analysis used for a FEIS. The challengers alleged that the agencies failed to meet their obligation to "insure the professional integrity, including scientific integrity, of the discussions and analyses in the environmental impact statements" (citing 40 CFR § 1502.24). The agencies, among other things, adjusted parameters used in the travel demand model, and used different estimates of vehicle miles traveled in future years. Describing its review as "applying the rule of reason and overlooking minor technical deficiencies," the Court upheld the agencies' decisions on these points. The Court also referenced earlier portions of its opinion, where it discussed the ability of agencies to depart from their normal protocols if a rational explanation is given for doing so.

The plaintiffs also had alleged that the agencies relied on outdated and questionable "household survey" results to determine the public's interest in using mass transit. The agencies argued that the Travel Demand Model Peer Review found the household survey to be adequate. The Court rejected the challenge, finding that the agencies were entitled to rely on their own experts and noting that the FEIS relied on the

higher transit demand projection that was generated by an independent method that did not use survey results.

(citations omitted).

3. *Conservation Law Found. v. Fed. Highway Admin.*, 2007 WL 2492737, at \*22 (D.N.H. August 30, 2007)

Agencies used a Delphi panel and more recent state planning data to create an updated induced population growth forecast for the EIS, then used that updated information to evaluate the indirect effects of induced population growth on land use, water quality, and wildlife. However, the agencies chose not to use the forecast to evaluate the traffic-generating effects of induced population growth on the affected interstate or secondary roads, or for air quality issues. The Court concluded that the agencies had erred, stating that the agencies

...used the same outdated [state planning] population growth forecast in their traffic projections for both the No Action Alternative and the Four Lane Alternative even though commentators on the DEIS faulted [the agencies] for failing to modify their traffic projections to account for induced population growth forecast by the Delphi Panel. The traffic-generating effects of population changes were well understood by the Defendants as such effects can be projected through the use of the Statewide Model. Accordingly, such effects are among the least speculative effects of population growth. [The agencies'] willingness to consider the effects of induced population growth in other areas such as land use, water quality, and wildlife, where the effects of population growth are less well understood, belies [their] contention that the traffic-generating effects of induced population changes are too speculative to be considered in this case. Thus, having convened the Delphi Panel for the purpose of forecasting induced population growth, and having decided to rely upon the panel's induced growth forecast for certain purposes, [the agencies] were not free, at least without substantial additional explanation, to treat induced population growth as a non-existent factor in their traffic projections. Instead, [they] should have performed the [traffic sensitivity analysis], disclosed its results in the FEIS, and explained why the analysis did not affect their decision to proceed with the Four Lane Alternative. Their failure to do so was error.

The Court emphasized that the agencies possessed the updated information before the issuance of the DEIS. The Court determined that the agencies needed to account for both forecasts and went on to hold that

[w]hile NEPA does not require an agency to update its population forecasts whenever new forecasts become available, it ordinarily may not rely on outdated forecasts when it sets out to prepare an EIS even though more recent forecasts from the agency's own experts are readily available. Defendants' decision to do so here was error....Defendants cannot rely on the fact that they discussed the issue in the [post-FEIS] traffic sensitivity analysis] to excuse their failure to directly address it in the FEIS because the TSA was not subject to public comment.

The Court did uphold the agencies' use of challenged forecasts for vehicle operation and parking cost assumptions in their decision to eliminate rail from further consideration as an alternative. The Court cited the fact that the agencies gave a rational explanation in the FEIS for why they relied on the assumptions, and performed an additional sensitivity test in response to DEIS comments.

(footnotes and citations omitted).

4. *Sierra Club, Ill. Chapter v. U.S. Dept. of Transp.*, 962 F. Supp. 1037, 1043- 46 (N.D. Ill. 1997)

The Court held that the EIS failed to satisfy NEPA where the agencies relied on a single population forecast for analyzing impacts with and without the proposed project. The forecast used assumed the construction of a highway like the one proposed. In particular, the Court found that the resulting analyses of alternatives and ozone impacts were flawed.

The agencies argued that they had unsuccessfully attempted a study to provide the ‘with and without’ data, but had found it impossible. The Court rejected that position, and citing 40 CFR § 1502.22, concluded that that NEPA, of course, does not require an agency to use the best scientific methodology available. Thus, this court cannot conclude, as plaintiffs urge, that the final impact statement must contain a socioeconomic forecast that reflects the growth inducing effect of the tollroad. Rather, this court merely holds that information about the growth inducing impact of tollroad construction is crucial to a reasoned conclusion as to alternatives and that the final impact statement was at least required to explain in some meaningful way why such a study was not possible....Second, the study relies on only one socioeconomic forecast in examining the effect construction would have on ozone production. As a result, the study does not accurately depict the true ozone-producing effect construction of the tollroad would have. Accordingly, defendants must either prepare a study that explicitly compares ozone production with and without the tollroad or explain why a study is not possible.

The Court also cited the agencies’ failure to address new information that had appeared in a regional planning agency’s draft report on cumulative impacts of the proposed project corridor. That report indicated that the population forecast used in the FEIS underestimated the development that would occur in the corridor as a result of construction of the tollroad. The Court ruled that further analysis was needed on ozone production and the purpose and need for the project, and that such analysis had to address the kind of information that was in the planning report even if the agencies did not use the planning report itself.

(footnotes and citations omitted)

5. *Piedmont Heights Civic Club v. Moreland*, 637 F. 2d 430, 442 (5th Cir. 1981)

The Court of Appeals rejected challenges to the validity of data used to justify the need for the project. The EIS relied on the MPO’s regional development plan estimates of population in the Atlanta metro region by the year 2000. The plaintiffs offered evidence in the lower court hearings that the Federal and state projections for the year 2000 were substantially lower than those in the regional plan. The Court stated that

[p]roof on an issue such as the inaccuracy of population projections is inherently difficult because of the uncertainty in population projections; however, citing a conflicting projection does not prove the invalidity of another projection. Furthermore, although population growth is important to the issue of whether highway improvements are needed in Atlanta, the record indicates and the district judge found that the need for the highway projects was based on current need as well as future need. Regardless of the amount of growth, all parties agree that Atlanta will grow by the year 2000. Evidence of growth in the record along with evidence of the current need for the highway improvements justifies the district judge’s finding in the case.

6. *Stop H-3 Ass’n v. Dole*, 740 F.2d 1442, 1464-65 (9th Cir. 1984)

Appellate court held that EIS can rely on official demographic projections for the region at issue, even where projections subsequently were revised downward. The City and County of Honolulu had adopted a revised Oahu General Plan that altered significantly the planning objectives for Windward Oahu, changing from a large growth and development scheme to a limited one. The parties challenging the project alleged that the project was inconsistent with the population objectives and policies of the newer general plan and that the inconsistencies were not resolved in the EIS, therefore making the EIS inadequate. The Court acknowledged that the EIS analysis of the newer general plan was troubling because of a number of “old versus new” data issues, such as the EIS’s use of outdated population projections (based on the older plan) to justify project need, at the same time that the agencies relied on the newer plan’s population goals for the premise that induced growth would be controlled. Despite such inconsistencies in the agencies’ use of the old and new general plans, the Court upheld the agencies’ use of the data, stating that “...our role is not that of a ‘super-planner,’ and, under NEPA, we are not allowed to substitute our judg-

ment for that of the agency concerning the wisdom of a proposed action. Our role is limited to insuring that the [agencies] have taken a “hard look” at [the project’s] environmental consequences. The [EIS] contains a fairly detailed discussion of [the project’s] relationship to state and city land use plans, policies, controls, goals, and objectives. Furthermore, the relationship between [the project] and the 1977 Plan specifically is discussed.” The Court also noted that one of the terms of the Secretary’s concurrence in the EIS was that the State DOT would work with the local city and county to monitor land use and development trends, including the project’s impact on such trends, with the goal of achieving the current general plan objectives for the area.

The decision upheld the sufficiency under NEPA of a socio-economic analysis that used arguably “obsolete” data that had been superseded by a new general plan. The Court found that the EIS adequately updated the pre-plan study, relied on conclusions and data derived from that later general plan, and displayed “a reasonably thorough discussion of [the project’s] secondary impacts in light of the planning changes that have occurred.”

The Court addressed allegedly contradictory assertions in the EIS with respect to the ability of the general plan to control growth induced by the project. The Court noted that such contradictions might indicate a “less than complete evaluation of [the project’s] secondary impacts,” but upheld the lower court’s determination that the analysis was sufficient. “...NEPA only requires a “reasonably thorough discussion” that “fosters informed decision making,” not a “complete evaluation.” Therefore, it is our view that the District Court was not “clearly erroneous” in finding that the EIS assesses and discusses adequately [the project’s] socio-economic impacts.”

(footnotes and citations omitted).

7. *Audubon Naturalist Soc’y of the Cent. Atl. States v. U.S. Dep’t of Transp.*, 524 F. Supp. 2d 642, 673 (D. Md. 2007)

Plaintiffs alleged that the FEIS was inadequate because it failed to use an updated growth forecast that became available shortly before the issuance of the DEIS and that included secondary and induced growth impacts (unlike the forecasts used in the DEIS). The earlier forecast was used to model all of the traffic and air impacts of the no-build alternative and the build alternatives. The Court examined the steps taken by the agencies to address the updated forecast, including a sensitivity analysis, and found the efforts satisfied NEPA requirements.

Federal agencies are not obligated to restart the NEPA process every time new information becomes available. Given the fact that the [updated] land use forecast became effective only a week before Defendants released its DEIS and given the sensitive analysis conducted, the Court believes that Defendants’ refusal to re-calculate the traffic model did not preclude informed decision-making and informed public participation in this instance. Therefore, the Court finds that Defendants complied with NEPA and did not act arbitrarily and capriciously by not relying on the [updated] forecast.

(footnotes and citations omitted).

8. *Town of Winthrop v. Federal Aviation Admin.*, 535 F.3d 1, 9-12 (1st Cir. 2008)

This case provides useful insight on the effect of more recent data on the data used for earlier parts of the NEPA process. The core issue was whether the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) violated NEPA by not preparing a Supplemental EIS (SEIS) in connection with approval of expansion facilities for Boston’s Logan Airport. In issuing its original ROD for the project in 2002 (a revised ROD was issued after reevaluation in 2007), the FAA committed to further study of the potential effects of additional operational measures on the taxiway component of the project. The plaintiffs’ alleged, among other things, that the new data gathered for the resulting study constituted significant new information triggering the need for a SEIS. The Court rejected the claim:

...data [in the EIS] remain ‘current’ [within the meaning of a FAA regulation] if there has been no major change that would cause one to expect contemporaneous conditions to

vary significantly from conditions at the time the data were gathered. By validating through the [post-ROD study] that more recent conditions generate similar data as the data used in the EIS, the FAA could reasonably conclude that all the data still reflected current conditions.

The Court went on to quote from *Vill. of Bensenville v. FAA*, 457 F.3d 52, 71 (D.C. Cir. 2006), which decided a similar issue relating to whether more recent data invalidates modeling performed with earlier data:

However desirable it may be for agencies to use the most current and comprehensive data available when making decisions, the FAA has expressed its professional judgment that the later data would not alter its conclusions in the EIS ..., and it is reasonably concerned that an unyielding avalanche of information might overwhelm an agency's ability to reach a final decision.... The method the FAA chose, creating its models with the best information available when it began its analysis and then checking the assumptions of those models as new information became available, was a reasonable means of balancing those competing considerations, particularly given the many months required to conduct full modeling with new data.

9. *Rivers Unlimited v. U.S. Dep't of Transp.*, 533 F. Supp. 2d 1, 6-7 (D.D.C. 2008)

Claims challenging a tier 1 EIS included the allegation that the gasoline price used in economic modeling (\$1.13/gallon) was unrealistically low and violated the "accurate data" requirement under NEPA. The Court rejected the claim, but did so with words of warning:

The price of gasoline used did not inflate the economic benefits of the project, however, nor did its use give insufficient weight to environmental factors. The price of gasoline was used in the modeling to calculate the benefits of the project based on vehicle hours saved from shorter routes, decreased congestion, and improved mass transit. The use of a more realistic gasoline price would likely have raised the calculated benefits associated with the project. It is distressing that FHWA bases *many* of its calculations on unrealistic estimations of the cost of driving, but, in this particular instance, lack of realism does not appear to have skewed the analysis in the agencies' favor.

(citation omitted).

#### **4.1.4.5 Use of Local, Regional, or State Land Use Plans and Decisions**

Agencies may point to local, regional, and/or statewide land use and transportation plans as a basis for defining project needs and the range of alternatives for detailed evaluation. Caution is needed to ensure that such use of planning products and outcomes is credible and that the material used is adequately explained in the NEPA documentation or in planning materials incorporated by reference into the NEPA documentation.

1. *City of Carmel-By-The-Sea v. U. S. Dep't of Transp.*, 123 F.3d 1142, 1160- 63 (9th Cir. 1997)

The Court held that the agencies' analysis of the project's growth-inducing impacts was adequate where the FEIS acknowledged the possibility of growth inducing impacts but concluded that the development constraints imposed by local authorities would prevent such development from occurring. The Court pointed to FEIS statements that any impacts associated with the project already had been addressed in local land use plans, which meant that there was no potential for project-induced growth beyond what was in those plans. The Court also noted that the project area already was well developed. The Court stated that

[the project] will not spur on any unintended or, more importantly, unaccounted for, development because local officials have already planned for the future use of the land, under the assumption that the [the project] would be completed.... This development is nonetheless planned for...it has been accounted for and properly analyzed. No further analysis is warranted.

(footnotes and citations omitted).

2. *N. Buckhead Civic Ass'n v. Skinner*, 903 F.2d 1533, 1541-42 (11th Cir. 1990)

The Court upheld the action of the agencies in relying on local plans for definition of the project's "need and purpose." The Court stated that

...NEPA does not confer the power or responsibility for long range local planning on federal or state agencies. 'An obvious and indeed central aspect of this relationship must be respect for the sovereignty of local authorities....' In the present case, the record is replete with documents indicating that the agencies consulted with and cooperated with local authorities. The district court found that '[t]he transportation demand in the corridor and the goals of the project were developed by the [MPO] and are set out in the Need and Purpose section of the FEIS ... The Georgia DOT took the goals as developed by [MPO] and did a feasibility study to try and fulfill them.' There is no evidence in the record to indicate that FHWA officials acted arbitrarily in certifying the project. The district court correctly found that federal, state and local officials complied with federally mandated regional planning procedures in developing the need and purpose section of the EIS.

(footnotes and citations omitted).

3. *Citizens Advocate Team v. U.S. Dep't of Transp.*, 2004 WL 725279, at \*9 (N.D. Ill. March 31, 2004)

The Court upheld the agencies where the FEIS deemed a no-build alternative inconsistent with the project purpose and needs, which was based on a regional need "to provide transportation improvements which would increase access across the Fox River in the North Region of Kane County ... [and] to provide access to proposed land uses in the Northern region which are compatible with Kane County's 2020 Land Resource Management Plan and local land use plans." The Court noted that "[b]y its very nature, the No-Build Alternative cannot satisfy these objectives. Finding that this is adequately explained in the Final EIS, the Court concludes that no further analysis is needed."

(footnotes and citations omitted).

4. *Stop H-3 Ass'n v. Dole*, 740 F.2d 1442, 1464-65 (9th Cir. 1984)

Appellate court held that EIS can rely on official demographic projections for the region at issue, even where projections subsequently revised downward. The City and County of Honolulu had adopted a revised Oahu General Plan that altered significantly the planning objectives for Windward Oahu, changing from a large growth and development scheme to a limited one. The parties challenging the project alleged that the project was inconsistent with the population objectives and policies of the newer general plan and that the inconsistencies were not resolved in the EIS, therefore making the EIS inadequate. The Court acknowledged that the EIS analysis of the newer general plan was troubling because of a number of "old versus new" data issues, but the Court upheld the agencies' use of the data, stating that "[t]he [EIS] contains a fairly detailed discussion of [the project's] relationship to state and city land use plans, policies, controls, goals, and objectives. Furthermore, the relationship between [the project] and the 1977 Plan specifically is discussed."

(footnotes and citations omitted).

5. *Jones v. Peters*, 2007 WL 2783387, at \*19-20 (D. Utah Sept. 21, 2007)

The Court looked at the question whether the agencies had adopted too narrow a statement of purpose and need, thus predetermining the outcome of the alternatives analysis. The plaintiffs alleged that the agencies had included consistency with local and regional transportation plans as a part of purpose and need, then used it to eliminate alternatives from consideration. The Court stated that the purpose and need must be broad enough to encompass analysis of alternatives other than the specific project produced by the planning process, but observed that

[o]n the other hand, the project's purpose and need cannot be divorced completely from the planning process that generated the proposed project in the first place. Pursuant to Congressional mandate, *see* 23 U.S.C. § 134, the...long-range planning process identifies the specific existing and future needs that transportation projects are designed to meet. If 'purpose and need' were to be defined for NEPA purposes in total isolation from the existing regional and local transportation plans, the federal environmental assessment process would soon supplant the regional and local planning process envisioned by Congress, and the evaluation of alternatives would soon become transportation planning *de novo* on the part of the FHWA. Neither NEPA nor § 4(f) may fairly be read to mandate that....Applying a rule of reason and practicality, this court is not persuaded that the FHWA's consideration of alternatives to the 10400 South Project as delineated in the EA/4(f) was arbitrary, capricious, 'reverse-engineered,' or pre-determined.

(footnotes and citations omitted).

6. *Sierra Club v. U.S. Dept. of Transp.*, 310 F. Supp. 2d 1168, 1189-90 (D. Nev. 2004)

Plaintiffs made several challenges to the EIS for a proposed highway project. One of these challenges alleged that FHWA relied on population and traffic forecasts generated by the metropolitan planning organizations modeling system. The Court upheld FHWA's reliance on the forecasts and modeling efforts of the designated metropolitan planning organization responsible for developing transportation plans and programs for the area, noting that

[the metropolitan planning organization] is a government entity charged with developing transportation plans based on forecasted needs in the area. Although some citizen and agency comments suggested RTC historically underestimates growth, FHWA's reliance on figures produced by a state governmental entity statutorily charged with developing state transportation plans based on projected need is not arbitrary or capricious.

(citations omitted).

#### **4.1.4.6 Resolution of Inconsistencies Between Project and State, Regional, or Local Plans**

CEQ regulation (40 CFR § 1506.2(d)) requires that NEPA documentation discuss inconsistencies with state or local plans and laws, and describe the extent to which the differences will be reconciled (although reconciliation of differences is not required). Courts tend to apply this requirement strictly only where there is a direct and explicit conflict between the project and the plan(s). Courts may provide agencies some deference where the inconsistencies are not well-addressed, but reliance on such deference creates an unnecessary risk.

1. *Utahns for Better Transp. v. U.S. Dept. of Transp.*, 305 F. 2d 1152, 1172-76 (10th Cir. 2002)

The lawsuit challenged the agencies' alternatives analysis because of its alleged failure to consider travel demand management through a combination of alternative land use scenarios and mass transit. The Court noted that land use is a local and regional matter and cited the number of communities that would be affected if alternative scenarios were pursued.

There are, therefore, a number of local and regional governmental entities whose cooperation would be necessary to make an alternative land use scenario a reality. The [agencies] replied to comments made after the FEIS that '[t]o date, [the state, regional and local entities with responsibility for land use planning] have resoundingly declined to alter their plans based upon such comments.' We, therefore, conclude that the Agencies' treatment of the alternative land use was adequate.

The Court also concluded that the FEIS was not inadequate for failure to discuss alleged inconsistencies between the local transportation master plan and the proposed action. The master plan reflected a shift in priorities "to mass transit and multiple forms of transportation and away from increasing road capacity and meeting the needs of the single-occupant automobile." The Court pointed to the existence of sev-

eral local transportation plans, including some that referenced a project similar to the one at issue. The Court concluded that a shift in priorities was not the same as a rejection of all new highway construction and that 40 CFR § 1506.2(d) had not been violated.

(footnotes and citations omitted).

2. *Audubon Naturalist Soc’y of the Cent. Atl. States, Inc. v U.S. Dept. of Transp.*, 524 F. Supp. 2d 642, 714-15 (D. Md. 2007)

The plaintiffs alleged that the proposed project was inconsistent with the land use general plans in one of the counties that the project would traverse, and that the agencies failed to reconcile those conflicts as required by 40 CFR § 1506.2(d). The Court rejected both claims, finding that

[t]he difference between a preference and an inconsistency is significant. An inconsistency is a point of controversy, whereas a preference is choosing one option over another. Even though the [project] is not a specific project on the General Plan, the Plan does not completely exclude the building of new roads in the county. Simply because a proposed highway is not preferred or is not specifically mentioned in a General Plan does not constitute an ‘inconsistency’ that NEPA requires to be explained in an EIS. Neither Plaintiffs nor *amici* provide support for such a rigid reading of the NEPA regulations.... [the county] has stressed mass transit in its General Plan, but has not abandoned the building of new highways or roads. The [project] remained a part of the General Plans for the County up until 2002, and it is currently a part of the proposed plan for 2007. Furthermore, the Record shows that the FHWA consulted with all agencies with jurisdictions for planning in the study area, reviewed more than fifty local and regional plans, and documented its considerations of national, State, and local environmental protection goals.

Another challenge rested on the alleged failure to duly consider the objections of local officials to the proposed project. The Court rejected that allegation as well, stating that the FEIS demonstrated both that the FHWA had not ignored the political opposition in the county and that views about the project among elected officials clearly varied. The Court noted that

[a]n environmental impact statement is to discuss any inconsistency between a proposed action, but the federal regulation ‘does not require that [an agency] bow to local law-only that it consider it.’

(footnotes and citations omitted)

#### 4.1.5 Linking Planning and NEPA

Any reader contemplating the use of products from the transportation planning process in the NEPA process, should consult the FHWA and the FTA joint planning regulation at 23 CFR Part 450. Sections 450.212 and 450.318 of the regulation outline the procedures and considerations for incorporating planning products into the analysis and documentation required under NEPA. The regulation cites the relevant provisions in the NEPA statute (42 U.S.C. § 4321 *et seq.*) and implementing regulations (23 CFR Part 771 and 40 CFR Parts 1500-1508) that support the use of planning products in NEPA (23 CFR §§ 450.212 and 450.318.<sup>76</sup> More detailed non-binding guidance appears in Appendix A to 23 CFR 450.

The regulation envisions that material produced by or in support of the planning process may be incorporated directly or by reference if the requirements specified in 23 CFR § 450.308(b) are satisfied. This material would include any travel demand or other modeling performed in connection with the project. *See, i.e.*, 23 CFR Part 450, Section II, Questions 13-14. However, prior to using such material, it is important to consider the questions outlined in Section II, Questions 7 and 14 of 23 CFR 450 Appendix A. For

---

<sup>76</sup> See 23 CFR §§ 771.105(a)-(b), 771.111(a)(2), 771.123(b); 40 CFR §§ 1501.1(a)-(b), (d), and § 1501.2.

land use and travel demand modeling, those questions include the key issues discussed in the preceding sections of this summary:

- How much time has passed since the modeling was performed?
- Were the assumptions used in the modeling reasonable and clearly stated, and are they consistent with those to be used for other aspects of the NEPA process?
- Is the information (including the assumptions) still relevant and valid, or does it need to be updated?
- What changes have occurred in the area since the modeling was completed?
- Are the data, analytical methods, and modeling techniques reliable, defensible, reasonably current, and consistent with those used in other regional transportation studies and project development activities?

If all of the above questions are answered favorably, the decision whether to use modeling results from the planning phase still must take into consideration other factors. For example, it is important to consider whether the FHWA and other relevant agencies were involved in the planning process, whether the material was available to those agencies and the public during both the planning process and during NEPA scoping, and whether the proposed use of the modeling results was discussed and agreed to during NEPA scoping. *See* 23 CFR Part 450, Appendix A, Section II, Question 7.

Where the material is carried forward into the NEPA process, it is important to continue to monitor the need for updates in data, assumptions, and modeling techniques. This monitoring should be done to minimize the possibility of successful challenges after the NEPA process is complete.

The cases on the use of planning products in the NEPA process are not numerous, but do provide a sufficient body of law to validate this “linking planning and NEPA” approach. Most of the cases focus on the question of whether planning actions may be used to define purpose and need under NEPA. The courts have pointed to the long-standing regime under which community planning is the province of the States and local communities, not Federal agencies, and upheld the Federal agencies reliance on such planning decisions. Examples of such cases appear below, excerpted from a FHWA/FTA Chief Counsel joint memorandum on “Integration of Planning and NEPA Processes,” dated February 22, 2005 (available at <http://environment.fhwa.dot.gov/strmlng/integmemo.asp>).

1. *N. Buckhead Civic Ass’n v. Skinner*, 903 F.2d 1533, 1541-42. (11th Cir. 1990)

The Plaintiffs challenged the purpose and need articulated in the EIS for a multi-lane limited access highway connecting two existing highways. The purpose and need was derived from a series of planning studies conducted by the Atlanta Regional Commission. Plaintiffs argued that the purpose and need was crafted in a way that the proposed highway was “conclusively presumed to be required” and a rail alternative perfunctorily dismissed for its failure to fully satisfy the objectives of the project. The Court of Appeals disagreed with the Plaintiffs, stating that their objections reflected “a fundamental misapprehension of the role of federal and state agencies in the community planning process established by the Federal-Aid Highway Act.” The Court went on to explain that the Federal-Aid Highway Act contemplated “a relationship of cooperation between federal and local authorities; each governmental entity plays a specific role in the development and execution of a local transportation project.” The Court emphasized that Federal agencies did not have responsibility for long range local planning, and found that the “federal, state and local officials complied with federally mandated regional planning procedures in developing the need and purpose section of the EIS.” Although the Court in *Buckhead* acknowledged the validity of a purpose and need based on the results of the planning study, it did not in any way scale back the holdings of other cases relating to purpose and need which caution agencies not to write purpose and need statements so narrowly as to “define competing ‘reasonable alternatives’ out of consideration (and even out of existence).”

2. *Carmel-by-the-Sea v. U.S. Dep’t of Transp.*, 123 F.3d 1142 (9th Cir. 1997)

The Plaintiffs challenged the sufficiency of an EIS for failing to adequately consider the proposed project's growth-inducing effects. The Ninth Circuit disagreed, finding that the EIS satisfied this requirement by referencing several local planning documents that specifically included construction of the highway in their growth plans and which discussed overall growth targets and limits. In addition, the Court found that achieving "Level of Service C," an objective derived from the local congestion management plan, was an appropriate part of the purpose and need statement (although ultimately the EIS was found inadequate on cumulative impact grounds).

3. *Laguna Greenbelt, Inc. v. U.S. Dep't of Transp.*, 42 F.3d 517 (9th Cir. 1994)

The court held that the absence of a more thorough discussion in an EIS of induced growth, an issue that was sufficiently analyzed in referenced state materials, does not violate NEPA. However, regardless of the source, the analysis of induced growth must be in sufficient detail and must provide an analytical basis for its assumptions in order to be adequate under NEPA.

4. *Utahns for Better Transp. v. U.S. Dep't of Transp.*, 305 F.3d 1152, 1172 (10th Cir. 2002), *as modified on rehearing*, 319 F.3d 1207 (10th Cir. 2003)

Plaintiffs contended that the FEIS was inadequate because it failed to consider reducing travel demand through alternative land use scenarios in combination with mass transit. Noting that "reasonable alternatives" must be non-speculative, the Tenth Circuit found that Plaintiffs had not demonstrated a deficiency in the FEIS on this basis (although it was ultimately found inadequate on other grounds). The Court stated that "Land use is a local and regional matter," and that, in this case, the corridor at issue would involve the jurisdiction of several local and regional governmental entities whose cooperation would be necessary to make an alternative land use scenario a reality. The fact that these entities had clearly declined to alter their land use plans in such a way was justification for not considering their alternative.

5. *Sierra Club v. U.S. Dep't of Transp.*, 310 F. Supp. 2d 1168, 1193 (D. Nev. 2004)

Plaintiffs made several challenges to the EIS for a proposed highway project. One of these challenges alleged that the EIS had improperly rejected a fixed guideway as a reasonable alternative under NEPA. The Court disagreed, finding that FHWA reasonably relied on a "major investment study" conducted as part of its planning process to establish that such an alternative (1) would not meet the project's purpose and need, even when considered as part of a transportation strategy, (2) was too costly and (3) depended on connections to other portions of such a system for which construction was uncertain. The Court stated that

CEQ regulations mandate federal and state cooperation 'to the fullest extent possible to reduce duplication between NEPA and State and local requirements, including joint planning, environmental research and studies, public hearings, and environmental assessments.' 40 C.F.R. § 1506.2(b). Accordingly, a federal agency does not violate NEPA by relying on prior studies and analyses performed by local and state agencies.

(citations omitted).

## 4.2 Definitions

The following are definitions for terms hyperlinked in the text of the guidance:

*Annual Average Daily Traffic (AADT)*: AADT is the total volume of traffic recorded on a road during one year divided by 365 to give the traffic volume on an average day.

*Automatic Traffic Recorders (ATR)*: ATRs are permanent traffic recorders that are placed at locations across the road network to continuously count traffic, and possibly also traffic speeds, vehicle classification data and other attributes of the traffic on the road.

*Base Model Year*: an analysis year that is the calibration year for the travel model.

*Base Project Year:* an analysis year that can be different from the base model year; it is an updated base year that is validated and is as close as possible to the current year.

*Calibration:* calibration of travel models is the adjustment of travel model assumptions and parameters so that current observed conditions in the study area are reasonably reproduced.

*Control Totals:* control totals are county or district level land use forecasts of housing or employment. During forecasting, when adjustments are made within a study area to redistribute future housing or employment locations, the total amount of housing or employment is often maintained, or controlled, at a constant level for the larger geography.

*Design Year:* an analysis year that is an alternative future forecast year for the project. It may be earlier or further into the future than the planning horizon year.

*Gravity Model:* a form of trip distribution model that develops a synthetic trip table based on assumptions that the amount of travel between two zones is related to the size of the two zones in terms of the amount of trip generating and attracting land use in the zones, and the distance between the zones in terms of travel time, travel costs, and travel distance.

*Open-to-Traffic Year:* an analysis year that is the expected future year that the project will open; in the case of phased projects this might be a sequence of intermediate forecast years

*Persistence Factor:* a persistence factor is used in CO hot-spot analysis to convert CO concentrations based on peak (one) hour traffic to estimates of eight hour CO concentrations.

*Planning horizon:* a future forecast year used for long range transportation planning purposes, such as in the preparation of a region or state's long range plan. It is usually 20 to 30 years in the future.

*Reasonableness Checks:* reasonableness checks of travel models are checks that evaluate the travel model in terms of acceptable levels of error and its ability to perform according to theoretical and logical expectations. The checks are performed to ensure that the travel model tells a coherent story about travel behavior.

*Validation:* validation of travel models is the systemic testing of the sensitivity of the model to changes in inputs and assumptions to ensure that the travel model responds reasonably to transportation system changes and will have the ability to produce forecasts.



## Induced Travel: Frequently Asked Questions

The term "Induced Travel" is highly controversial but typically misunderstood by both highway advocates and opponents. In an effort to raise the level of understanding, which will hopefully lead to more productive discussion of this issue, FHWA has prepared the following set of frequently asked questions and answers.

1. [What is Induced Travel?](#)
2. [Is Induced Travel real?](#)
3. [Where does the additional traffic on a new or widened highway facility come from?](#)
4. [Is Induced Travel a bad thing?](#)
5. [Is Induced Travel only associated with highway capacity improvements?](#)
6. [Do increases in highway capacity cause "urban sprawl?"](#)
7. [Do highways impact development differently in urban versus rural areas?](#)
8. [Can transportation planning tools forecast Induced Travel?](#)
9. [What is demand elasticity?](#)
10. [Are demand elasticities reliable measures of Induced Travel?](#)
11. [What is FHWA's position on Induced Travel?](#)

### 1. What is Induced Travel?

"Induced travel" is a term that has been widely used to describe the observed increase in traffic volume that occurs soon after a new highway is opened or a previously congested highway is widened. The term often appears in the popular press, and has been used by some advocacy groups to support their argument that "we can't build our way out of traffic congestion," because any increase in highway capacity is quickly filled up with additional traffic.



### 2. Is Induced Travel real?

Economists use the term "induced travel" to describe the additional demand for travel that occurs as a result of a decrease in the generalized cost of travel, including both travel-time and out-of-pocket costs. However, this term is often misused to imply that increases in highway capacity are directly responsible for increases in traffic. In fact, the relationship between increases in highway capacity and traffic is very complex, involving various travel behavior responses, residential and business location decisions, and changes in regional population and economic growth. While some of these responses do represent new trips, much of the observed increase in traffic comes from trips that were already being made before the increase in highway capacity, or reflect predictable traveler behavior that is accounted for in travel demand forecasts.



### 3. Where does the additional traffic on a new or widened highway facility come from?

In metropolitan areas, highway facilities are usually built or widened where existing traffic congestion has already decreased travel speeds during certain times of the day. To avoid the congestion, some travelers may have diverted to alternative routes, changed the time they make their trips, switched to different travel modes, traveled to other destinations, or decided not to make a particular trip at all. The new or widened highway facility can carry significantly more traffic before it becomes congested. Many travelers who

previously took other routes or traveled at other times may switch to the new facility to take advantage of decreased travel times. The increase in traffic on the new facility resulting from these changes is largely offset by reductions in traffic along parallel routes and at other times of the day. The net effect on region-wide daily vehicle miles of travel (VMT) resulting from these travel behavior changes is minimal.

Decreased travel times may also encourage some travelers who previously used public transit to now make the trip by automobile. Travelers might also choose to travel to a different (more distant) destination for some trips such as shopping, or they may take a trip that they previously avoided altogether, because it was simply "too much trouble" to make under congested conditions. Each of these travel decisions can result in additional daily VMT on the highway system.

The above travel behavior responses are primarily responsible for the increases in traffic that are observed shortly after a new or widened highway facility is opened. Over a longer term, increased highway capacity may improve the accessibility of one geographic area relative to other areas in the metropolitan region, making it more attractive for development. This relationship between highway capacity and land development is discussed under the question, "[Do increases in highway capacity cause 'urban sprawl?'](#)"



#### **4. Is Induced Travel a bad thing?**

Induced travel can have both positive and negative consequences. Travelers who change their tripmaking behavior to use a new highway facility do so because they perceive some benefit. This benefit may be a reduction in total daily travel time or trip cost, the value associated with a new or different destination activity (e.g., shopping at a location with more variety or lower costs), or the opportunity to make a trip at a more convenient time. Many of these "users benefits" can be quantified, and are used to justify the costs of a particular highway project.

On the other hand, each user of a highway facility contributes to increased congestion on the facility. As congestion grows on the new facility, the overall user benefits attributable to potential travel time savings may decline. In addition, increased VMT due to new or longer trips can result in air pollutant emissions and noise above the levels that would occur without the additional vehicle travel. These environmental impacts may offset some of the direct user benefits, and should also be considered in evaluating the overall costs and benefits associated with a highway project. However, neither the magnitude nor direction of any of these impacts can be generalized, and must be determined on a case-by-case basis.



#### **5. Is Induced Travel only associated with highway capacity improvements?**

No. Improvements in any transportation system can lead to changes in travel behavior that will result in increased use of the system. A new bus route, rail transit line or commuter rail service is typically developed with the expressed purpose of "attracting new riders." These new riders may come from other transit routes or former auto users, or they may represent entirely new trips to locations that have become accessible by transit.

As auto trips are diverted to transit, traffic congestion on parallel highway facilities may lessen, at least temporarily. This reduction in highway traffic congestion may attract additional highway trips, similar to an increase in highway capacity.

Increased traffic on a highway can also result from operational improvements that reduce delays on the facility, such as improved signal timing or incident management.



#### **6. Do increases in highway capacity cause "urban sprawl?"**

"Urban sprawl" is a term that has been widely used to describe the rapid and uncontrolled growth of urban areas onto previously undeveloped land at the urban fringe. It has a popular connotation of large tracts of agricultural lands and wildlife habitats being converted to suburban single-family housing developments. Construction of new highways and even some types of transit improvements (e.g., commuter rail services) are often cited as major contributors to urban sprawl by making land at the urban fringe more accessible and therefore more attractive for development.

The relationship between transportation improvements and land development is extremely complex, and even less well understood than its impacts on travel behavior. While improved transportation accessibility in a particular corridor may indeed make land more attractive for development, other factors such as water

and sewer lines, quality of schools and other public services, undevelopable land (e.g., slope, floodplains, etc.), land acquisition and development costs, impact fees, and zoning ordinances also play major roles in shaping where development will take place, its nature, and its intensity.<sup>1</sup> Furthermore, in many cases, the new development being attracted to one part of a metropolitan region often represents development that has been redirected from other parts of the region.



### **7. Do highways impact development differently in urban versus rural areas?**

Yes. One important difference is that in urban areas, it is relatively rare for a highway project to provide new or substantially improved access to a large geographic area (e.g., an entire county). However, in many rural areas, a new highway may provide access to large tracts of undeveloped land. In fact, a number of projects were developed specifically for this reason. Moreover, in some of the rural cases, non-highway economic development initiatives were intentionally coordinated with the improved highway access. Typically, it takes at least half a decade for such efforts to show significant economic development. FHWA has studied two cases, one in Wisconsin and one in New York, where highway improvements were completed with the purpose to encourage economic development over a multi-county corridor.<sup>2</sup>



### **8. Can transportation planning tools forecast Induced Travel?**

Travel demand forecasting tools account for some, but not all of the travel behavior that may contribute to increased traffic resulting from a new or widened highway. Current 4-step travel modeling procedures typically include mode choice and trip assignment models, which can be used to forecast those travelers who change from other travel modes or alternate routes, respectively. Trip distribution models that use highway impedances (e.g., travel time) that accurately reflect congested, peak-period conditions can also account for travelers who change their destinations in response to decreased travel times.

Current models are generally insensitive to the impacts of highway improvements on travelers who change their time of travel, or those who make entirely new trips. However, travelers who simply change their time of travel do not contribute to a net increase in regional daily VMT, and there is general agreement among transportation planning professionals that entirely new trips represent a relatively small share of the increased traffic appearing on a new or widened highway facility.<sup>3</sup>

Travel models also do not directly address the effects of changes in transportation accessibility on residential and commercial land development. The distribution of future land use is an input to travel models. Land use forecasts are often developed by consensus among various local jurisdictions within a metropolitan area, without serious consideration of the potential impacts of improved accessibility caused by specific transportation projects. Failure to account for the effects of improved transportation accessibility on land use may result in underestimation of new trips created by higher-than-forecast development growth within a specific area or corridor.

Although land use policy and development decisions are often beyond the control of transportation planning, improved forecasts of travel attributable to development growth may be obtained by revising land use forecasts based on changes in accessibility obtained from travel models, and then rerunning the travel models.



### **9. What is demand elasticity?**

Elasticity is an indicator used by economists to measure how much the consumption of a good or service changes in response to a change in some other factor, such as income, population, or the price of the good. One of the most common elasticity measures used in transportation planning is the price elasticity of demand, often called "demand elasticity." Demand elasticity is defined as the percentage change in the quantity demanded for a good, divided by the associated percentage change in the price of the good. For example, a demand elasticity value of -0.5 means that a 10 percent decrease in the price of a good will result in a 5 percent increase in demand for that good. Demand elasticity usually has a negative sign to indicate that demand increases when the price goes down.

The magnitude of demand elasticity depends heavily on the scope and time frame over which travel demand is being measured. For example, a demand elasticity measured with respect to a single facility includes trips diverted from other routes or time periods and would be much higher than demand elasticities measured over a corridor or region.



## 10. Are demand elasticities reliable measures of Induced Travel?

A number of research studies have used demand elasticities to measure the increase in vehicle travel (usually measured as VMT) associated with a change in highway travel time or highway capacity (measured in lane-miles).<sup>4</sup> Various advocacy groups frequently cite these studies as evidence that induced travel is much greater than what is accounted for in conventional travel demand forecasts. However, extreme caution should be used when interpreting the results of these studies to make inferences about the magnitude of induced travel.

First, many of the studies that have purported to estimate induced travel using elasticities have compared changes in VMT to changes in lane-miles. By using changes in lane-miles instead of some measure of price (such as travel time), these studies overlook the importance of congestion. They imply that additional traffic would be induced by the added capacity even if there were no congestion initially on the highway facility. This conclusion is contrary to well established economic and travel behavior theory.

Second, despite the large number of empirical studies involving travel demand elasticities, there is very little agreement among researchers or transportation planning professionals on acceptable values of demand elasticities to use in estimating induced travel. Consequently, use of any single demand elasticity value to estimate induced travel is highly unreliable.

Finally, it is very difficult to measure how much of the induced travel implied by a demand elasticity is actually accounted for by travel forecasts. Clearly, some of the travel behavior changes that contribute to increased traffic are specifically addressed in travel demand models (e.g., mode and route choice), while other changes don't add new trips (e.g., time of travel). Therefore, indiscriminate application of demand elasticities can significantly over-estimate induced travel impacts.



## 11. What is FHWA's position on Induced Travel?

FHWA's position reflects the consensus of the transportation planning and travel behavior research community that induced travel is neither more nor less than the cumulative result of individual traveler choices and land development decisions made in response to an improved level of transportation service. Many, but not all, of these travel choice decisions are accounted for in current travel forecasting models or land use-transportation interaction models, and FHWA is supporting additional research and development to improve travel and land use models to address the others.

Travel forecasts represent a critical input in evaluating transportation investments, and should be based on analyses that take these travel choice decisions into account to the fullest extent possible. Where current technical limitations of analysis methods preclude accounting for some of these travel decisions, they should be identified in documentation describing the analysis. However, current technical limitations of travel models should not, in and of themselves, be sufficient cause to discredit the results of travel forecasts for planning and environmental decisions.

<sup>1</sup> Recent empirical studies conducted in Ohio and North Carolina indicate that local patterns of population growth (measured at the Census Tract level) are not highly correlated with increases in highway capacity. See Hartgen, D.T., *The Impact of Highways and Other Major Road Improvements on Urban Growth in Ohio*, The Buckeye Institute, Columbus, OH, Jan. 2003; and Hartgen, D.T., *Highways and Sprawl in North Carolina*, The John Locke Foundation, Raleigh, NC, Sept. 2003.

<sup>2</sup>The case studies are described on FHWA's Planning - Economic Development web page: [http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/planning/economic\\_development/](http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/planning/economic_development/)

<sup>3</sup> See, for example, *Working Together to Address Induced Demand: Proceedings of a Forum*, ENO Transportation Foundation, Washington, DC, 2002, pg. 10.

<sup>4</sup> See Cervero, R., "Induced Demand: An Urban and Metropolitan Perspective," in *Working Together to Address Induced Demand: Proceedings of a Forum*, ENO Transportation Foundation, Washington, DC, 2002, Appendix C.



[Privacy Policy](#) | [Freedom of Information Act \(FOIA\)](#) | [Accessibility](#) | [Web Policies & Notices](#) | [No Fear Act](#) |  
[Report Waste, Fraud and Abuse](#)  
[U.S. DOT Home](#) | [USA.gov](#) | [WhiteHouse.gov](#)

Federal Highway Administration | 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE | Washington, DC 20590 | 202-366-4000